VE Series II
SEDAN AND SPORTWAGON

VE Sedan and Sportwagon
Owner's Handbook

GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232 (hereinafter Holden)

Change of name, address or ownership

In the event of a Safety Recall, or for various reasons, Holden may need to contact you as the owner of this vehicle.

If you have recently changed your address, or name, or purchased this vehicle second-hand, please help us to help you by taking a few minutes to fill in and mail the forms at the beginning of the Service/warranty booklet.

For information about GM Holden's privacy policy or to update owner details online, please visit Holden's website at www.holden.com.au

Note Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service/warranty booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

Printed in Australia
Part No. 92263059
February 2013 (MY12.5 VE Sedan and Sportwagon. Print 3)

© 2013 GM Holden Ltd
Reproduction in whole or part is prohibited
without written approval from GM Holden Ltd,
ABN 84 006 893 232

Holden VE Sedan and Sportwagon

In Brief 1-1
  Initial Drive Information 1-1

Keys, Doors, and Windows 2-1
  Keys and Locks 2-1
  Doors 2-8
  Vehicle Security 2-11
  Exterior Mirrors 2-13
  Interior Mirrors 2-15
  Windows 2-15
  Roof 2-18

Seats and Restraints 3-1
  Head Restraints 3-1
  Front Seats 3-3
  Rear Seats 3-7
  Seatbelts 3-8
  Airbag System 3-11
  Child Restraints 3-16

Storage 4-1
  Storage Compartments 4-1
  Additional Storage Features . . . 4-5
  Roof Rack System 4-14
  Information on Loading the Vehicle 4-15

Instruments and Controls 5-1
  Instrument Panel Overview 5-2
  Controls 5-5
  Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-9
  Information Displays 5-16
  Vehicle Messages 5-16
  Trip Computer 5-29
  Vehicle Personalisation 5-40

Lighting 6-1
  Exterior Lighting 6-1
  Interior Lighting 6-4
  Lighting Features 6-7

Infotainment System 7-1
  Introduction 7-1
  Radio 7-10
  Audio Players 7-15
  Rear Seat Infotainment 7-27
  Navigation 7-45
  Bluetooth Phone/Devices 7-71

Climate Controls 8-1
  Climate Control Systems 8-1

Driving and Operating 9-1
  Driving Information 9-2
  Starting and Operating 9-2
  Automatic Transmission 9-6
  Manual Transmission 9-11
  Brakes 9-12
  Ride Control Systems 9-14
  Cruise Control 9-17
  Object Detection Systems 9-20
  Fuel 9-26
  Towing 9-33
  Conversions and Add-Ons . . . 9-39

Holden VE Sedan and Sportwagon

Vehicle Care 10-1
General Information 10-2
Vehicle Checks 10-3
Bulb Replacement 10-19
Electrical System 10-34
Vehicle Tools 10-42
Wheels and Tyres 10-45
Jump Starting 10-76
Towing 10-79
Appearance Care 10-80

Service and Maintenance . . . 11-1
General Information 11-1
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts 11-2

Technical Data 12-1
Vehicle Identification 12-1
Vehicle Data 12-4

Customer Information 13-1
Customer Information 13-1

Index i-1

We thank you for choosing Holden and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your driving pleasure and satisfaction.

This handbook applies to the current VE Series II model. Therefore, due to different models and options, you may find reference in this Handbook to some equipment not fitted to your own vehicle.

Please note that all information, illustrations and specifications in this Handbook are based on the latest production information available at the time of printing.

Holden reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Introduction

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Handbook provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

Using this Manual

- The In brief section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each chapter shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Depending on the model variant, integrated special equipment and accessories, the scope of equipment of your vehicle can differ from the descriptions in this Owner's Handbook.
- The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.

Danger, Warnings, and Cautions

⚠ DANGER

Text marked ⚠ **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ WARNING

Text marked ⚠ **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Text marked ⚠ **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

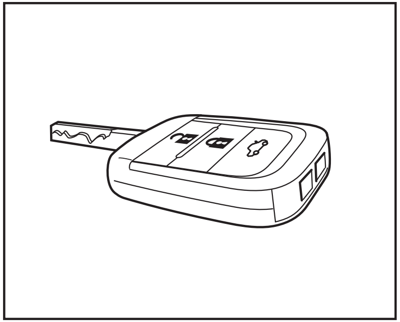
In Brief

Initial Drive Information

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 1-1
Door Locks 1-1
Seat Adjustment 1-2
Head Restraint Adjustment 1-3
Seatbelts 1-5
Mirror Adjustment 1-5
Steering Wheel Adjustment . . . 1-6
Instrument Panel Overview 1-7
Interior Lighting 1-10
Exterior Lighting 1-11
Horn 1-12
Washer and Wiper Systems 1-12
Climate Controls 1-13
Transmission 1-13
Getting Started 1-14
Parking 1-15

Initial Drive Information

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System



🔒: Lock and arm the alarm

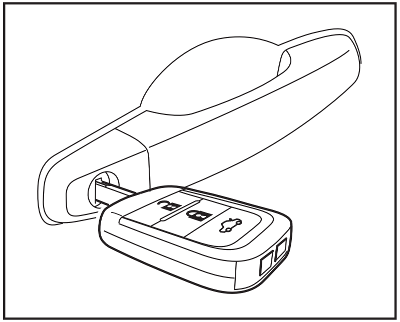
🔓: Unlock and disarm the alarm

🚘: Boot unlock (Sedan)

See *Keys on page 2-1*.

See *Door Locks on page 2-5*.

Door Locks



To lock, insert the key into the driver's door lock and turn towards the rear of the vehicle, then turn it back to the vertical position and remove.

This will lock all doors including the tailgate (Sportwagon).

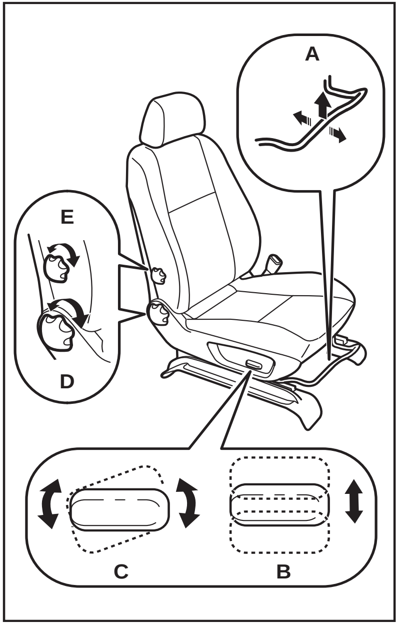
To unlock, turn the key once towards the front of the vehicle to unlock the driver's door. Turn it twice towards the front of the vehicle to unlock all doors and the tailgate (Sportwagon).

See *Keys on page 2-1*.

See *Door Locks on page 2-5*.

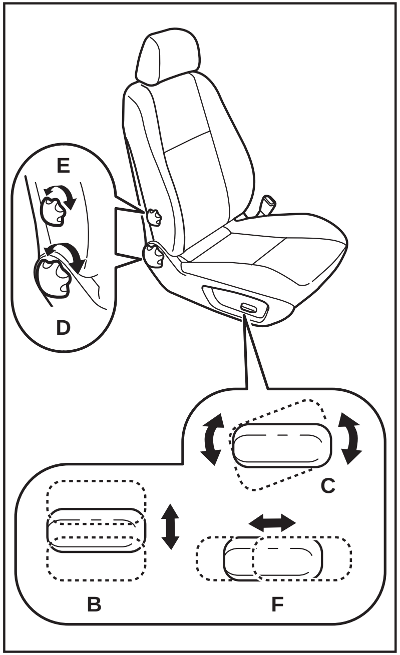
Seat Adjustment

The vehicle may have the following levers and switches for seat adjustment:



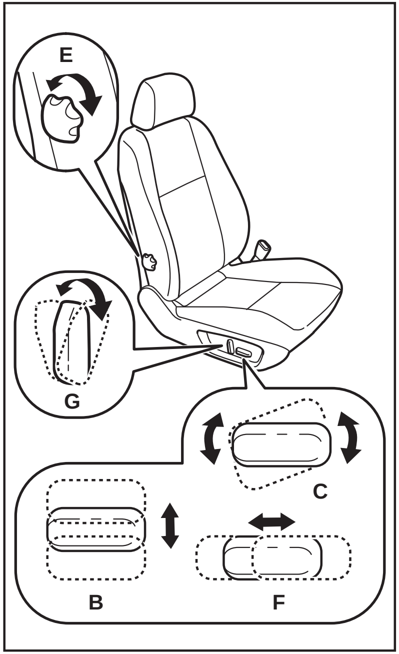
A. Lift for forwards/backwards

B. Up/down



C. Tilt

D. Recline back



E. Lumbar

F. Forwards/backwards

G. Recline

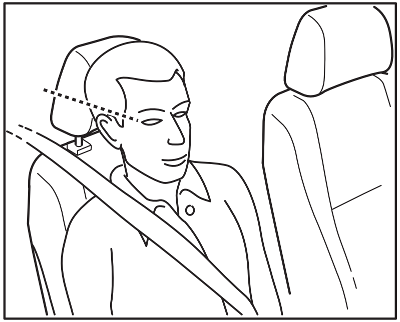
Seat Position on page 3-3.

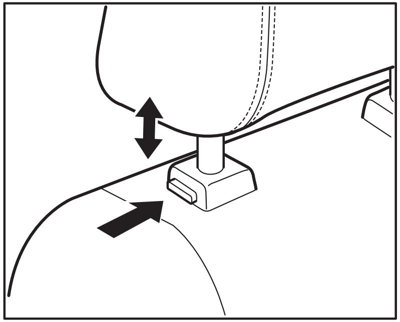
Head Restraint Adjustment

⚠ WARNING

The head restraint is a safety feature. Do not use the head restraint as a headrest.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.

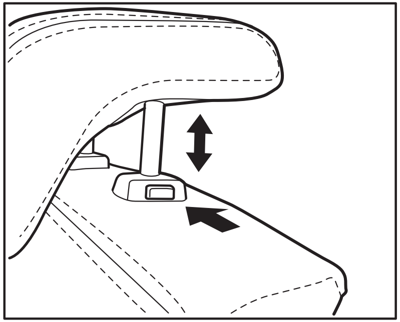




Lift the head restraint up to raise it.

Push the locking button and push the head restraint down to lower it.

Front head restraints cannot be removed.

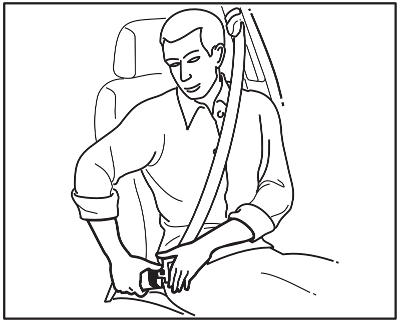


The vehicle may have adjustable rear head restraints. These can be removed.

See *Head Restraints on page 3-1*.

See *Child Restraint Systems on page 3-18*.

Seatbelts



Pull the metal tongue across your body and insert into the buckle until it clicks into place.

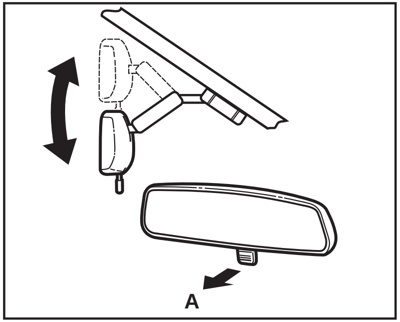
The belt should not be twisted.
It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips.

To remove, press the release button on the buckle to allow the belt to retract.

See *Three-Point Seatbelt on page 3-9*.

Mirror Adjustment

Rear view mirror



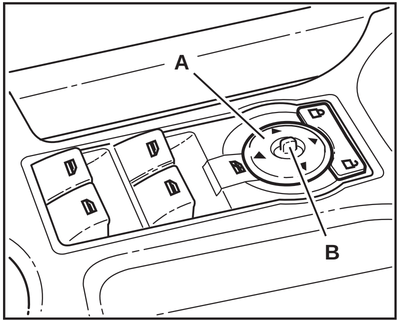
Push the lever (A) on the lower edge of the mirror towards the front of the vehicle, then adjust the position of the mirror.

To reduce headlight glare from following vehicles, pull the lever (A) towards the rear of the vehicle.

See *Manual Rear View Mirror on page 2-15*.

Exterior mirrors

Power mirrors



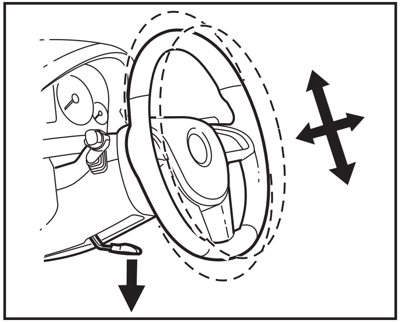
To adjust the exterior mirrors, turn the ignition on and use switches (A) and (B) in the centre console.

See *Power Mirrors on page 2-13*.

Steering Wheel Adjustment

⚠ WARNING

Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving.

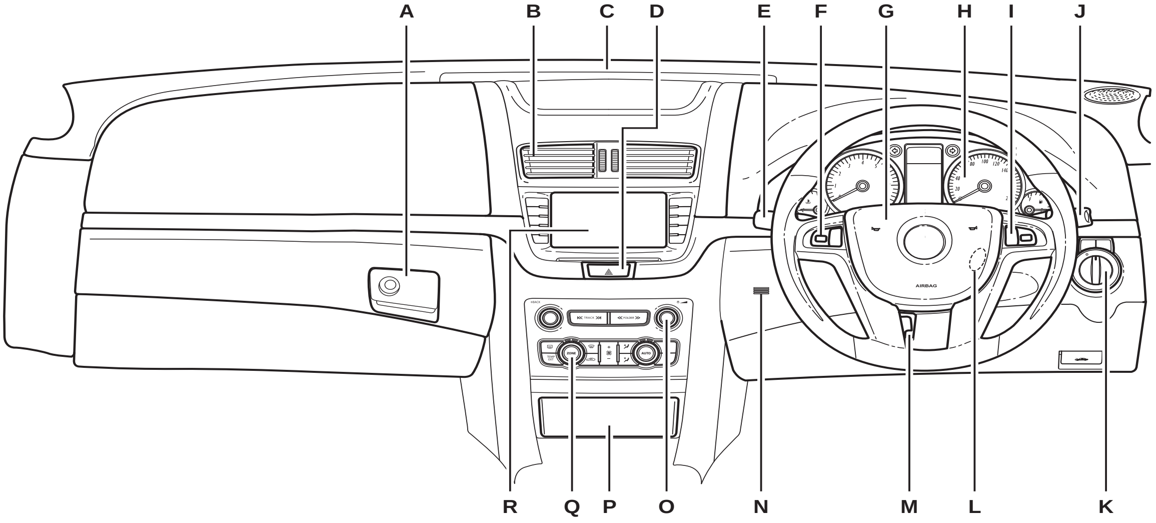


1. Move the lever down to unlock.
2. Move the steering wheel up, down, closer or away.
3. Move the lever up to lock.
4. Ensure the steering wheel is locked in position before driving.

See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-6*.

Instrument Panel Overview

Omega, Omega Z-Series, Berlina, Calais, Calais V-Series


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
TRACK
FOLDER
ZONE
AUTO
AIRBAG

A. *Glove Box on page 4-1*.

B. Vents.See *Heating and Ventilation System on page 8-1*.

C. Sunlight sensor See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

D. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.

E. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-6*.

F. Steering wheel controls:

   Steering wheel remote controls under *Overview on page 7-4*

   Trip Computer on page 5-29.

G. *Horn on page 5-6*.

H. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-9*.

I. Steering wheel controls:

   Bluetooth® phone button, Navigation button and Volume/ mute switch. See *Overview on page 7-4*.

J. Lever for:

   Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-3.

   Headlight High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-2.

   Cruise Control on page 9-17.

K. *Exterior Light Controls on page 6-1*.

L. Ignition lock/switch (behind steering wheel). See *Ignition Positions on page 9-3*.

M. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-5*.

N. In-car temperature sensor See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

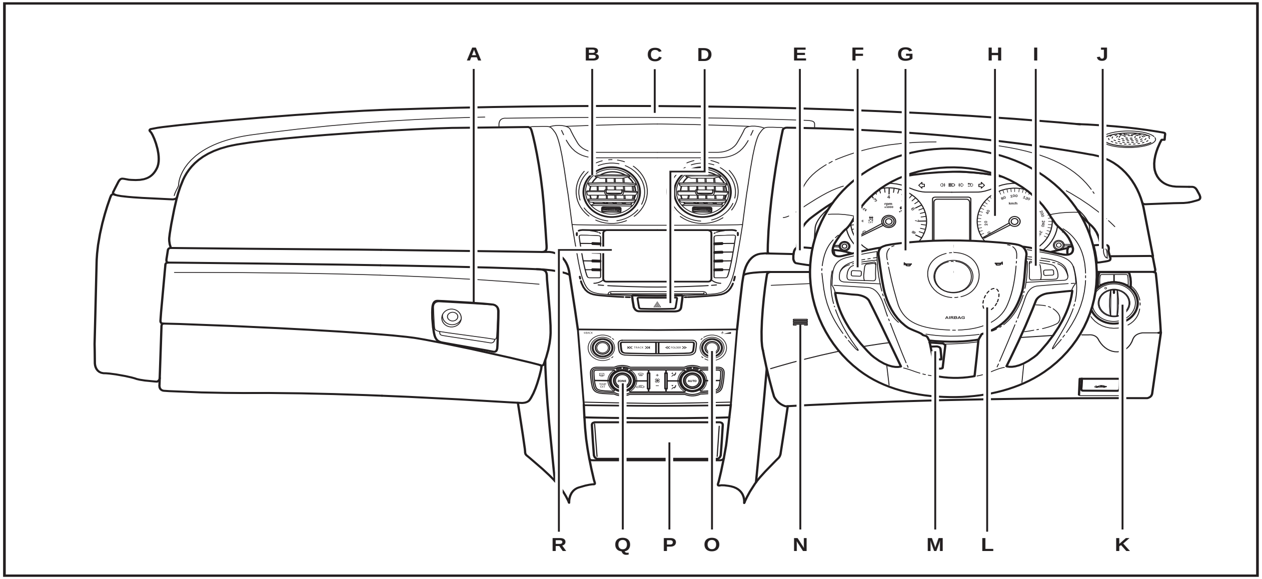
O. Infotainment system controls See *Overview on page 7-4*.

P. *Front Storage on page 4-2*.

Q. Climate control switches See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

R. Infotainment screen See *Overview on page 7-4*.

SV6, SS, SS V


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
AIRBAG
ZONE
AUTO
TRACK
FOLDER
rpm
km/h

A. *Glove Box on page 4-1*.

B. Vents.See *Heating and Ventilation System on page 8-1*.

C. Sunlight sensor See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

D. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.

E. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-6*.

F. Steering wheel controls:

   Steering wheel remote controls under *Overview on page 7-4*

   Trip Computer on page 5-29.

G. *Horn on page 5-6*.

H. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-9*.

I. Steering wheel controls:

   Bluetooth® phone button, Navigation button and Volume/ mute switch. See *Overview on page 7-4*.

J. Lever for:

   Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-3.

   Headlight High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-2.

   Cruise Control on page 9-17.

K. *Exterior Light Controls on page 6-1*.

L. Ignition lock/switch (behind steering wheel). See *Ignition Positions on page 9-3*.

M. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-5*.

N. In-car temperature sensor See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

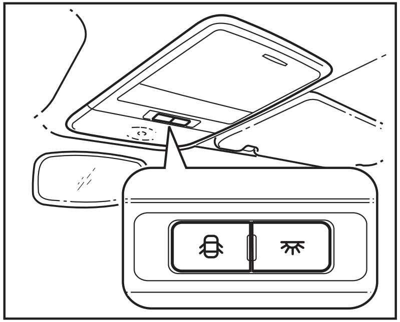
O. Infotainment system controls See *Overview on page 7-4*.

P. *Front Storage on page 4-2*.

Q. Climate control switches See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

R. Infotainment screen See *Overview on page 7-4*.

Interior Lighting



: On/off

: Door activated

Dome Lights on page 6-5.

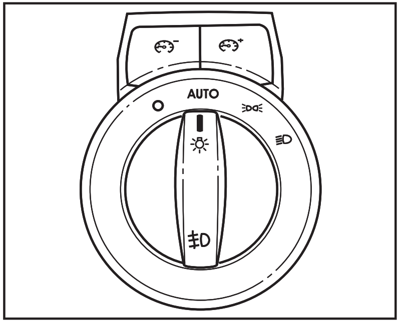
Reading Lights on page 6-5.

Glove Box Lights on page 6-6.

Boot Lights on page 6-4.

Battery Power Protection on page 6-7.

Exterior Lighting



○: Off

AUTO: Automatic headlights

⚞OO⚟: Parking lights

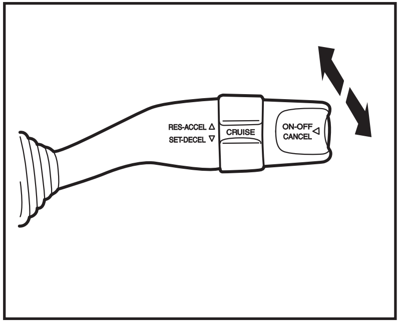
≣D: Headlights

‡D: Fog lights

☼⁻ ☼⁺: Instrument lighting dimmer

See *Exterior Light Controls on page 6-1*.

High/low beam


RES-ACCEL △
SET-DECEL ▽
CRUISE
ON-OFF ◁
CANCEL

High beam: Push lever

Low beam: Pull lever from high beam position

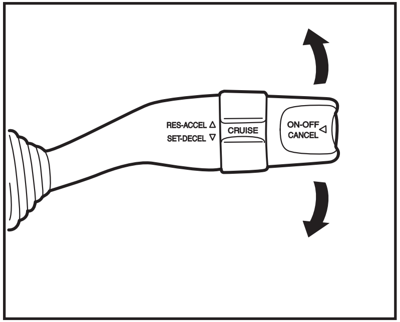
Headlight flash: Pull lever

The high beam lamps can be flashed even if the headlights and/or ignition are off.

See *Exterior Light Controls on page 6-1*.

See *Headlight High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-2*.

Turn signals


RES-ACCEL △
SET-DECEL ▽
CRUISE
ON-OFF ◁
CANCEL

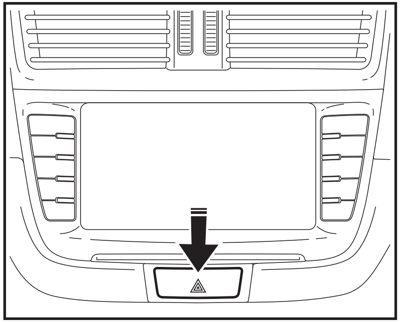
Left: Lever up

Right: Lever down

See *Exterior Light Controls on page 6-1*.

See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-3*.

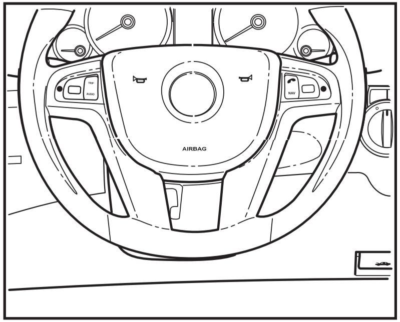
Hazard warning flasher



Press ⚠ to switch the hazard warning flasher on and off when the ignition is in any position.

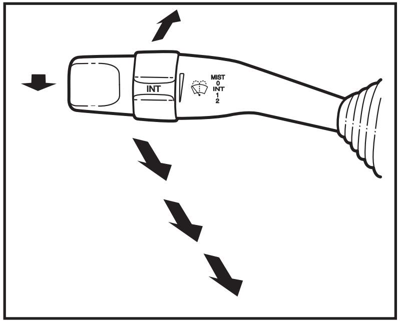
See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.

Horn



Press 📯 on either side.

Washer and Wiper Systems



Mist: Wipers cycle while the lever is held up

○: Off

INT: Intermittent wipe

1: Slow

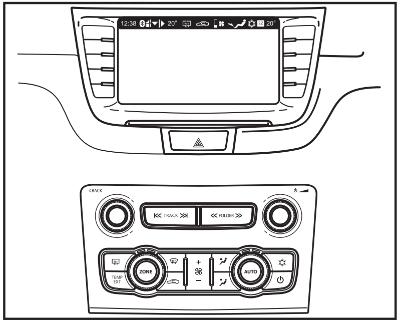
2: Fast

💧: Pull to wash the windscreen. The wipers will also cycle for a short time.

See *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-6*.

See *Washer Fluid on page 10-15*.

Climate Controls



The climate control panel is located in the centre of the dashboard.

Settings for the driver and passenger can be adjusted independently.

See *Heating and Ventilation System on page 8-1*.

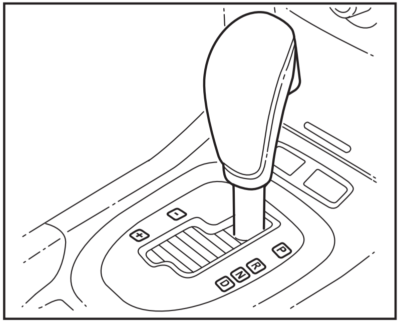
See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

Windscreen demister See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

Rear window demister See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

Transmission

Automatic transmission



P: Park

R: Reverse

N: Neutral

D: Drive

+/–: For Sport Shift mode, move the gear lever to position **D** then push to the left.

While in Sport Shift mode, move the gear lever to the **+** or **–** position to enable A/S mode.

See *Automatic Transmission on page 9-6*.

Sport shift mode See *Automatic Transmission on page 9-6*.

Active select mode See *Automatic Transmission on page 9-6*.

Manual transmission

Manual transmissions have six forward gears and a reverse gear. The shift pattern is shown on top of the gear lever.

To select **R**, move the gear lever sideways against spring pressure to engage reverse gear.

Note: On V6 vehicles, moving the gear lever with momentum will reduce the effort required to select **R**.

See *Manual Transmission on page 9-11*

See “Manual operating notes” under *Manual Transmission on page 9-11*.

Getting Started

Check before starting

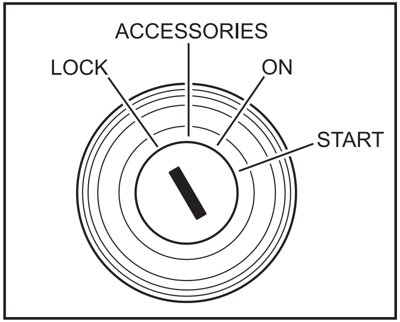
- Check that windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.
- Visually check tyre inflation. Check the tyre pressures each week.
- Ensure that all doors are closed and secured.
- Position your seat for comfortable driving.
- Adjust rear view mirrors.
- Fasten seatbelts.
- Check that the warning indicators light up when the ignition is switched on.

See *Driving Environment on page 9-1*.

See *Starting the Engine on page 9-4*.

Starting the engine

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> Do not switch the engine off while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for brakes or steering.
>
> Never remove the key while the vehicle is moving as this will lock the steering.



LOCK: The key is inserted and removed only from the LOCK position.

ACCESSORIES: When the key is in the ACCESSORIES position, the audio system and wipers operate.

ON: When the key is in the ON position, the engine is ready to start and all electrical systems are active.

Do not leave the switch in the ON position for a prolonged period unless the engine is running, otherwise the vehicle battery will discharge.

START: Turn the key to the START position momentarily and then release.

The engine starts automatically.

The key returns to the ON position when released.

See *Ignition Positions on page 9-3*.

Parking

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Automatic transmission: Select position **P**.

   Manual transmission: If facing uphill or on flat ground, select 1st gear. If facing downhill, select reverse gear.
3. Shut all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
5. Press 🔒 on the key to lock all doors and arm the alarm system.

✍ NOTES

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks

Keys 2-1
INFOCARD 2-5
Door Locks 2-5
Manual Door Locks 2-6
Safety Locks 2-7

Doors

Boot (Sedan) 2-8
Tailgate (Sportwagon) 2-9

Vehicle Security

Vehicle Alarm System 2-11
Anti-theft Alarm System 2-12
Immobiliser 2-12

Exterior Mirrors

Power Mirrors 2-13
Heated Mirrors 2-13
Kerb View Assist Mirrors 2-13

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rear View Mirror 2-15

Windows

Power Windows 2-15
Rear Windows 2-16

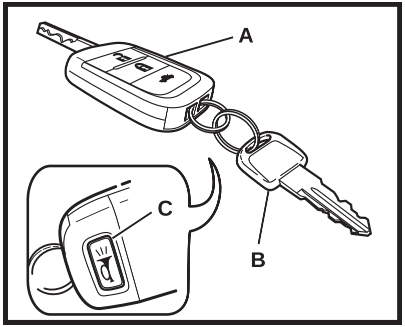
Roof

Sunroof 2-18

Keys and Locks

Keys

Sedan

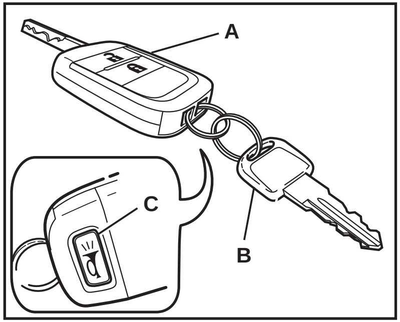


The key (A) operates all locks and the ignition, except for the glove box (B).

- Press 🔒 (A) to lock the doors and arm the alarm system.

- Press 🔓 (A) to unlock the doors and disarm the alarm system. See *Door Locks on page 2-5*.
- Press 🚗 (A) to unlatch the boot lid. See *Boot (Sedan) on page 2-8*.

Sportwagon



The key (A) operates all locks and the ignition, except for the glove box (B).

- Press 🔒 (A) to lock the doors and tailgate and to arm the alarm system.
- Press 🔓 (A) to unlock the doors and tailgate and to disarm the alarm system. See *Door Locks on page 2-5* and *Tailgate (Sportwagon) on page 2-9*.

Panic/vehicle locate button

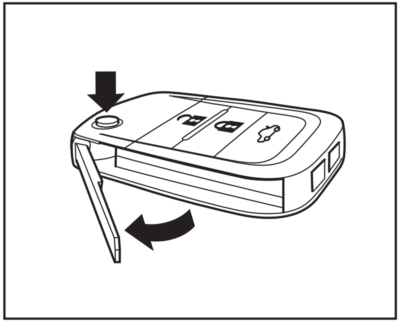
- To locate the vehicle, press 📯 (C) briefly.

  The exterior lights will flash and the horn will chirp.
- In an emergency, press and hold 📯 (C) for at least 2 seconds.

  The horn will sound and the turn signals will flash.
- To cancel, press 📯 (C) or insert the key and turn the ignition on.

Foldaway key blade

The vehicle may have a foldaway key blade.



1. Press the button to extend the key blade.
2. To retract the key blade, press the button and fold the blade into the key.

Note:

- The key engages audibly.
- A fixed blade key is supplied as the second key.

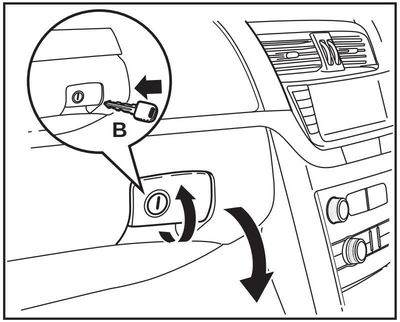
Matching transmitter(s) to your vehicle

Two keyless entry transmitters are coded to the vehicle.

If the vehicle’s key is lost, inform a Holden Dealer immediately so the vehicle can be reprogrammed to no longer recognise the missing key.

Additional transmitters also require re-coding to match the new transmitter.

Glove box key



The glove box (B) key locks and unlocks the glove box.

Valuables can be locked in the glove box and the key taken with you, separately from the ignition key.

Personal identity keys

The vehicle may have personal identity keys. Two sets of settings can be stored.

- All features can be customised. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.
- Settings are stored when a personal identity key is removed from the ignition.
- Press 🔓 to recall the settings.

The features remembered by each of the two memories are:

- Climate control settings
- Radio settings
- Trip computer settings

On some vehicles, the following settings are also remembered on button activation:

- Driver’s seat adjustment
- Exterior mirror position
- Exterior mirror position when reverse gear is selected. See *Power Mirrors on page 2-13*.

Features revert to the last setting used for each key.

Note:

- Two different memories are available, memory one and memory two.

  If a third key is made, the third key becomes memory one and the other two keys become identical memory two keys.
- The personal settings will not be applied until the 🔓 button is pressed on the key and is identified.
- If the vehicle battery has been disconnected, some settings may be forgotten.

  The adjustments will be remembered the next time the features are adjusted.

About the keys

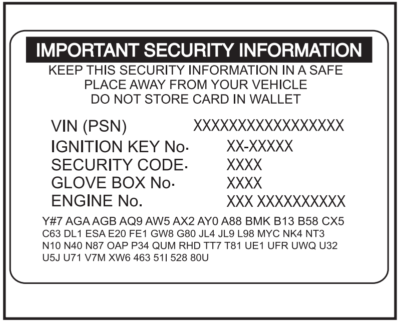
- The remote control in the key has a range of approximately 10 metres.
- The range depends on the charge of the key battery, ambient conditions, the key's location and the area between the key and the vehicle.
- If the key buttons do not work, move closer to the vehicle.
- Take care that no button is pressed unintentionally, especially when the vehicle is out of sight.
- Metallic window tint reduces the range of the key.
- 🔒 on the key functions when in the ignition, in any position, and when removed from the vehicle.
- If any door or the tailgate is open when 🔒 is pressed, the horn will chirp five times.
- The key buttons may not work if the vehicle is parked near strong radio activity, such as under TV towers (most likely in high lookout car parks).
- Ensure that other keys on the key ring are not between the key and the vehicle.
- Always store spare keys in a safe, dry place.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- At times a decrease in range may occur, which is normal.
- If the transmitter does not work:
  - You may need to stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
  - Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.

    If you are still having trouble, contact a Holden Dealer.
- The lithium battery should last approximately three years with normal use. See “Replace battery in remote key animation” under *Service Vehicle Messages on page 5-24*.

  Have a flat key battery replaced by a Holden Dealer.
- If pressing the key buttons does not work, the doors and tailgate can be locked and unlocked by turning the key in the driver's door lock:
  - Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle (once) to lock all doors and the tailgate.
  - Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle once to unlock the driver's door, twice to unlock all doors and the tailgate.Opening the door will cause activation of the alarm after a preset period of time. If this occurs, insert the key into the ignition and turn on.

- If the vehicle is delivered with only one key, or the key shows signs of damage, contact your Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

INFOCARD



IMPORTANT SECURITY INFORMATION

KEEP THIS SECURITY INFORMATION IN A SAFE
PLACE AWAY FROM YOUR VEHICLE
DO NOT STORE CARD IN WALLET

VIN (PSN)	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
IGNITION KEY No.	XX-XXXXX
SECURITY CODE.	XXXX
GLOVE BOX No.	XXXX
ENGINE No.	XXX XXXXXXXXXX

Y#7 AGA AGB AQ9 AW5 AX2 AY0 A88 BMK B13 B58 CX5
C63 DL1 ESA E20 FE1 GW8 G80 JL4 JL9 L98 MYC NK4 NT3
N10 N40 N87 OAP P34 QUM RHD TT7 T81 UE1 UFR UWQ U32
U5J U71 V7M XW6 463 51I 528 80U

The security card lists various security numbers for the vehicle, including key numbers.

Keep the card in a safe place, away from the vehicle.

If a key is lost, a replacement can be ordered through any Holden Dealer by quoting the key code number and the security code number and providing proof of ownership.

Door Locks

Locking and unlocking

To customise features, see *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40* and *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-11*.

When locking the vehicle:

- An open door or tailgate will remain unlocked.
- The horn will chirp five times.
- If the driver's door is open when the 🔒 button is pressed, all doors and the tailgate will be locked and the driver's door lock and snib will be unlocked immediately.

Press 🔒 once to:

- Lock all doors and the tailgate.
- Arm the alarm (after a short delay).
- Switch the interior dome light off (if the switch is set to door position).
- Flash the exterior turn signals.
- Deactivate the power windows (after a preset time).

Press 🔒 a second time to:

- Arm the alarm immediately, bypassing the 30 second delay period.
- The horn will chirp.

Press 🔓 once to:

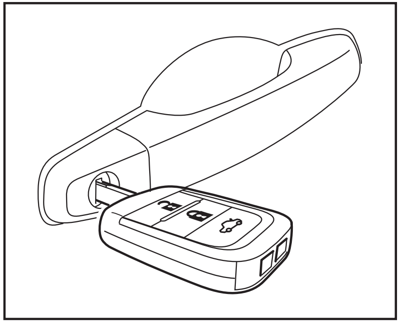
- Unlock either the driver's door only, or all doors and the tailgate.
- Disarm the alarm.
- Switch on the interior dome light (if the switch is set to the 🚪 position) and power windows for a short time.
- Flash the exterior turn signals.

- Switch on the approach lighting for a predetermined time. See *Entry Lighting on page 6-7*.

Press 🔓 a second time to:

- Unlock all the other doors and the tailgate (if pressing the first time unlocked the driver's door only).
- Flash the exterior turn signals.
- Reactivate the approach lighting.

Manual Door Locks



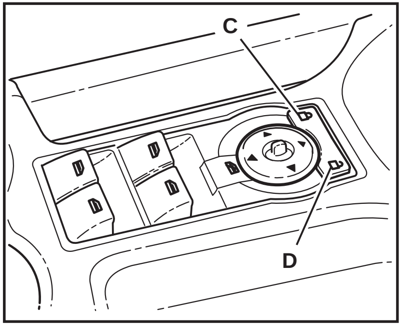
- To lock, insert the key into the driver's door lock and turn towards the rear of the vehicle, then turn back to the vertical position and remove.

  This will lock all doors and the tailgate and arm the alarm system.
- To unlock, insert the key into the driver's door lock and turn it once towards the front of the vehicle to unlock the driver's door. Turn it twice towards the front of the vehicle to unlock all doors and the tailgate.

Note: This will not disarm the alarm system.

If the vehicle is unlocked using the key in the door lock while the alarm is armed, opening a door will activate the alarm. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-11*.

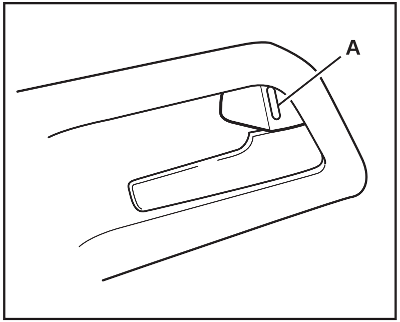
Locking/unlocking from the inside



- To lock, press 🔒 (C) on the centre console to lock all doors and the tailgate.

  This will not arm the alarm.
- To unlock, press 🔓 (D) on the centre console to unlock all doors and the tailgate.

Door lock snibs



- Pull the snib (A) to lock the door.
- A door is locked when the lock snib (A) is flush with the door handle.
- A door is unlocked when the lock snib (A) is showing red.
- Pulling the snib (A) on any of the doors locks only that door.
- Do not operate the driver's door lock snib when the door is open.

Free turning door locks

The door lock cylinder is designed to free turn if it is forcefully rotated without the correct key or if the correct key is not fully inserted.

1. To reset, turn the lock with the correct key fully inserted until its slot is vertical.
2. Remove the key, then re-insert it.
3. If the lock still free turns, turn the key 180 degrees and repeat the procedure.

Note: This feature is provided as a theft deterrent, to prevent the lock being forced open.

The force required to make the key free turn reduces each time.

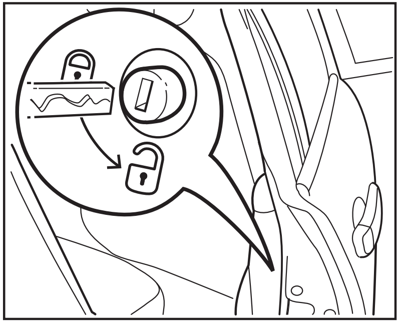
Do not attempt to demonstrate or test this feature.

Always remember to fully insert the key when locking and unlocking the doors.

If any problems occur, contact a Holden Dealer.

Safety Locks

Child safety rear door locks



Child safety locking helps prevent rear doors being accidentally opened by small children in the vehicle.

The locks are accessible when the door is open.

To prevent the doors being opened from the inside, use the ignition key to turn the switch away from the vertical position.

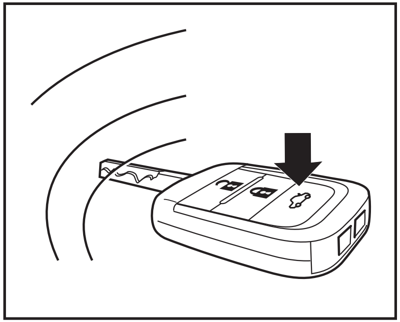
⚠ WARNING

For safety, always check that the lock is operating correctly (after setting) by trying to open the door from inside the vehicle.

Doors

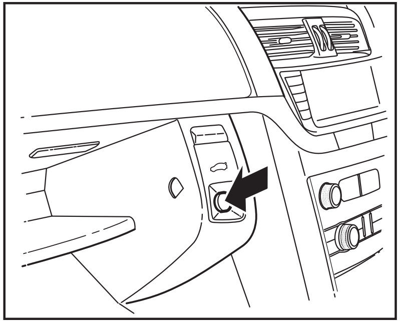
Boot (Sedan)

Key button



Press and hold 🚗 on the key to unlock/open the boot.

Boot release button



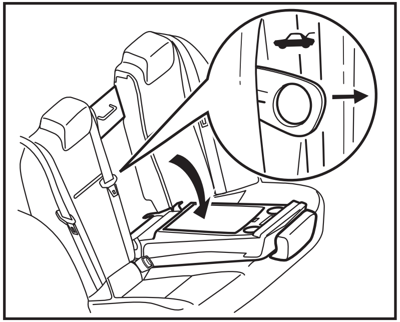
- The boot release button is located inside the glove box. Pressing this button will unlock/open the boot.
- After partially opening the boot lid, gas struts take over to lift and hold the boot lid in the open position.
- Unlock the boot only when the vehicle is stationary.
- The boot locks automatically when closed.

Note:

- The boot release button in the glove box is disabled when all doors are locked, the alarm is enabled, or the vehicle is moving faster than 13 km/h.
- If the boot is not closed properly when the vehicle is locked, the security warning light 🔒 will flash immediately upon locking (without the 30 second illumination period).

  If this happens, unlock the vehicle, close the boot, and relock the vehicle.

Emergency boot release



An emergency boot release is provided behind the centre of the rear seat.

1. Press the lock button (located at the top centre of the middle seat) all the way down to unlock the seatback.
2. Fold it down to gain access to the release handle.
3. Pull the release handle sideways, towards the centre of the vehicle, to open the boot.

The release handle is also visible from inside the boot.

Tailgate (Sportwagon)

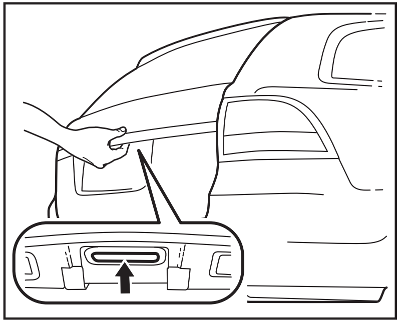
⚠ WARNING

To prevent dangerous exhaust fumes entering the vehicle, close the tailgate when the engine is running. If it is necessary to leave the tailgate open (while carrying bulky cargo), close all windows, switch heater controls to ‘fresh’, and set fan to highest speed.

Key button

Press 🔓 to unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

If the **Two stage unlock** feature has been selected in the vehicle personalisation menu, press the unlock button a second time.



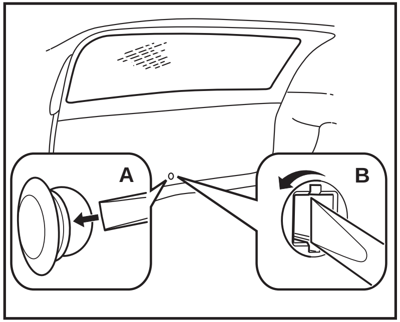
To open the tailgate, press the button below the handle.

After partially opening, gas struts take over to lift and hold the tailgate in the open position.

Note: When the engine is running, the vehicle must be in **P** (automatic transmission) or have the parking brake on (manual transmission).

Manual tailgate release

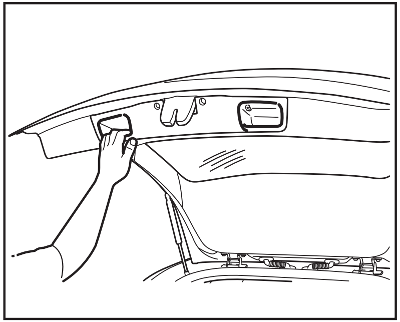
If the battery has been disconnected or is flat, the tailgate unlock button will not operate.



To open the tailgate, access the cargo area from inside the vehicle.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, remove the rubber cover at (A).
2. Insert a flat-blade screwdriver into the hole (B) and turn anticlockwise.

Closing the tailgate



Use the handle to pull down the tailgate to the almost closed position. The tailgate closes and latches itself automatically.

Note: It is not necessary to slam the tailgate.

Press 🔒 on the key to lock all the doors and the tailgate.

If the tailgate is not closed when the vehicle is locked, the horn will chirp rapidly five times. All doors will lock except the tailgate.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid injury and/or damage to the vehicle, check each time before the tailgate is closed that the contact area is unobstructed.

Vehicle Security

Vehicle Alarm System

- When 🔒 on the key is pressed or when the vehicle is locked using the key in the driver's door lock, the alarm is armed automatically (after about 30 seconds).

  The security warning light 🔒 on the instrument panel will illuminate for 30 seconds and then begin flashing.
- The alarm system is disarmed automatically when 🔓 on the key is pressed.
- While the alarm system is armed, the boot/tailgate can still be opened without activating the alarm by pressing 🚗 on the key.

  The alarm will be disarmed for the boot/tailgate only.
- Closing the boot/tailgate will rearm the alarm for the boot/tailgate after a short delay.

Note: While the alarm is armed, it will activate if:

- Any door or the tailgate is opened.
- Any door or the tailgate is unlocked without pressing 🔓 on the key.

Activate/deactivate

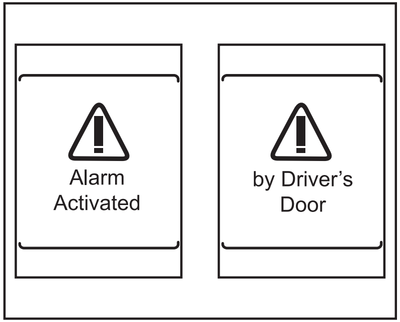
If activated, the alarm sounds and the turn signals flash.

To deactivate the alarm, do one of the following:

- Press the 🔓 button on the key.
- Turn on the ignition.
- Allow the alarm to time out after about 30 seconds and reset itself, to guard against further break-in attempts.

Anti-theft Alarm System

If the horn chirps when 🔒 on the key is pressed, an attempted break-in has occurred.



- If the alarm has been activated, the **Alarm Activated** animated symbol is displayed for about 1 second followed by an animated symbol showing which trigger point has activated the alarm.
- If there is more than one trigger point, an animated symbol for each of them will follow.
- Each animated symbol will be displayed for about 1 second before the display returns to **Alarm Activated**.
- The animated symbols are shown in a continuous cycle until the **TRIP** button is pressed.

The following messages are possible depending on the model and what has activated the alarm:

- **by Bonnet**: if the bonnet has been opened.
- **by Boot/tailgate**: if the boot (Sedan) or tailgate (Sportwagon) has been opened.
- **by Passenger doors**: if one of the passenger doors has been opened.
- **by Driver's door**: if the driver's door has been opened.

Immobiliser

This vehicle is fitted with an immobiliser. It prevents unauthorised engine starting.

The ignition key will be recognised by the vehicle when the key is inserted into the ignition.

When difficulty is experienced in starting the vehicle, check the following:

- Extend the blade fully before inserting into the ignition.
- Do not have large bundles of keys attached to the ignition key.
- Do not have keys from other vehicles attached to the ignition key.
- Do not attempt to start the vehicle with a non-approved key.

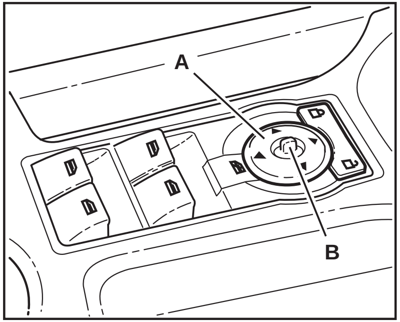
If the vehicle still fails to start, contact a Holden Dealer.

Note:

- Do not disassemble the key.
- Replacement keys can only be programmed by a Holden Dealer.
- If the vehicle key is lost, inform your Holden Dealer immediately so the vehicle can be reprogrammed to no longer recognise the missing key.
- A maximum of four keys can be programmed to suit one vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

Power Mirrors



To adjust the exterior mirrors, switch on the ignition and use the switches in the centre console:

- Move switch (B) to the right to operate the driver side mirror.
- Move switch (B) to the left to operate the passenger side mirror.
- Press the arrows on switch (A) to adjust the mirror in the direction the arrow is pointing.
- Move switch (B) back to its centre position to deactivate switch (A).

⚠ WARNING

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped to provide a wider view. Objects in this mirror are closer than they appear.

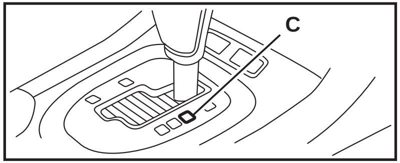
Heated Mirrors

The vehicle may have heated exterior mirrors. The heating switches on automatically when the rear window demister is switched on.

Kerb View Assist Mirrors

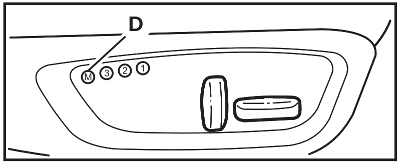
The vehicle may have an external mirror DIP.

The mirror DIP allows movement of the passenger side external mirror automatically to a preset view, for reversing the vehicle.



To operate the mirror DIP:

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Move the gear lever to **R** position (C).



3. Briefly press **M** (D) on the driver's seat.

   A double chime sounds if the mirror DIP is activated (preset).

   A single chime sounds if the mirror DIP is deactivated (no preset).
4. To change from activated to deactivated mirror DIP or vice versa, briefly press **M** (D) again.

To adjust the mirror DIP:

1. Activate the mirror DIP as above.

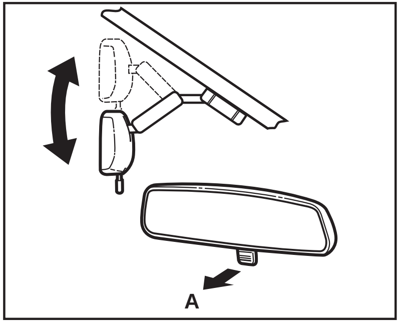
   The passenger side mirror will move to the position currently set.
2. Adjust the mirror to the desired view. See *Power Mirrors on page 2-13*.
3. Move the gear lever out of **R** (C) position.
4. To store the setting, briefly press **M** (D).

Note:

- To store the setting together with your seat position settings, briefly press **M** (D) followed by the desired memory button (1, 2 or 3).
- The passenger side mirror will move to the preset view the next time the gear lever is moved to **R** (C).
- The vehicle's memory also remembers whether the mirror DIP was activated or not.
- To recall all the stored settings, press either the memory button (1, 2 or 3) or push 🔓 on your personal identity key. See *Memory Seats on page 3-5* and "Personal identity keys" under *Keys on page 2-1*.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rear View Mirror



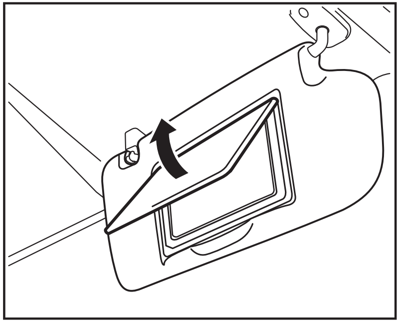
Push the lever (A) on the lower edge of the mirror towards the front of the vehicle, then adjust the position of the mirror.

To reduce headlight glare from following vehicles, pull the lever (A) towards the rear of the vehicle.

Note: The rear view clarity is reduced when the mirror is set to the anti-glare position.

Return the lever to its original position as soon as the glare has disappeared.

Sun visor mirrors



To view the mirror, pull the cover up from the lower edge.

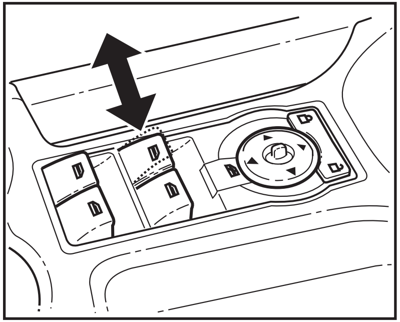
If the vehicle has illuminated lights, they turn on and off when the cover is opened and closed.

Windows

Power Windows

⚠ WARNING

Before operating the power windows, check that they are free of obstructions and that passengers and pets are not close to the moving window.



The power window switches are located between the front seats.

Push and hold or pull and hold the required button to raise or lower a window.

The window stops moving up as soon as the button is released.

The power windows can be operated:

- When the ignition is turned on.
- When 🔓 on the key is pressed from inside the vehicle. The windows can be operated for 10 minutes provided no door is opened.
- If any door is opened within 45 seconds from the ignition key being turned to the lock position, the windows remain operational for 45 seconds.

The power windows are disabled when:

- Any door is opened after 45 seconds from the ignition key being turned to the lock position.

Front windows

Auto down

- Press and hold the switch down for at least half a second, then release.
- Press down again or pull up the switch to interrupt the automatic operation.
- Rock the button to open the window in short steps.

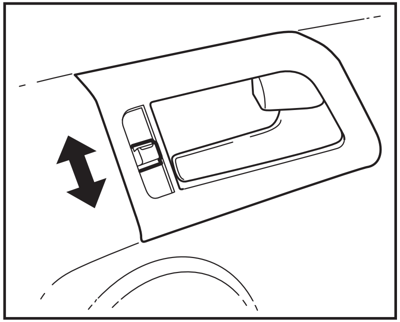
Auto up

The vehicle may have an auto up function.

- Pull and hold the switch up for at least half a second, then release.
- Press down or pull up the switch again to interrupt the automatic operation.
- Rock the button to close the window in short steps.

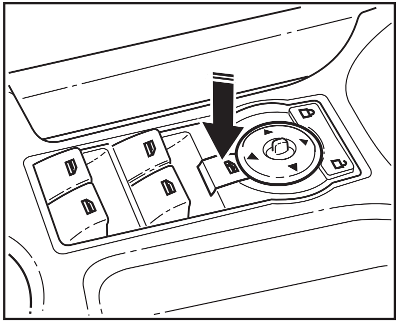
Note: If the window encounters any resistance during closing, it will stop immediately and open again.

Rear Windows



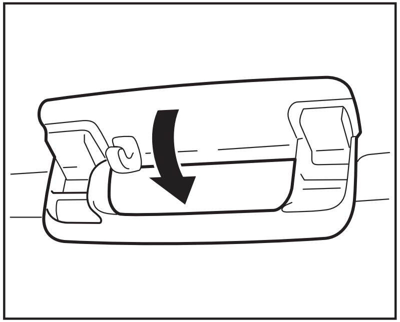
The rear windows can also be operated by switches located on the rear doors.

Child safety switch



Press the rear child safety switch to activate/deactivate the rear door switches.

Assist grips



Assist grips are provided above the doors.

When released, they fold up against the roof.

⚠ WARNING

Do not hold onto assist grips while seated in the vehicle.

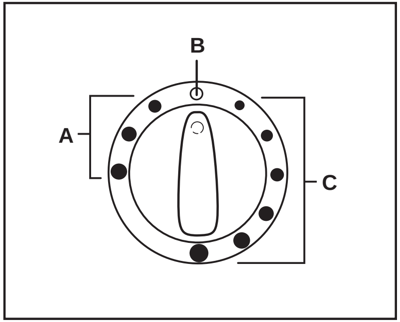
Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up lightweight articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of hanging items.

Roof

Sunroof

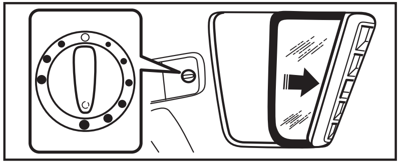
The vehicle may have a sunroof.



The sunroof:

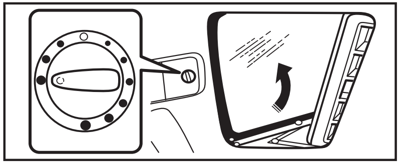
- Switch is located in the roof between the sun visors
- Can be tilted or slid back into the roof
- Will operate with the ignition in the Accessories or On position

Opening the sunroof



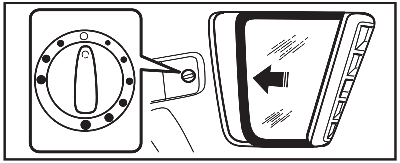
- Rotate the switch clockwise to one of the six opening positions (C).
- The sunroof drags the sunshade open as it slides open. It does not close the sunshade.

Tilting the sunroof



Rotate the switch anticlockwise to one of the three tilt positions (A).

Closing the sunroof



Rotate the switch to the closed position (B).

Obstruction detection

If the sunroof:

- Detects an obstruction when closing from the sliding position, it immediately returns to the full open slide position.
- Detects an obstruction when closing from the tilt position, it immediately returns to the full open tilt position.

The sunroof will not move again until the switch is pressed upwards or a different position is selected.

Note:

- Obstruction detection is also active when the sunroof is moving from one level of tilt or slide opening to the next, in the closing direction.
- If an obstruction is detected during an auto-close operation, the sunroof returns to the full open or tilted position and switches off.

⚠ CAUTION

Obstruction detection only operates when the sunroof is closing. Before opening the sunroof, ensure that there are no obstructions, e.g. a roof rack.

Auto-close function

When the ignition is turned off, the sunroof closes automatically after 3 seconds.

When the ignition is turned on with the switch in one of the open or tilt positions, the sunroof will not return to the position automatically.

To return it to the position set, press the switch upwards.

To stop auto-closing, do one of the following at any time after turning the ignition off:

- Press the switch.
- Turn the switch to a different position.

Recall function

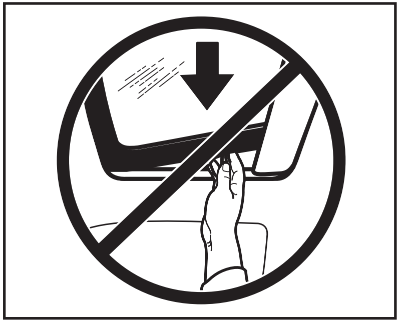
Use the recall function if the sunroof position is not the same as the position set on the switch.

It can be activated if one of the following has occurred:

- The switch was rotated to the position while the sunroof was switched off.
- The obstruction detection function has reversed the sunroof to the fully open slide or tilt position.

Press the switch upwards and the sunroof will move to the position set on the switch.

Do not press the switch for more than 5 seconds.



⚠ WARNING

Keep hands and fingers clear of the sunroof tilting mechanism when operating it. The scissor action of the parts when moving may cause serious personal injury and/or may dismember fingers.

⚠ WARNING

Fitting an aftermarket sunroof may void the warranty on your vehicle and could result in injury to the vehicle occupants in the event of an accident.

Cleaning and maintenance

⚠ CAUTION

The tinted glass panel on the sunroof is heat and UV resistant. Ensure that due care is taken and that the directions below are followed when cleaning.

Regularly clean the glass, flocked seal and roof flanges with a moist, soft cloth.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints

Head Restraints 3-1

Front Seats

Seat Position 3-3
Power Seat Adjustment 3-3
Memory Seats 3-5

Rear Seats

Rear Seats 3-7
Rear Seat Armrest 3-8

Seatbelts

How to Wear Seatbelts Properly 3-8
Three-Point Seatbelt 3-9
Seatbelt Use During Pregnancy 3-10
Seatbelt Care 3-10
Replacing Seatbelt System Parts after a Crash 3-10

Airbag System

Airbag System 3-11
Front Airbag System 3-12
Side Airbag System 3-13
Curtain Airbag System 3-14
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 3-15
Notices for Customer-Installed Equipment 3-15
Airbag System Check 3-15
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 3-16

Child Restraints

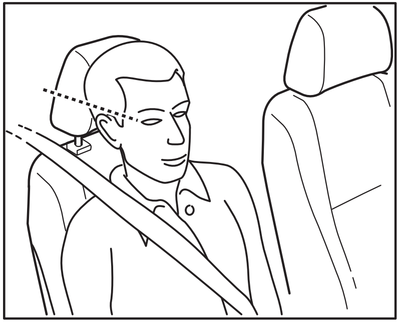
Older Children 3-16
Infants and Young Children 3-17
Child Restraint Systems 3-18
Where to Put the Restraint . . . 3-19
Child Restraint Installation Locations 3-20

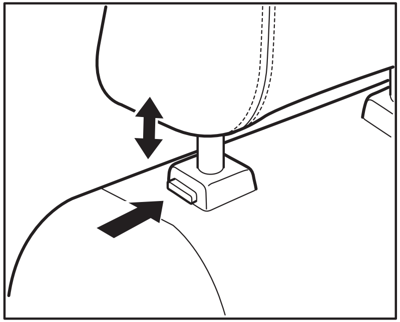
Head Restraints

⚠ WARNING

This safety feature is not intended to be used as a headrest. It is solely for the reduction of whiplash neck movement in an accident involving your vehicle.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.

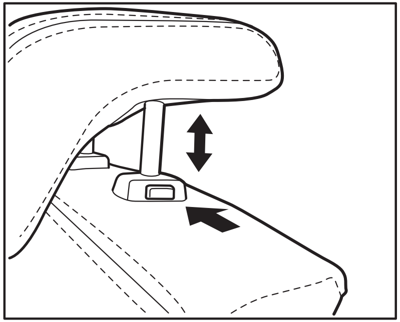




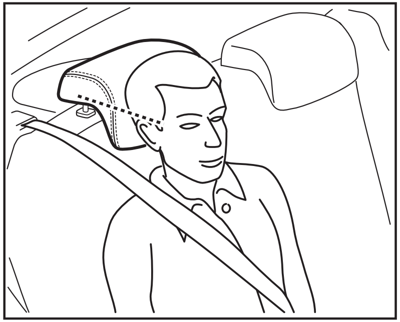
Lift the head restraint up to raise it.

Push the locking button and push the head restraint down to lower it.

Front head restraints cannot be removed.



The vehicle may have adjustable rear head restraints, these can be removed. See *Child Restraint Systems on page 3-18*.



Front Seats

Seat Position

⚠ WARNING

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seatbelts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers. These may interfere with the operation of the side impact airbags (SIAB).

Always sit centrally in the seat.

Do not place any object between the seat and the door. See *Airbag System on page 3-11*

Power Seat Adjustment

⚠ WARNING

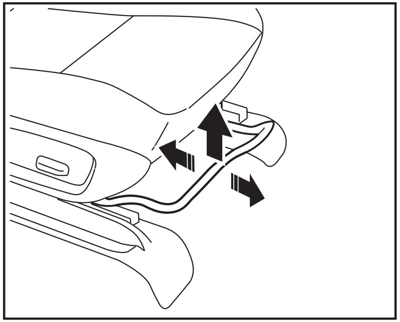
Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving, as the seat could move suddenly causing the driver to lose control.

⚠ WARNING

Before moving the seat, ensure that the path both in front of and behind the seat is clear of obstructions.

Seat adjustment

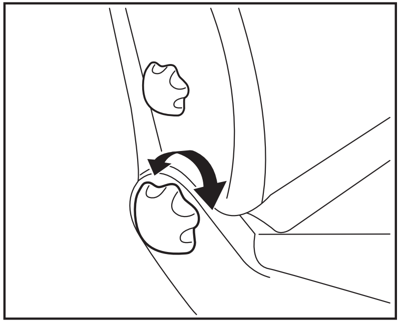
The vehicle may have the following levers and switches for seat adjustment.



Forwards/Backwards (Type A)

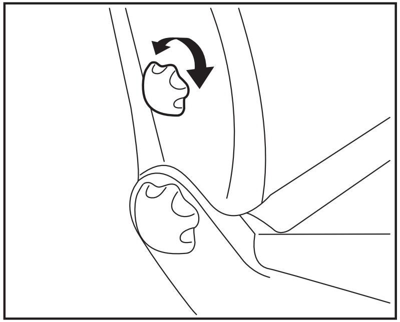
Move the seat forwards or backwards by lifting the bar at the front and sliding the seat.

Release the bar to re-engage the latch.



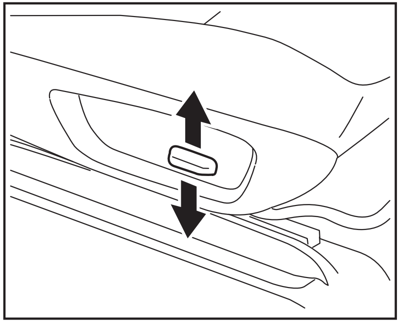
Recline (Type A)

Recline the seatback by rotating the lower hand wheel.



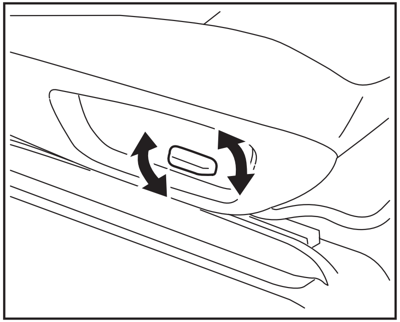
Lumbar

Adjust the lumbar support by rotating the upper hand wheel.



Up/down

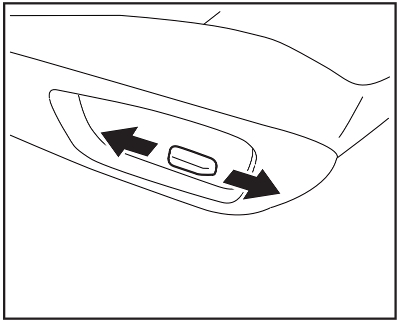
Raise or lower the seat by moving the horizontal switch up or down.



Tilt

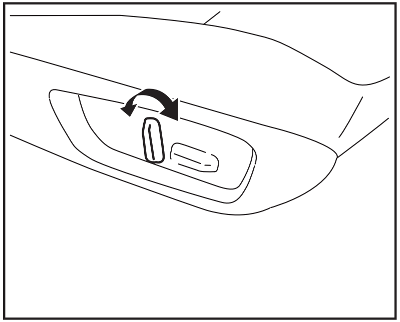
Tilt the seat up at the front by tilting the front of the horizontal switch up.

Tilt the seat down at the back by tilting the back of the horizontal switch down.



Forwards/backwards (Type B)

Move the seat forwards or backwards by moving the horizontal switch forwards or backwards.



Recline (Type B)

Adjust the seatback by tilting the vertical switch forwards or backwards.

Memory Seats

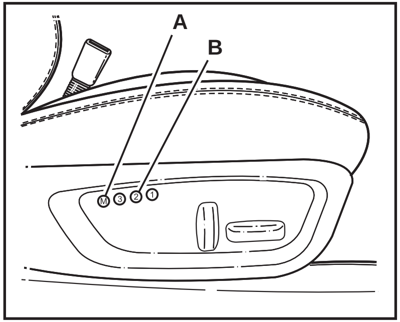
Memory settings for different drivers

The vehicle may have seat and mirror position memory.

Up to three different settings may be stored.

⚠ WARNING

Before moving the seat, ensure that the path both in front of and behind the seat is clear of obstructions.



To store a setting:

1. Adjust the driver's seat by using the switches. See *Seat Position on page 3-3*.
2. Adjust the exterior mirrors. See *Power Mirrors on page 2-13*.
3. Adjust the passenger mirror DIP settings. See *Kerb View Assist Mirrors on page 2-13*.
4. Switch on the ignition.
5. Move the gear lever to **P** or **N**.
6. Press **M** (A) and a chime will sound.
7. Within 5 seconds, press and hold the desired memory button **1**, **2** or **3** (B). Two chimes will sound.
8. Move the gear lever to **R**. This will move the passenger mirror to the DIP position and store this setting.

To recall a setting, press the desired memory button **1**, **2** or **3** (B) and hold until the seat is in position.

Note: Releasing the button will halt seat movement.

Using personal identity keys

The vehicle may have personal identity keys.

When 🔒 is pressed the seat will move to the last position used for that key. See "Personal identity keys" under *Keys on page 2-1*.

Rear Seats

⚠ WARNING

Do not press the release button on the top of the seatback while the vehicle is moving. This could cause damage or injury to the occupants.

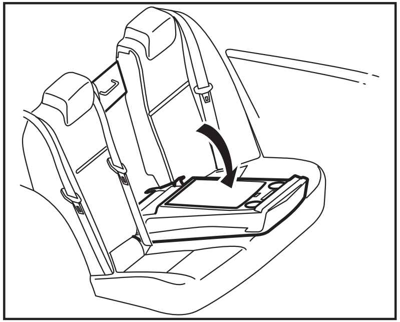
Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seatback could be thrown within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not trap the seatbelt when returning the seatback or seat section to the upright position.

Sedan

The middle section opens forward to give access the boot area or to carry long loads.

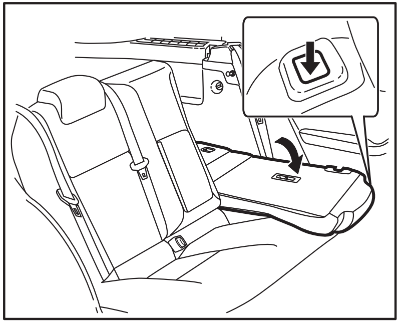


1. Press the lock button at the top centre of the middle seat.
2. Push the middle section back into place to close.
3. Ensure the lock button is fully engaged.

If the latch is not fully engaged, a red warning colour will be visible around the button.

Sportwagon

The rear seatback is divided into two sections. Either or both may be folded down.

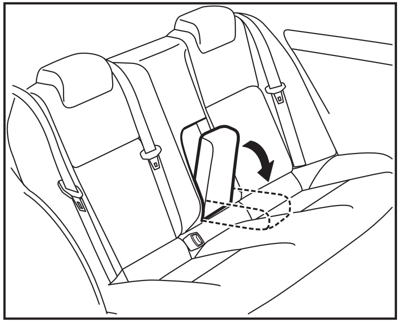


1. Press the lock button near the head restraint to fold down.
2. Fold back to return to the upright position.

Note: Try to move the seatback to check the latch is engaged.

If the latch is not fully engaged, a red warning colour will be visible around the button.

Rear Seat Armrest



The vehicle may have a rear middle armrest.

- Pull the armrest down to use.
- Push the armrest up when it is no longer required.

Note: Ensure the armrest is folded up before folding the seatback forward.

Seatbelts

How to Wear Seatbelts Properly

⚠ WARNING

Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the hips, or across the hips, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seatbelts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly with battery acid.

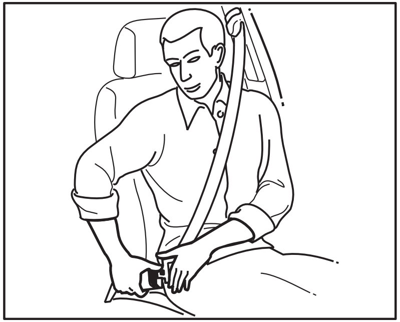
Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seatbelt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seatbelt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

Three-Point Seatbelt

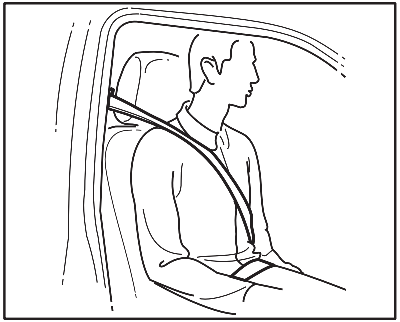
Fitting



The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips.

1. Pull the metal tongue across your body.
2. Clip it into the buckle.
3. When the metal tongue is locked safely in place you will hear a click.
4. Give a gentle pull on the buckle to ensure it is fully engaged.
5. Settle the belt at the hip.
6. Run your hand under the sash from hip to shoulder.

The belt should fit comfortably. Any extra belt length retracts automatically.

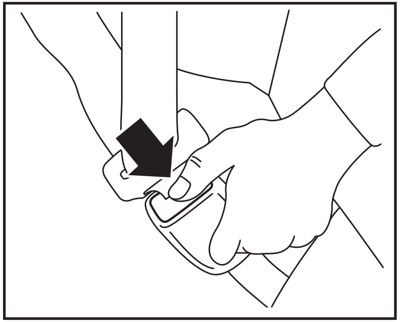


Note: For your safety, wear the lap section of the seatbelt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist or abdomen.

The Emergency-locking Retractor Belt allows you to move while the vehicle is travelling normally, but locks immediately on fast braking, impact with a solid object, or any quick movement by the wearer.

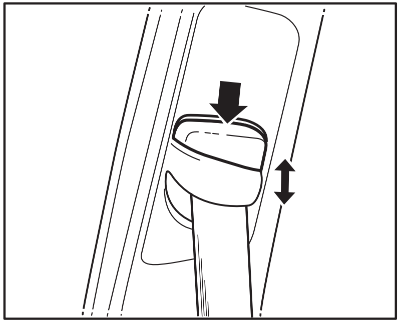
If the shoulder portion of a rear seatbelt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.

Removing



1. Press the release button on the buckle.
2. Allow the belt to retract.
3. Check that it retracts fully without twisting or turning.

Shoulder height adjustment



The vehicle may have seat belt shoulder height adjustment.

Adjust the position of the seat belt anchor to suit the height of the wearer.

1. Press and hold the button.
2. Move up or down as required.
3. Release the button.
4. Ensure that the anchor clicks into position.

⚠ WARNING

For your safety, do not adjust the seatbelt shoulder height while driving.

Seatbelt Use During Pregnancy

Seatbelts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seatbelt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three-point belt, with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach, throughout the pregnancy.

Seatbelt Care

⚠ WARNING

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly with battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

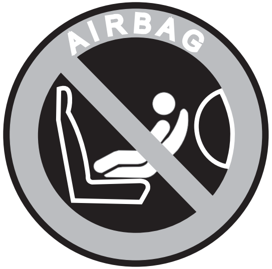
Replacing Seatbelt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ WARNING

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact, even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

Airbag System

Airbags and child restraints



⚠ WARNING

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats. See *Child Restraint Systems on page 3-18*.

⚠ WARNING

Airbags are part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS), as they assist but do not replace seatbelts. Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they deploy including speed, angle of collision, and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is

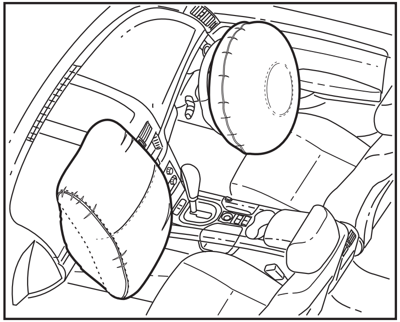
(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

involved in a rollover. Seatbelts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury. Seatbelts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

Front Airbag System



The airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the dashboard on the passenger side. These are identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

⚠ WARNING

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

The driver should adjust the seat as far to the rear as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

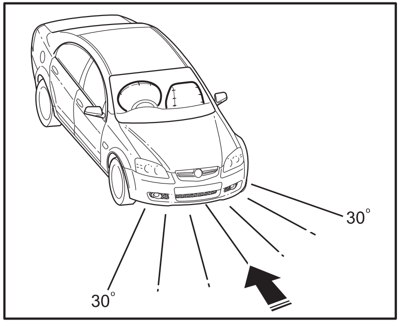
The wording **AIRBAG** above the glove box and a label attached under the sun visor indicate that a passenger airbag is fitted.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place any objects on or over the dashboard or between an airbag and yourself.

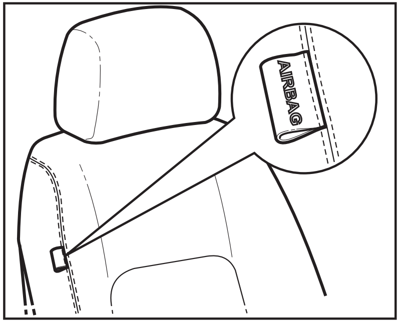
Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the dashboard.

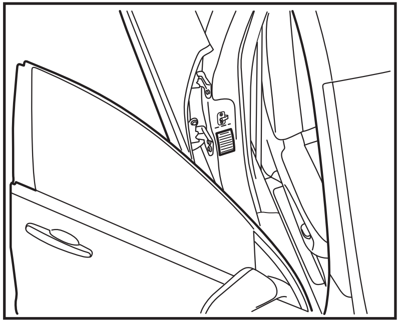


Front airbags will inflate in certain severe frontal or near-frontal impacts. Front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the side, from the rear, or in rollovers. Always wear a seatbelt.

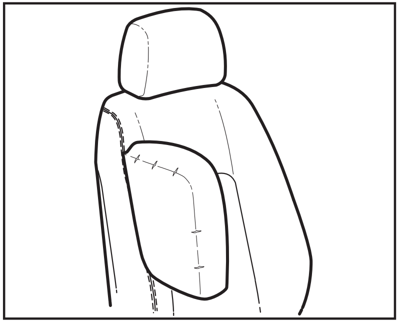
Side Airbag System



Side Impact Airbags (SIAB) are stored in the sides of the front seats on the side closest to the door.



SIABs are identified by labels with the words **AIRBAG** on the seatback and **FRONT SEAT SIDE IMPACT AIRBAGS** on the door pillar.



Note: SIABs deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.

Because there is limited time available to detect some side impacts, it is not possible to deploy the SIAB in all serious accidents.

A SIAB will deploy in certain severe side impacts. SIABs are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the front, from the rear, or in rollovers. Always wear a seatbelt.

⚠ WARNING

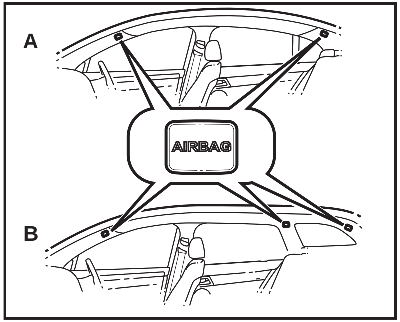
Do not fit unauthorised seat covers as they may interfere with the deployment of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB).

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

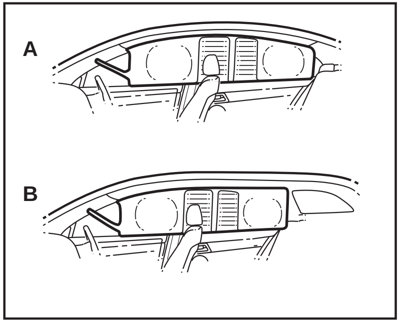
Do not lean on or sleep against the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seatbelt.

Curtain Airbag System



Curtain airbag labels are on the vehicle in the positions shown for Sedan (A) and Sportwagon (B).



Note: Curtain airbags deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.

Because there is limited time available to detect some side impacts, it is not possible to deploy the curtain airbags in all serious accidents.

Curtain airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the front, from the rear, or in rollovers. Always wear a seatbelt.

⚠ WARNING

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates. Refer to the illustration.

Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up light articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of hanging items.

Do not hold onto the assist grips (above the doors) while seated in the vehicle.

Do not lean on or sleep against the front or rear doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seatbelt.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

Airbags inflate and deflate within milliseconds.

Fifteen seconds after any airbag or seatbelt pretensioner has been activated (provided the vehicle has stopped and there is battery power), the vehicle will:

- Switch off the engine.
- Switch off the fuel pump.
- Switch on the hazard lights.
- Switch on the interior light.
- Unlock the doors.

Switch the ignition off and then on if restarting the engine is required.

Notices for Customer-Installed Equipment

⚠ WARNING

Fitting other types of roo/nudge bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling. See “Fitting roo/nudge bars” under *Add-On Electrical Equipment on page 9-39*.

Airbag System Check

The indicator on the instrument panel lights up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. This indicates that the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) is operational.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately:

- If does not light up when the ignition is turned on.

- If lights up when driving.
- If the warning **Airbag Fault** is displayed on the instrument panel.

  The SRS may not function correctly in the event of an accident. See *Airbag System on page 3-11*.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

Note: After an accident where the SRS has deployed, the systems, associated parts and hardware must be checked and replaced as required.

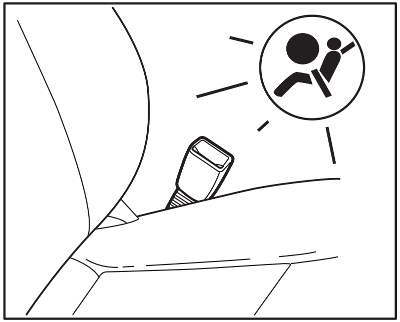
Seats, associated parts and hardware must also be checked and replaced as required.

The SRS should also be inspected after an accident if:

- The dashboard area or steering wheel is scratched, cracked or damaged.
- The front seats and upholstery are damaged.
- The headliner or trim panels are damaged.

It is recommended that this work be carried out by a Holden Dealer or approved repairer.

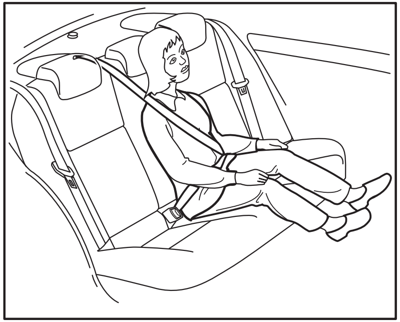
Seatbelt pretensioners



Front seatbelt pretensioners are part of the SRS. In certain severe collisions the seatbelts are tightened by the seatbelt pretensioners.

Child Restraints

Older Children



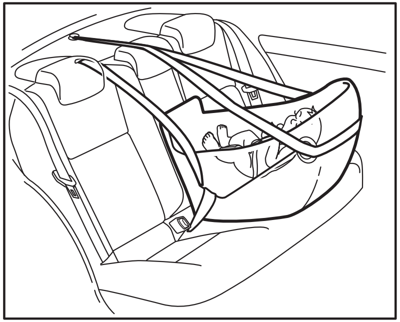
A child should use a normal three-point seatbelt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.

- The sash belt is centred across the shoulder and chest.
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

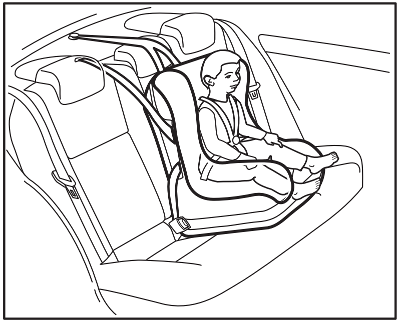
Infants and Young Children

Infants



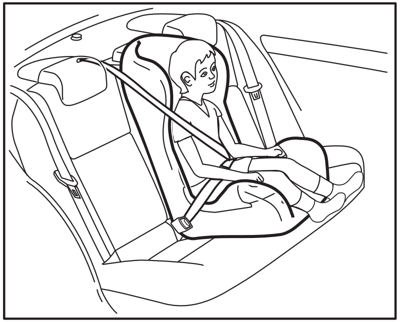
Rear-facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young Children



Forward-facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster Seats



Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward-facing child seat but are still too small for a three-point seatbelt.

Child Restraint Systems

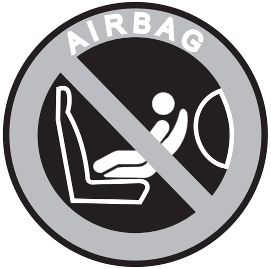
⚠ WARNING

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD

Do not use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.



⚠ WARNING

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only.

The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers are suitably restrained. In most states and territories of Australia and New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific state or territory regulations to determine which child restraint is suitable for your child.

⚠ WARNING

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

Note: Fitting some child seats may require removal of the rear head restraint(s).

1. Raise the head restraint fully.
2. Insert a small probe into the hole on the non-adjusting pole guide.
3. Press the probe inwards.
4. Simultaneously press the release button.
5. Lift the head restraint up and out.
6. Store the head restraint in a safe location.
7. Reinstall the head restraint when the child seat is no longer fitted.

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's fitting instructions when installing a child restraint in the vehicle.

Note: Refer to the relevant legislation, an approved child restraint fitting station, or capsule manufacturer's information for the recommended type of child restraint to use.

Child restraint seatbelt locking feature

The rear seatbelts have a child restraint locking feature.

When engaged, this feature prevents the seatbelt from being loosened without releasing the buckle.

To engage:

1. Clip the metal tongue into the buckle.
2. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.
3. To tighten the belt around the installed child seat, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
4. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 2 to 4.
5. To remove, press the release button on the buckle and allow the belt to fully retract.

Where to Put the Restraint

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, for harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.
>
> (Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fitting (as shown in the following illustrations) are to be used. Earlier types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

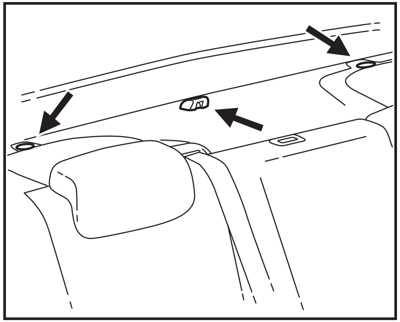
Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go. The forward-facing child restraint must still be attached to the passenger side child restraint anchorage point, located behind the rear seat.

Remember, it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seat.

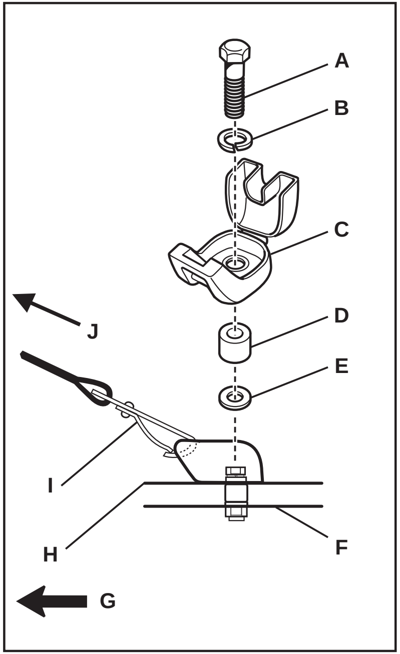
Note: If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, please contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Child Restraint Installation Locations

Sedan anchorage points



Using sedan outer anchorage points



A. 30 mm long bolt

B. Lock washer

C. Anchor fitting

D. 10 mm spacer

E. Paper assembly washer

F. Metal parcel shelf

G. Front of vehicle

H. Parcel shelf trim

I. Attaching clip

J. Direction of child restraint

Holden child restraint fitting

1. Unscrew the cover plug.
2. Install the bolt (A), lock washer (B), anchor fitting (C), spacer (D) and paper washer (E).
3. Tighten the bolt to 20 ± 5 N•m (Newton metres).

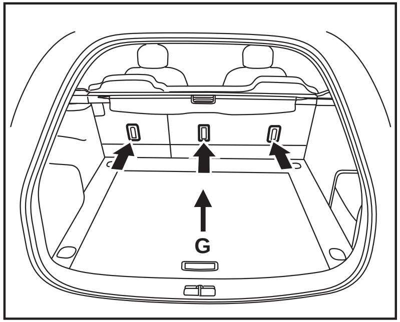
Generic child restraint anchor fitting

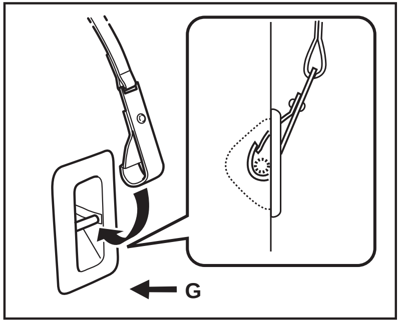
Unscrew the cover plug.

Some generic fittings come with a selection of spacers.

A 10 mm spacer is required.

Sportwagon anchorage points





G. Front of vehicle

Storage

Storage Compartments
Glove Box 4-1
Cupholders 4-1
Front Storage 4-2
Sunglass Storage 4-3
Rear Storage 4-3
Centre Console Storage 4-4

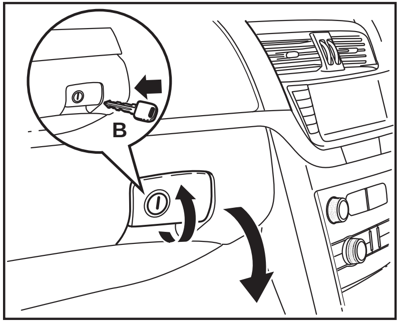
Additional Storage Features
Cargo Cover (Sportwagon) 4-5
Cargo Tie-Downs (Sportwagon) 4-7
Luggage Net (Sportwagon) . . . 4-8
Convenience Net (Sedan) . . . 4-13

Roof Rack System
Roof Rack System 4-14

Information on Loading the Vehicle
Information on Loading the Vehicle 4-15

Storage Compartments

Glove Box



The glove box is located in the dashboard, in front of the passenger's seat.

To open, pull the handle towards you. To close, push the lid firmly back into place.

A glove box key is provided for locking. See "Glove box key" under *Keys on page 2-1*.

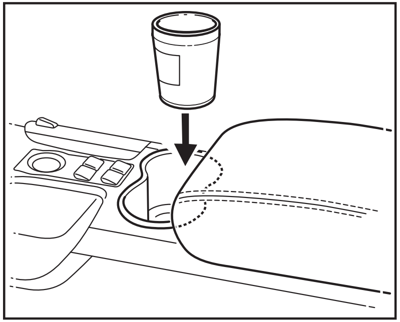
Cupholders

Cupholders are designed for holding standard size soft drink cans, small size bottles and cups with lids.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid scalding, never place hot drinks in the cupholders.

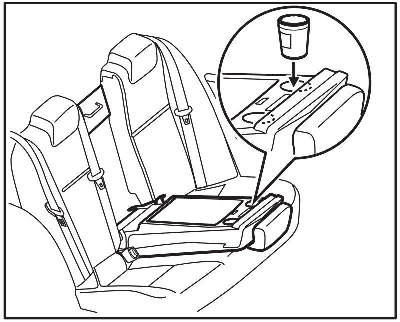
Front cupholders



The front cupholders are located forward of the centre console.

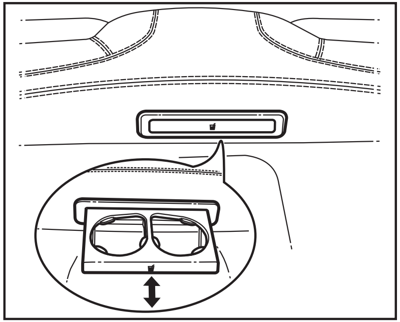
The rubber cupholder lining can be removed for cleaning.

Rear cupholders (Sedan)



Cupholders are located in the front of the folded-down section in the centre of the rear seat.

Rear cupholders (Sportwagon)

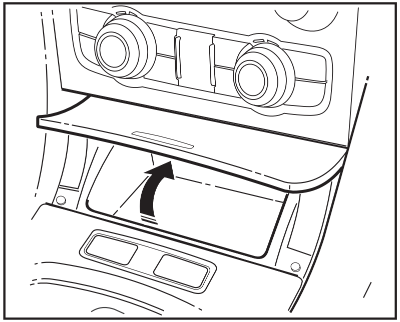


The vehicle may have cupholders located in front of the centre seat.

To open, push in the front of the cover and release it.

To close, slide the cupholder back into the seat until the latch engages.

Front Storage



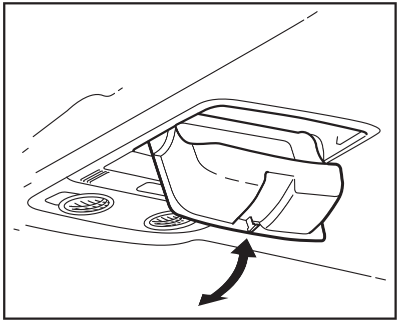
The front storage compartment is located below the heating controls on the dashboard.

If the compartment has a lid, open by pushing in at the base and releasing it.

To close, move the lid back to its original position and press in at the base to engage the latch.

If the compartment has an inner liner, it can be removed for cleaning.

Sunglass Storage



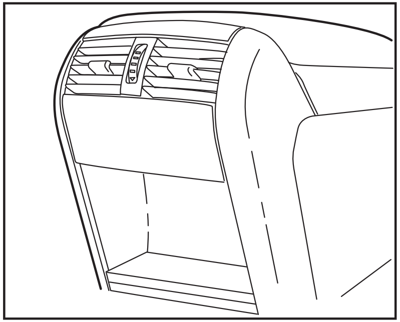
The vehicle may have a sunglass holder.

It is located in the roof and is designed to accommodate one pair of sunglasses.

To open, push in the rear of the lid and release it.

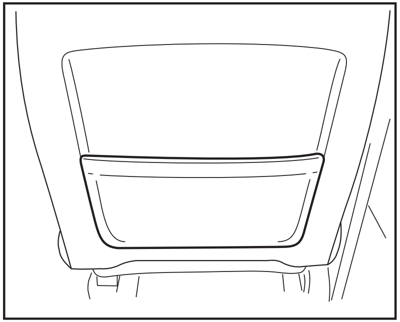
To close, move the holder back to its original position and press in the rear of the lid to engage the latch.

Rear Storage



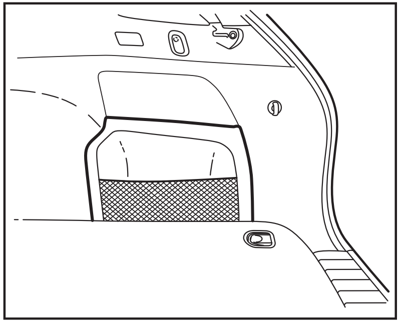
The rear storage compartment is located at the rear of the centre console.

Seatback Pockets



The storage pockets are on the rear of the front seats.

Cargo area (Sportwagon)

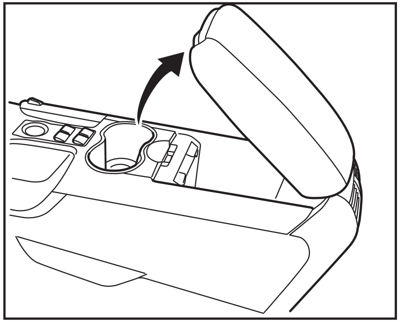


A storage compartment is located on the driver side of the cargo area.

Use for the storage of lightweight items not exceeding 2 kg in total, e.g. street directories, folders, maps.

Do not use to store heavy and/or sharp objects, e.g. loose tools.

Centre Console Storage



A storage area is located under the front armrest.

To open, lift the latch on the underside of the front lip. Do not force the lid backwards.

There is a coin holder towards the front of the console.

The console provides space to accommodate a standard mobile telephone/charger, which can be plugged into the power socket located inside the console. See *Power Sockets on page 5-8*.

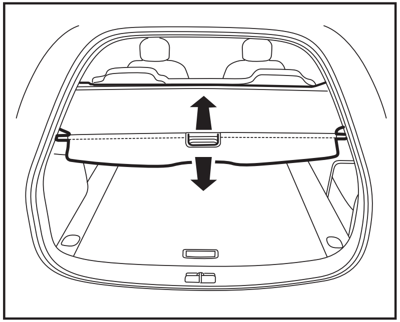
Additional Storage Features

Cargo Cover (Sportwagon)

The vehicle may have a cargo blind.

Use the cargo blind to provide protection from the sun and added security for items stored beneath.

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> Do not place any items on top of the cargo blind.
>
> Do not allow any items underneath to contact the cargo blind.



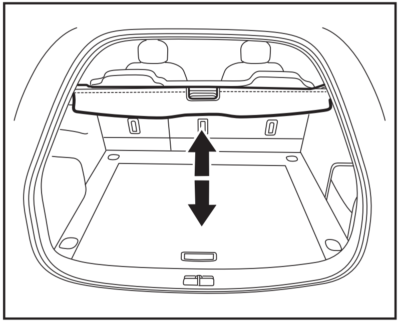
To extend the cargo blind:

1. Use the handle to pull the blind towards the rear of the vehicle.
2. Engage the blind into the latches on either side.

To retract the blind:

1. Use the handle to pull the blind slightly towards the rear of the vehicle.
2. Allow the blind to move down out of the latches.
3. Gently roll the blind up while holding the handle.

While the blind is extended, the rear of the blind can be lifted up.



To lift up the rear of the blind:

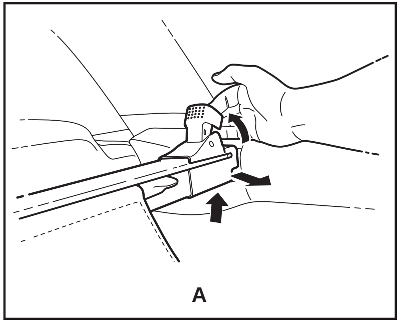
1. Use the handle to twist the rear of the blind downwards until it disengages from the latches.
2. Release the handle and the blind will automatically lift up.

To pull down the rear of the blind:

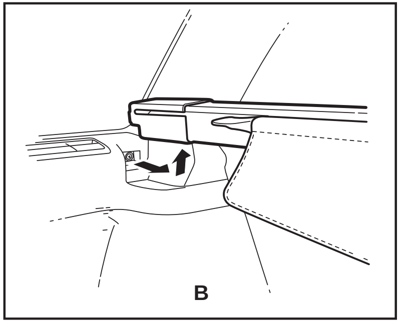
1. Use the handle to pull the blind downwards into the latch.

2. Ensure the blind engages into the latch by twisting the handle upwards.

To remove the cargo blind:



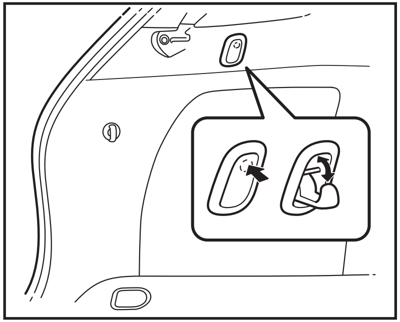
1. On the driver side (A), lift the lock lever upwards.
2. While holding the lever up, lift the blind up and out of its recess.



3. On the passenger side (B), move the blind slightly to the driver side and lift upwards.
4. Re-fit the blind in the reverse order, ensuring the blind locks into place.

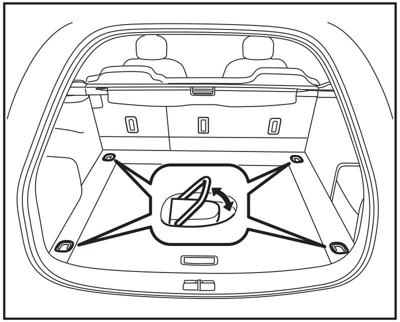
Shopping bag hooks (Sportwagon)

Shopping bag hooks are provided on either side of the cargo area.



1. To fold the hook out, push in at the top and release.
2. To fold the hook in, move it back to its original position.
3. Push in at the top until it clicks.

Cargo Tie-Downs (Sportwagon)



Four fold-down tie-down anchors are provided in the cargo area.

Use these to secure heavy items.

To use the tie-downs:

1. Fold the metal loops to the vertical position.
2. Place luggage centrally between the four anchor points.
3. Use only approved tie-down straps to secure luggage.
4. Fold the metal loops down flat when not in use.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the load is secure and will not move during heavy braking or a collision.

Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

Use only approved tie-down straps and convenience net to secure your loads. Do not use elasticised straps.

Do not use the tie-downs to secure the spare wheel or a flat tyre. Refer to “Procedure – LPG Sportwagon vehicles” under *Tyre Changing on page 10-55.*

Never attach more than one tie-down strap to any single tie-down anchor.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Protect the tie-down straps from sharp edges of the load. Replace them if they begin to wear.

Make sure the back seat is locked in the upright position whenever carrying heavy loads. This is a basic requirement for protection against load displacement in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

The rear seat in the upright position provides greater protection against load displacement.

The driving characteristics of the vehicle can be affected because the centre of gravity is altered when there is a load in the cargo area. Match your speed and driving style according to how the vehicle is loaded.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Make sure the rear axle load of the vehicle is not exceeded. See "Axle loads" under *Vehicle Weight on page 12-5*.

The maximum load for the tie-down system is 80 kg single mass when used in conjunction with the Holden-approved straps.

That is, if an object weighs 80 kg, only one object can be held by the tie-down system.

Do not use when there are visible signs of wear or damage.

Place loads as low down and as far forward in the cargo area as possible. That is, against the back seat or the cargo barrier, if present.

Luggage Net (Sportwagon)

⚠ WARNING

Avoid eye injury. Do not overstretch. Always keep face and body out of recoil path.

Do not use when there are visible signs of wear or damage.

The maximum load for the luggage net is 15 kg single mass. That is, if an object weighs 15 kg, only one object can be held by the luggage net.

Never use the luggage net when the rear seat is folded down.

These nets are only intended to keep light objects tidy, not for anchoring loads.

Do not use the luggage net outside the vehicle.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

A load should never be higher than the back seats. The driver's rear vision should never be obstructed by the load.

Always make sure the load is secure and will not move during heavy braking or a collision.

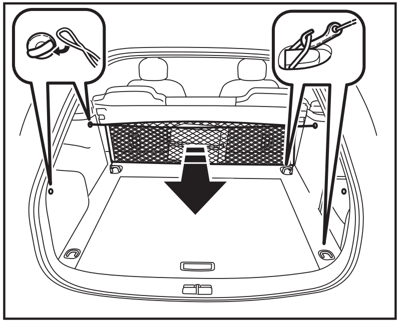
Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

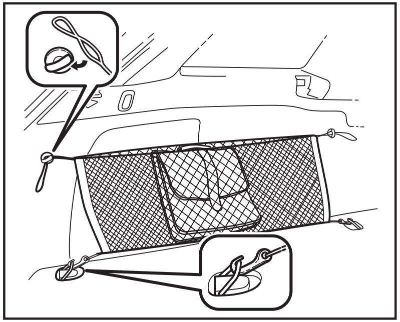
Make sure the back seat is locked in the upright position when carrying heavy loads. This is a basic requirement for protection against load displacement in the event of sudden braking or a collision. The rear seat in the upright position provides greater protection against load displacement.

The vehicle may have a luggage net inside the cargo area to secure lightweight items.

Use the four hooks and the anchor point loops to attach the net, at the front, side or rear of the cargo area.

Do not the net use to hold items against the seat, tailgate or cargo area walls, only inside the net.





1. Ensure the rear seatbacks are in the upright position.
2. Attach the loops at the top of the net to the net hooks.
3. Attach the plastic hooks at the bottom of the net to the anchor point loops.

Cargo barrier (Sportwagon)

The vehicle may have a cargo barrier.

Carrying heavy loads

Holden recommends fitting a genuine Holden cargo barrier when carrying heavy loads in the vehicle. It is designed to reduce the impact of luggage on passengers in an accident.

⚠ DANGER

It is important that the emergency exit hammer is correctly fitted at all times.

There is danger of child entrapment when a cargo barrier is fitted. Heatstroke or death may occur if persons are trapped in the vehicle. The emergency exit hammer is only intended to be used for an emergency exit through the rear window of the vehicle and for no other purpose. Do not leave children unattended in this vehicle.

(Continued)

DANGER (Continued)

When possible, place loads directly against the cargo barrier.

Secure the load with a restraint system.

If involved in an accident or accidentally damaged, the cargo barrier should be replaced and the anchorages inspected by an authorised Holden Dealer.

Passengers should not ride in the cargo area.

Take care when placing loads behind the cargo barrier so as to prevent damage to child restraint anchorages and seatbelt webbing in an accident.

In an accident, cargo may cause the cargo barrier to deform towards passengers.

The rating label must not be removed from the cargo barrier.

(Continued)

DANGER (Continued)

Clean the cargo barrier with mild soap and water only. Do not use solvents or chemicals. Discard the cargo barrier if it becomes rusted. Do not store outside or expose to direct sunlight.

Do not obstruct seatbelts or child restraints or their operation.

Seat, seatbelt or child restraint anchorages must not be used to secure the cargo barrier.

Long, thin items of luggage should be placed lengthways across the vehicle to minimise the risk of penetration.

Do not attach (drill, rivet, stick and so forth) objects to the front or rear of the cargo barrier.

The maximum load for a genuine Holden cargo barrier is 60 kg single mass. That is, if an object weighs 60 kg, only one object is permitted behind the cargo barrier.

(Continued)

DANGER (Continued)

Do not use this cargo barrier in any vehicle for which it is not designed.

Please refer to the Installation and user instructions supplied for details regarding the fitment and usage of the cargo barrier.

When high-tensile fasteners are used, the cargo barrier must be installed using the size and grade of fasteners specified by the cargo barrier manufacturer.

Cargo barrier positions

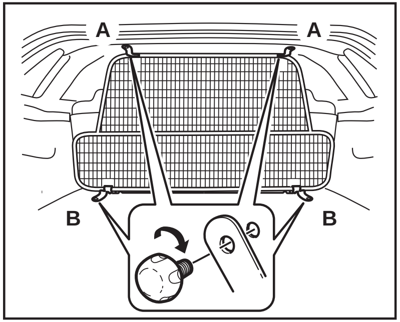
The barrier can be placed behind the rear seats when they are upright or behind the front seats when the rear seats are folded down.

Behind rear seats position

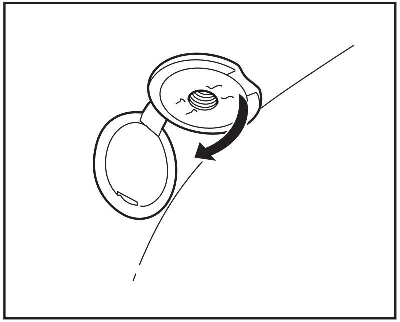
⚠ WARNING

It is recommended to correctly anchor the load in the cargo area, even if the cargo barrier is in position.

1. Before placing the cargo barrier in the vehicle, rotate so the four attachment straps point towards the rear of the vehicle.
2. Ensure the long straps are folded back and tied away securely.
3. If the vehicle has a cargo blind, remove it. See *Cargo Cover (Sportwagon) on page 4-5*.
4. Tilt the top of the cargo barrier backwards and lift into place.
5. Place the cargo barrier directly behind the rear seats.



6. Align the top attachment straps with the roof attaching holes (A).



7. Flip open the upper attaching hole covers.
8. Insert the hand-operated bolts into the holes (A) and turn clockwise.

   Do not tighten fully until all four bolts are fitted.
9. Align the short bottom straps so the strap holes align with the mounting nuts (B) in the floor.
10. Insert the bolts into the holes (B) and turn clockwise.
11. Firmly tighten all four bolts and check the tension.
12. Refit the cargo blind.

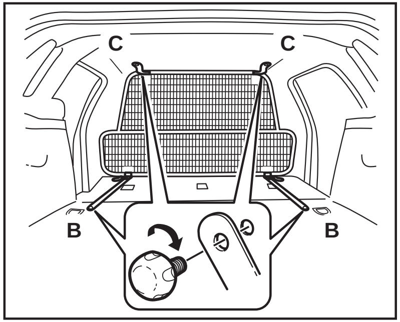
To move or remove the cargo barrier, reverse the above procedure.

Behind front seats position

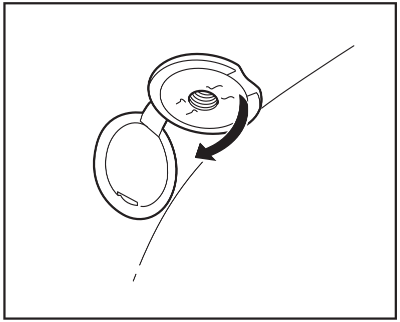
⚠ WARNING

It is recommended to correctly anchor the load in the rear cargo area, even if the cargo barrier is in position.

1. Before placing the cargo barrier in the vehicle, rotate so the four attachment straps point towards the rear of the vehicle.
2. Ensure the short straps are folded back and tied away securely.
3. If the vehicle has a cargo blind, remove it. See *Cargo Cover (Sportwagon) on page 4-5*.
4. Fold the rear seat down. See *Rear Seats on page 3-7*.
5. Tilt the top of the cargo barrier backwards and lift into place.
6. Place the cargo barrier directly behind the front seats.



7. Align the top attachment straps with the roof attaching holes (C).

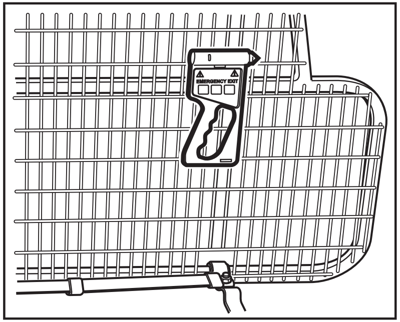


8. Flip open the upper attaching hole covers.
9. Insert the hand operated bolts into the holes (C) and turn clockwise.

   Do not tighten fully until all four bolts are fitted.
10. Slide the plastic sleeves on the long straps outwards to release.
11. Pivot the long straps towards the rear of the vehicle so the strap holes align with the mounting nuts (B) in the floor.
12. Insert the bolts into the holes (B) and turn clockwise.
13. Firmly tighten all four bolts and check the tension.
14. Refit the cargo blind.

To move or remove the cargo barrier, reverse the above procedure.

Emergency exit hammer



An emergency exit hammer is provided on the cargo barrier for emergency exit from the rear window only.

Install in the location shown at all times.

Convenience Net (Sedan)

⚠ WARNING

Avoid eye injury. Do not overstretch. Always keep face and body out of recoil path.

Do not use when there are visible signs of wear or damage.

The maximum load for the convenience net is 15 kg single mass. That is, if an object weighs 15 kg, only one such object can be held by the convenience net.

These nets are only intended to keep light objects tidy, not for anchoring loads.

Do not use the convenience net outside the vehicle.

Always make sure the load is secure and will not move during heavy braking or a collision.

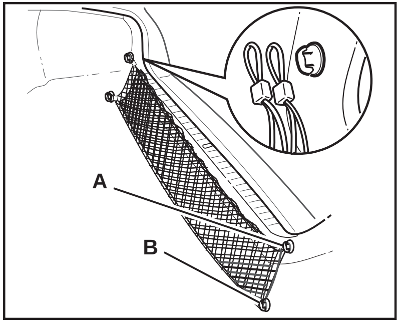
(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

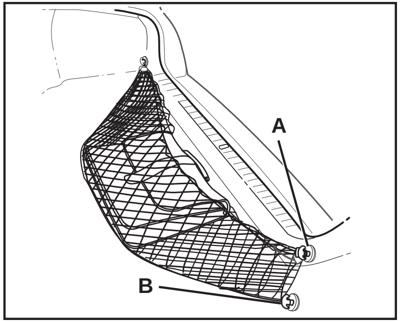
Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

The vehicle may have a convenience net located inside the boot to secure lightweight items.

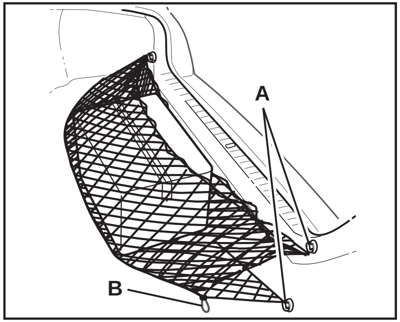
Four hooks are located on the vehicle and six loops are located on the convenience net.



Attach four corner loops (A) to the top two hooks on the vehicle (two loops on one side, two loops on the other) and attach the two centre loops (B) to the bottom hooks on the vehicle.



The net can be opened and objects placed inside.



For larger objects, place a corner loop (A) on each hook.

Roof Rack System

Roof rack

- Distribute the load evenly and secure tightly with straps.
- When carrying loads on the roof rack, avoid hard braking, abrupt swerving or sharp steering.

  Roof rack loads alter the handling of a vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The load, including the weight of the roof rack, must not exceed 75 kg. Distribute the load evenly.

Note: The weight of the roof rack and its load must be included when calculating the total load.

Information on Loading the Vehicle

Heavy Accessories

- Place heavy objects in the boot (Sedan) as far forward as possible.
- Ensure that all luggage is lower than the rear seat backrests (Sportwagon). Place heavier objects at the bottom.

  Movement of heavy objects in the boot/cargo area may change the handling of the vehicle.
- Do not place objects in front of the rear window.
- Do not place objects on the dashboard.
- Do not place objects in the area where the airbags inflate.

Carrying portable gas cylinders in vehicles

⚠ WARNING

Gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion. As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders. They must be restrained from rolling around and, if possible, placed in the load area of the vehicle.

If gas cylinders are frequently transported, it is recommended that a purpose-built carrying compartment is used. Ensure that any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the relevant regulations.

✍ NOTES

Instruments and Controls

Instrument Panel Overview

Instrument Panel Overview 5-2

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment . . . 5-5
Steering Wheel Controls 5-6
Horn 5-6
Windscreen Wiper/Washer 5-6
Rear Window Wiper/Washer (Sportwagon) 5-8
Clock 5-8
Power Sockets 5-8

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Instrument Cluster 5-9
Speedometer 5-9
Tachometer 5-9
Fuel Gauge 5-9
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 5-10
Seatbelt Reminders 5-10
Airbag and Seatbelt Tensioner Light 5-11
Charging System Light 5-11
Malfunction Indicator Light . . . 5-12
Brake System Warning Light 5-12
Parking Brake Light 5-13
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 5-13
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light 5-14
High-Beam On Light 5-15
Front Fog Light Indicator Light 5-15
Turn Signal Light 5-15
Door Open Light 5-16
Anti-theft Alarm System 5-16

Information Displays

Graphic Information Display (GID) 5-16

Vehicle Messages

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages 5-16
Cruise Control Messages 5-17
Engine Cooling System Messages 5-17
Engine Oil Messages 5-17
Engine Power Messages 5-19
Fuel System Messages 5-20
Light Messages 5-21
Object Detection System Messages 5-22
Security Messages 5-23
Anti-theft Alarm System Messages 5-23
Service Vehicle Messages . . . 5-24
Starting the Vehicle Messages 5-26
Transmission Messages 5-26
Vehicle Reminder Messages 5-27
Vehicle Speed Messages 5-28

Trip Computer

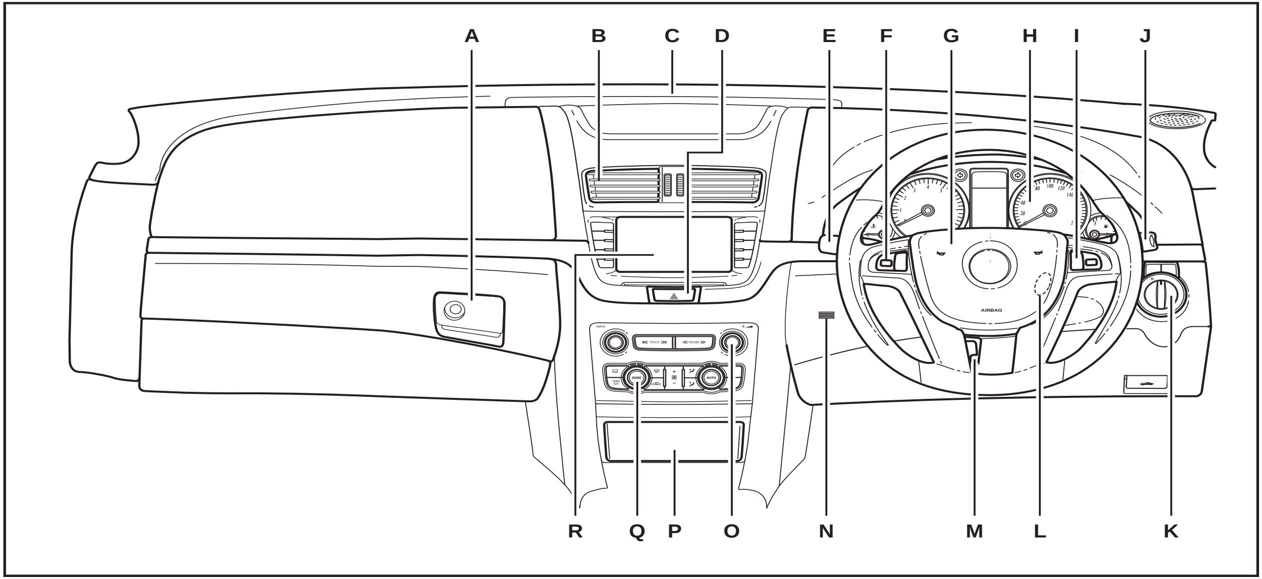
Trip Computer 5-29

Vehicle Personalisation

Vehicle Personalisation 5-40

Instrument Panel Overview

Omega, Omega Z-Series, Berlina, Calais, Calais V-Series


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
AIRBAG
ZONE
AUTO
TRACK
FOLDER
R
Q
P
O
N
M
L
K

A. *Glove Box on page 4-1*.

B. Vents.See *Heating and Ventilation System on page 8-1*.

C. Sunlight sensor See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

D. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.

E. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-6*.

F. Steering wheel controls:

   Steering wheel remote controls under *Overview on page 7-4*

   Trip Computer on page 5-29.

G. *Horn on page 5-6*.

H. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-9*.

I. Steering wheel controls:

   Bluetooth® phone button, Navigation button and Volume/mute switch. See *Overview on page 7-4*.

J. Lever for:

   Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-3.

   Headlight High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-2.

   Cruise Control on page 9-17.

K. *Exterior Light Controls on page 6-1*.

L. Ignition lock/switch (behind steering wheel). See *Ignition Positions on page 9-4*.

M. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-5*.

N. In-car temperature sensor See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

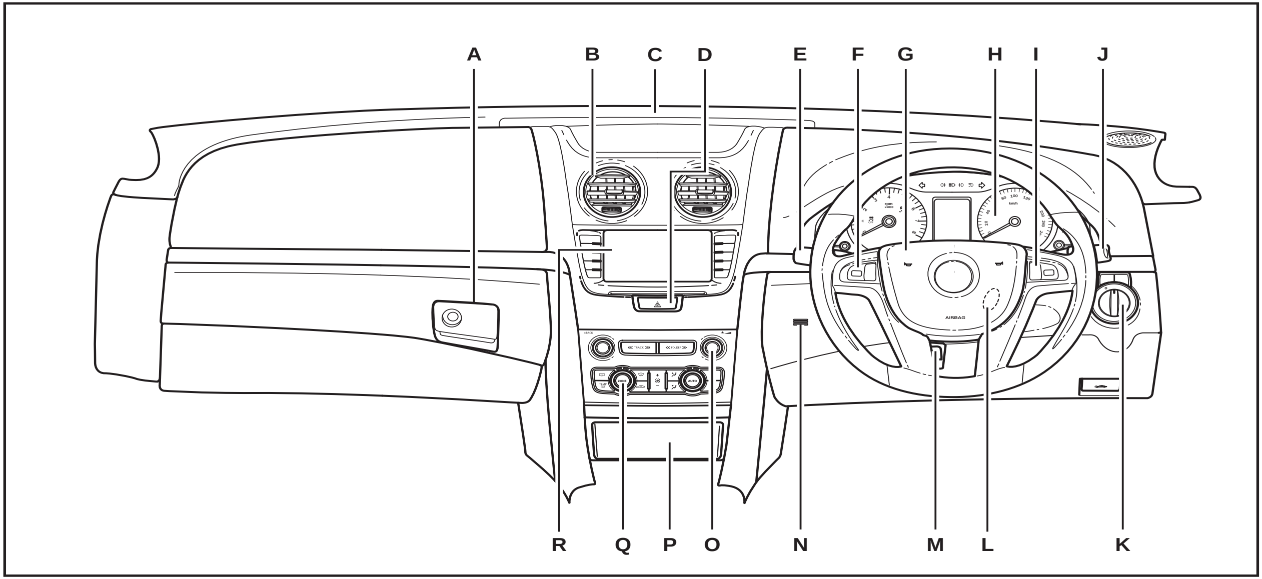
O. Infotainment system controls See *Overview on page 7-4*.

P. *Front Storage on page 4-2*.

Q. Climate control switches See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

R. Infotainment screen See *Overview on page 7-4*.

SV6, SS, SS V


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
TRACK
FOLDER
ZONE
AUTO
rpm
km/h
AIRBAG
R
Q
P
O
N
M
L
K

A. *Glove Box on page 4-1*.

B. Vents.See *Heating and Ventilation System on page 8-1*.

C. Sunlight sensor See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

D. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.

E. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-6*.

F. Steering wheel controls:

   Steering wheel remote controls under *Overview on page 7-4*

   Trip Computer on page 5-29.

G. *Horn on page 5-6*.

H. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-9*.

I. Steering wheel controls:

   Bluetooth® phone button, Navigation button and Volume/mute switch. See *Overview on page 7-4*.

J. Lever for:

   Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-3.

   Headlight High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-2.

   Cruise Control on page 9-17.

K. *Exterior Light Controls on page 6-1*.

L. Ignition lock/switch (behind steering wheel). See *Ignition Positions on page 9-4*.

M. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-5*.

N. In-car temperature sensor See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

O. Infotainment system controls See *Overview on page 7-4*.

P. *Front Storage on page 4-2*.

Q. Climate control switches See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-2*.

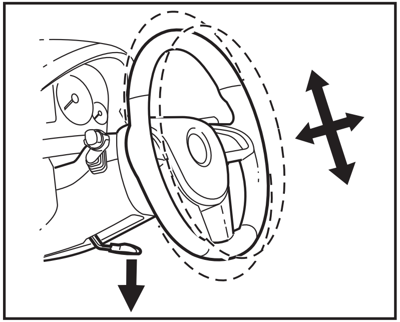
R. Infotainment screen See *Overview on page 7-4*.

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

⚠ WARNING

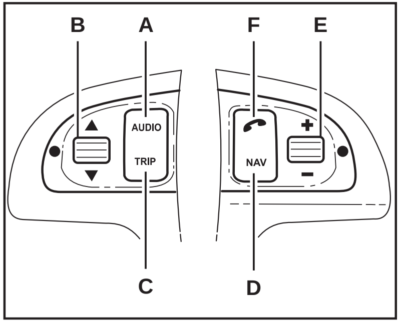
Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving.



1. To unlock, move the lever down.
2. To adjust, move the steering wheel up, down, closer or away.

3. To lock, move the lever up. Ensure the steering wheel is locked in position before driving.

Steering Wheel Controls



A. Audio button under *Operation on page 7-5*

B. Enter button and scroll wheel under *Trip Computer on page 5-29*

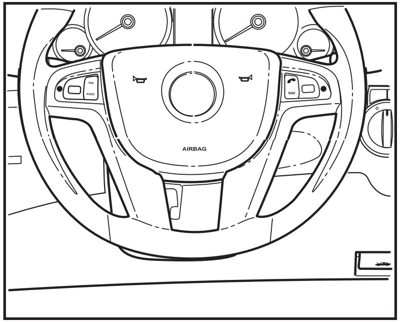
C. Trip button under *Trip Computer on page 5-29*

D. Navigation button under *Operation on page 7-5*

E. Volume/mute under *Operation on page 7-5*

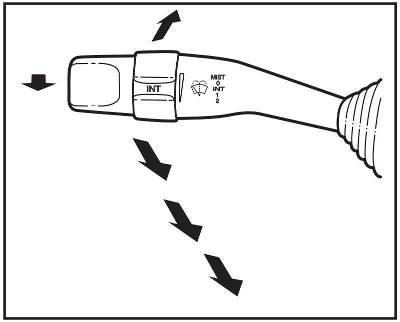
F. Bluetooth® phone under *Operation on page 7-5*

Horn



Press 📯 on either side.

Windscreen Wiper/ Washer



The wipers/washers operate with the ignition in the ON or ACCESSORIES position.

⚠ CAUTION

Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

MIST: Wipers cycle while the lever is held up.

○: Off

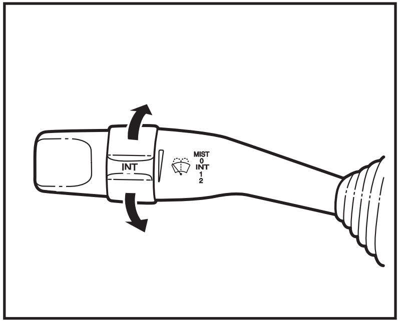
INT: Intermittent wipe

1: Slow

2: Fast

: Pull to wash the windscreen. The wipers will also cycle for a short time.

Intermittent wipers



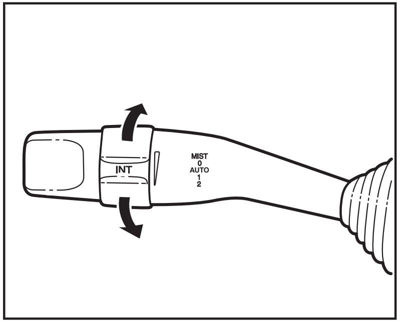
Rotate collar down for more frequent wipes, up for less frequent wipes.

Note: The intermittent wiper frequency is increased as vehicle speed increases.

Auto (rain sensing)

The vehicle may have rain sensing windscreen wipers.

> **⚠ CAUTION**
>
> Switch off the rain sensor by setting the lever to the ○ position before entering a car wash.
>
> Replace the wiper blades as soon as they do not completely remove water from the windscreen. If the blades are not replaced, the wipers may continue to wipe even though most of the screen is dry.
>
> To prevent damage to the wiper blades, make sure the windscreen is fully defrosted before switching on the rain sensor.



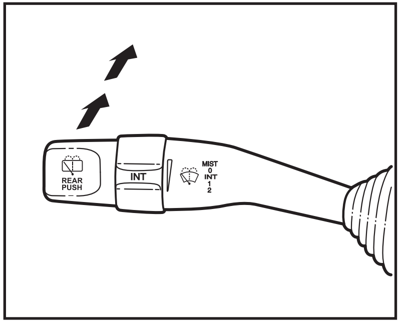
AUTO: The wipers cycle when water is detected on the windscreen.

The wiper speed and frequency are adjusted automatically.

To manually adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensing:

- Rotate the collar down for higher sensitivity.
- Rotate the collar up for less sensitivity.

Rear Window Wiper/ Washer (Sportwagon)



- Push to the first stop for the rear window wiper.
- Push and hold at the second stop to wash the rear window.

  The rear window wiper will cycle for a short time.

Note: The rear window wiper cycles intermittently.

Clock

To set the time and date, refer to "Setting the clock" under *Operation on page 7-5*.

Power Sockets

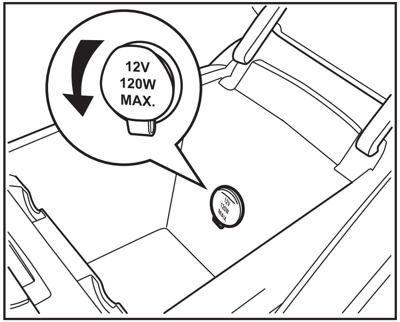
⚠ WARNING

It is dangerous for the driver of a vehicle to attach or remove accessories from the power socket while driving. It may distract the driver's attention, putting the occupants of the vehicle and other road users at risk.

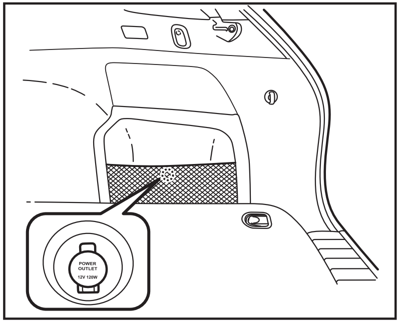
Note: Any device connected to a power socket must not exceed a current draw of 10 amps.

The power sockets operate with the ignition in the ON or the ACCESSORIES position.

Console power socket



Cargo area power socket (Sportwagon)

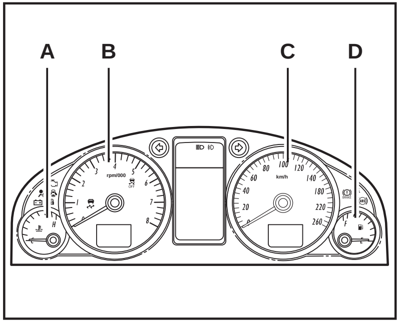


⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the cargo area power socket for a long period with the engine off, as the vehicle battery may go flat.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Instrument Cluster



A. Engine coolant temperature gauge

B. Tachometer

C. Speedometer

D. Fuel gauge

Note: Depending on vehicle variant, the instrument panel appearance may differ.

Speedometer

Speedometer (C), shows vehicle speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Tachometer

Tachometer (B), shows engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (RPM).

Fuel Gauge

Fuel gauge (D), shows the level of fuel in the fuel tank (**E** = empty, **F** = full).

Note: Large additions of fuel will change the gauge reading quickly. Small additions can take up to 10 minutes to register. This prevents false readings due to fuel movement when cornering.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Engine coolant temperature gauge (A), shows temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition is on (**C** = cold, **H** = hot).

If the needle moves all the way to **H**:

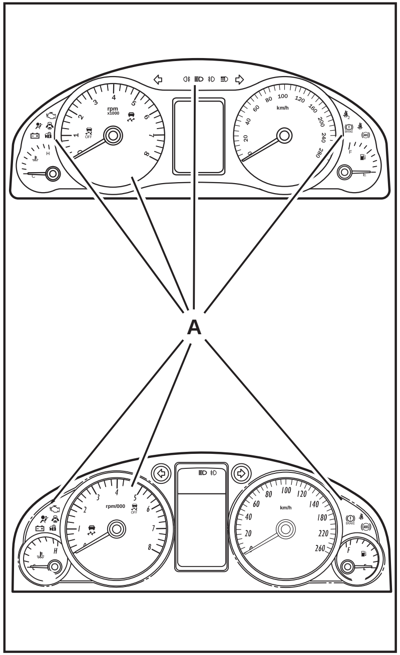
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-10*.

The gauge reading can move towards **H** under the following conditions:

- Stop-start driving
- High speed driving in warm weather
- Hill climbing
- Towing

This is normal.

Control Indicators



A. Depending on vehicle variant, the location of warning lights and reminders may differ.

The following warning lights and reminders may appear on the instrument panel.

They show as illuminated icons and/or animations.

A chime sounds with most warning lights and reminders.

Note: Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear animations and revert to the original trip computer display.

Seatbelt Reminders

Driver's seat

If the driver's seatbelt is not fastened when the ignition is turned to the ON or START position:

- The warning light illuminates.

If the driver's seatbelt is not fastened and the vehicle speed reaches 25 km/h:

- The warning light flashes.
- The chime sounds.

Fasten the driver's seatbelt to clear the reminder.

Passenger's seat

If the front passenger's seatbelt is not fastened when the ignition is turned to the ON or START position:

- The 2 warning light illuminates.

If the front passenger's seatbelt is not fastened and the vehicle speed reaches 25 km/h:

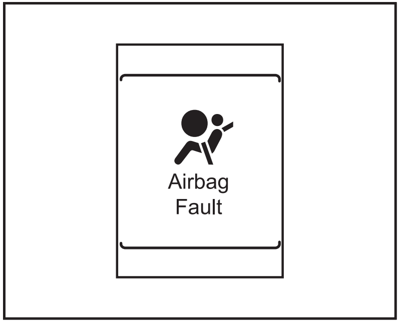
- The 2 warning light flashes.
- The chime sounds.

Fasten the front passenger's seatbelt to clear the reminder.

Airbag and Seatbelt Tensioner Light

The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

Airbag fault animation



If the warning light illuminates and the **Airbag Fault** animation is displayed when driving, there is a problem with the airbag or belt tensioner system.

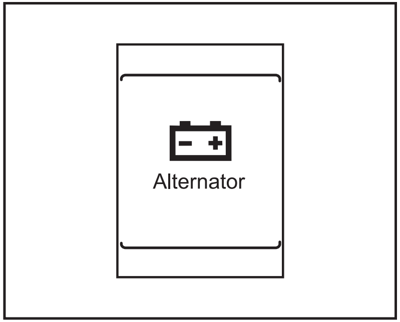
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- The airbag or belt tensioner system may not function correctly in an accident.
- The warning light remains illuminated until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

Note: The warning light illuminates and the **Airbag Fault** animation is displayed if the airbag or belt tensioners have been activated.

Charging System Light

The − + warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

Alternator animation



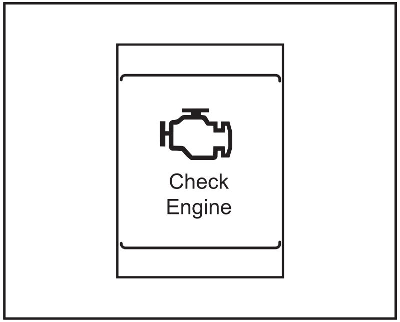
If the 🔋 warning light illuminates and the **Alternator** animation is displayed while the engine is running, there is a problem with the charging system.

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- The 🔋 warning light remains illuminated until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.

Malfunction Indicator Light

The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

Check engine animation



If the warning light illuminates and the **Check Engine** animation is displayed when driving, there is a problem with the emission monitoring system.

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- The warning light remains illuminated until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.

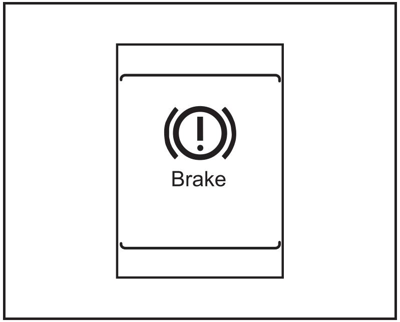
If the warning light flashes (indicating engine misfire that could damage the exhaust catalyst) and the **Check Engine** animation is displayed when driving:

- Reduce vehicle speed and load.
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- The warning light flashes until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.

Brake System Warning Light

The (!) warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

Brake animation



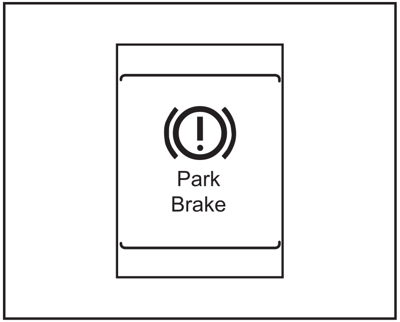
If the (!) warning light and the **Brake** animation do not extinguish, or if they light up when driving and the parking brake is released, there is a problem with the brakes.

Note: The **Brake** animation is also displayed to show a low fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir.

If the (!) warning light illuminates and the **Brake** animation is displayed when driving, there is a problem with the brakes.

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- The (!) warning light remains illuminated until the problem is repaired.
- Check the brake fluid level. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-5*.
- Do not proceed until satisfied that braking is possible or that the cause of the problem has been repaired.
- If necessary contact a Holden Dealer.

Parking Brake Light

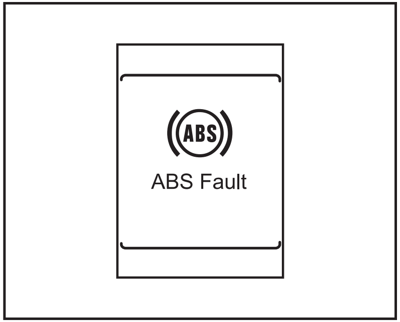


If the (!) warning light illuminates, the **Parking Brake** animation is displayed and a chime sounds when driving, the parking brake is still applied. Release the parking brake.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

The (ABS) warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

ABS fault animation



If the ABS warning light illuminates and the **ABS Fault** animation is displayed, there is a problem with the ABS system.

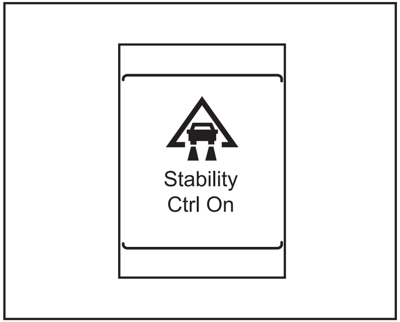
Note: The vehicle's brake system remains operational but without ABS assistance. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 9-12*.

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- The ABS warning light remains illuminated until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.

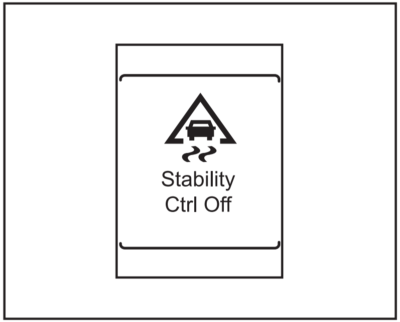
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light

The warning light flashes when the ESC is assisting the vehicle with road grip and stability. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-14*.

Stability control on animation



Stability control off animation



The **Stability Ctrl On** and **Stability Ctrl Off** animations are displayed for a short time when the ESC is turned on or off by pressing OFF.

When the ESC is turned off:

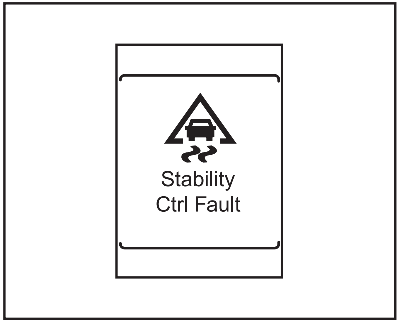
- The **Stability Ctrl Off** animation is displayed for a short time.
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- OFF remains illuminated.

If the **Stability Ctrl Off** animation is displayed and you have not pressed OFF:

- There is a problem with the ESC.
- ESC is no longer operating.
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- OFF remains illuminated until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-14*.

Stability control fault animation



If OFF and illuminate and the **Stability Ctrl Fault** animation is displayed:

- There is a problem with the ESC.
- ESC is no longer operating.
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- OFF and remain illuminated until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-14*.

High-Beam On Light

The indicator light illuminates when headlight high beam is on.

Front Fog Light Indicator Light

The indicator light illuminates when the fog lights are on.

Turn Signal Light

Push the lever to signal a turn:

- Push the lever in the same direction the steering wheel is turned.
- A turn signal indicator light ⇦⇨ will flash.
- The turn signal will self-cancel after larger turns.

Note: In some turns (such as changing lanes) the steering wheel is not turned far enough to cancel the turn signal. Push it back to its original position.

- Push part way to signal a lane change. The turn signals will flash three times.
- Push the lever in either direction to cancel a lane change signal. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-3*.

Door Open Light

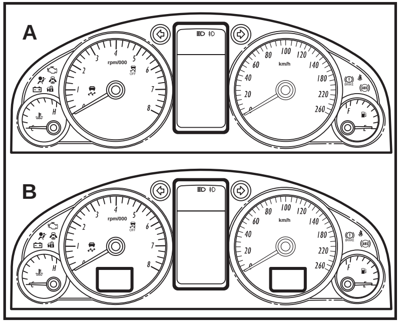
The 🚪 warning light illuminates when any of the doors or the tailgate (Sportwagon) are not completely closed.

Anti-theft Alarm System

The 🔒 indicator light flashes when the security system is activated. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-11*.

Information Displays

Graphic Information Display (GID)



The vehicle may have a Single (A) or a Triple (B) window display.

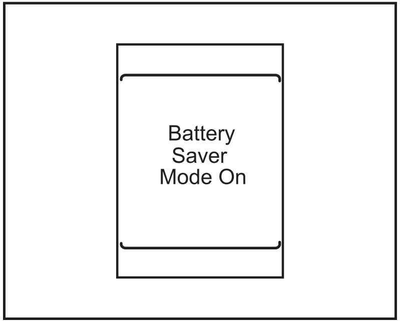
Displays visual information for:

- Vehicle functions
- Trip computer
- Audio
- Warnings and reminders

Vehicle Messages

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

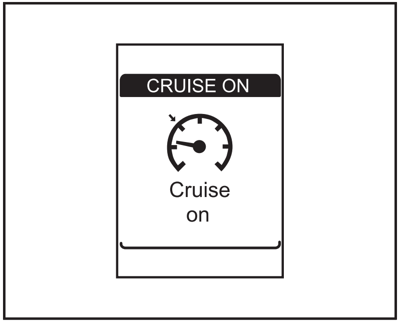
Battery saver mode on animation



If the **Battery Saver Mode On** animation is displayed, the battery voltage is low.

Cruise Control Messages

Cruise on animation


CRUISE ON
Cruise
on

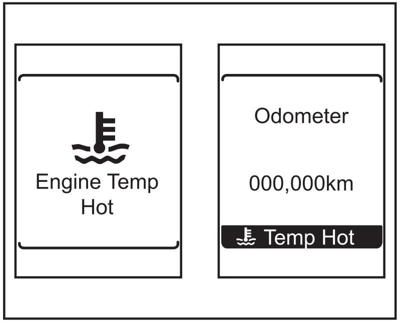
The **Cruise on** animation is displayed when the cruise control is:

- Activated
- Ready for use

See *Cruise Control on page 9-17*.

Engine Cooling System Messages

Engine temperature hot animation


Engine Temp
Hot
Odometer
000,000km
Temp Hot

If the **Engine Temp Hot** animation is displayed, the engine coolant is excessively hot:

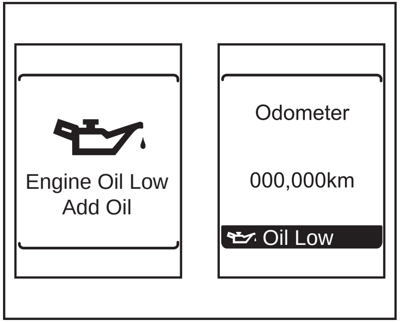
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- **Temp Hot** remains displayed until the problem is repaired. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-10*.

⚠ CAUTION

Engine damage may result if you keep driving.

Engine Oil Messages

Engine oil low add oil animation (V8 engines)


Engine Oil Low
Add Oil
Odometer
000,000km
Oil Low

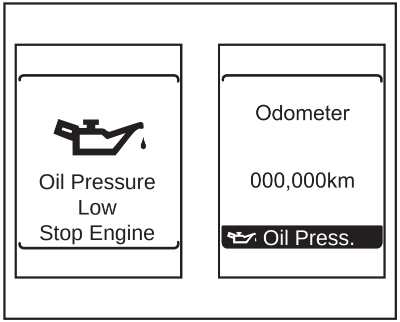
If the **Engine Oil Low Add Oil** animation is displayed, the engine oil level is low:

- Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
- Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7*.
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- **Oil Low** remains displayed until the oil is filled to the correct level.

⚠ CAUTION

Engine damage may result if you keep driving. Do not run the engine. If the oil level is normal, have the system checked by the nearest Holden Dealer.

Oil pressure low stop engine animation



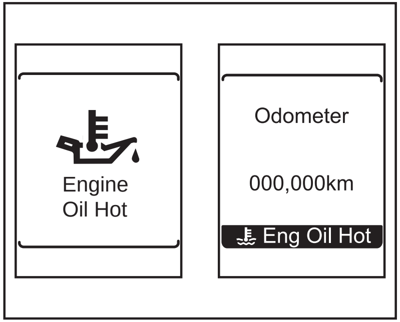
If the **Oil Pressure Low Stop Engine** animation is displayed while the engine is running, the engine oil pressure is low:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
- Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7*.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.
- **Oil Press.** remains displayed until the problem is repaired.

⚠ CAUTION

Engine damage may result if you keep driving. Do not run the engine. If the oil level is normal, have the system checked by the nearest Holden Dealer.

Engine oil hot animation



If the **Engine Oil Hot** animation is displayed while the engine is running, the engine oil is excessively hot:

- Reduce engine RPM and vehicle load.
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.

If **Eng Oil Hot** remains displayed:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.

If **Eng Oil Hot** remains displayed when engine RPM and vehicle load are low:

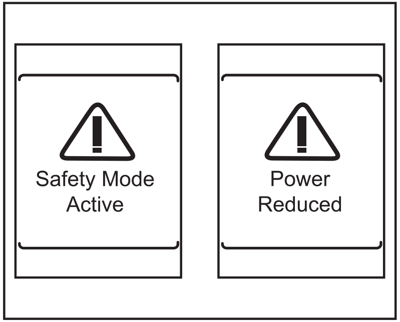
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Engine damage may result if you keep driving. Do not run the engine. Continued operation may cause damage to the engine which is not covered under your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Engine Power Messages

Safety mode active and Power reduced animations



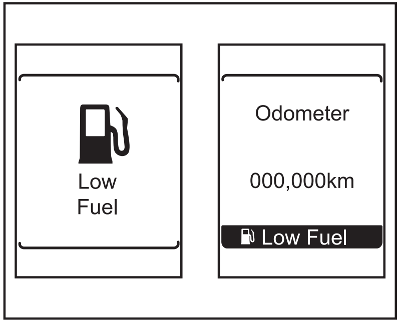
If the **Safety Mode Active** and **Power Reduced** animations are displayed alternately, there is a problem with the engine control.

Note: Although the vehicle may still be drivable, the accelerator input available may be limited, resulting in reduced power. Have the problem repaired by a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- ⚠ **Safety** remains displayed until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.

Fuel System Messages

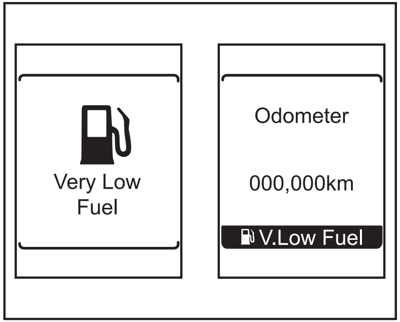
Low fuel animation


Low
Fuel
Odometer
000,000km
⛽ Low Fuel

The **Low Fuel** animation is displayed when the fuel level is low.

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- ⛽ **Low Fuel** remains displayed until the fuel tank is filled above the low fuel level.

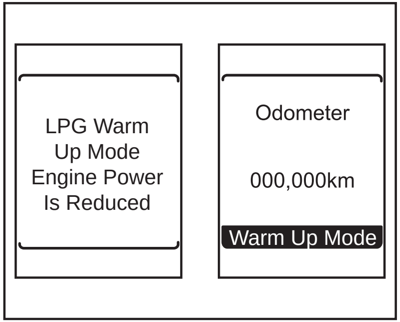
Very low fuel animation


Very Low
Fuel
Odometer
000,000km
⛽ V.Low Fuel

The **Very Low Fuel** animation is displayed when the fuel level is very low.

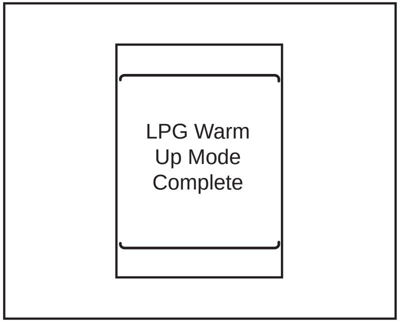
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- ⛽ **V.Low Fuel** remains displayed until the fuel tank is filled above the very low fuel level.

LPG cold start animations


LPG Warm
Up Mode
Engine Power
Is Reduced
Odometer
000,000km
Warm Up Mode

The **LPG Warm Up Mode Engine Power Is Reduced** animation is displayed and a chime sounds when the LPG system temperature is cold.

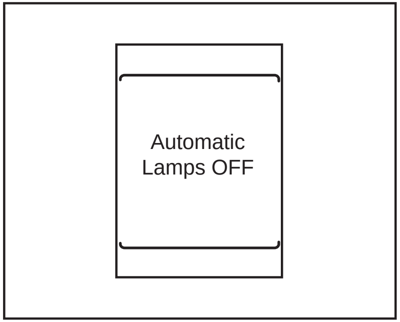
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- **Warm Up Mode** remains displayed until the LPG warm-up is complete. See “LPG Warm-up mode” under *Recommended Fuel on page 9-30*.


LPG Warm
Up Mode
Complete

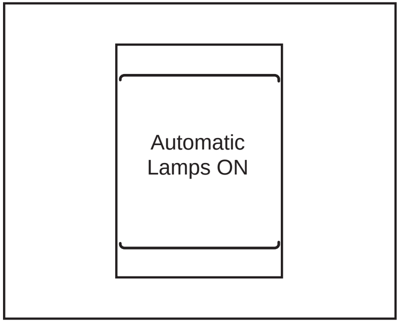
- The **LPG Warm Up Mode Complete** animation is displayed momentarily when the LPG warm-up is complete.

Light Messages

Automatic headlight animation


Automatic
Lamps OFF

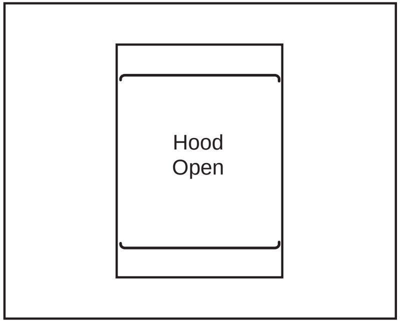
The **Automatic Lamps OFF** animation is displayed when the automatic headlights are turned off. See *Exterior Light Controls on page 6-1*.


Automatic
Lamps ON

The **Automatic Lamps ON** animation is displayed when the automatic headlights are turned back on. See *Exterior Light Controls on page 6-1*.

Hood (bonnet) open messages

Hood open animation



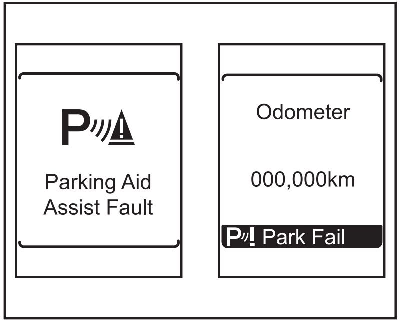
If the **Hood Open** animation is displayed and the warning chime sounds, the hood (bonnet) is open.

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- **Hood Open** remains displayed until the hood (bonnet) is closed.

Object Detection System Messages

The vehicle may have Parking Assist (PA).

Parking aid assist fault animation



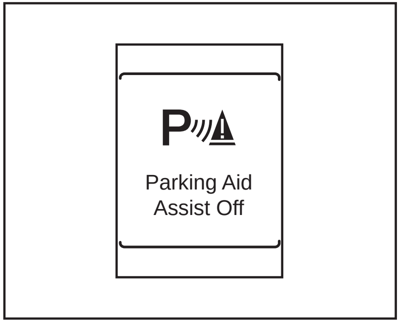
If the **Parking Aid Assist Fault** animation is displayed there is a problem with the PA system.

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.

Note: PA may not work properly. Take special care when manoeuvring. See *Parking Assist on page 9-20*.

- Check the sensors and clean them as required. See *Parking Assist on page 9-20*.
- **Park Fail** remains displayed until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.

Parking aid assist off animation

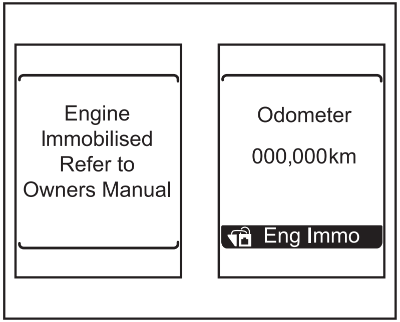


If the Parking Aid Assist Off animation is displayed, the PA system has detected sensor interference. The PA system will automatically reset.

Note: PA may not work properly. Take special care when manoeuvring.

Security Messages

Engine immobilised animation

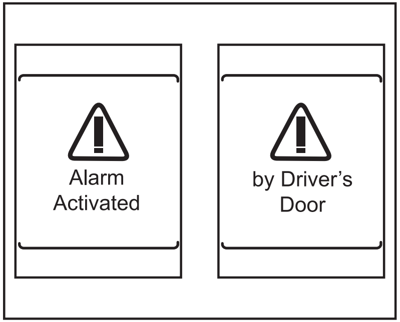

Engine
Immobilised
Refer to
Owners Manual
Odometer
000,000km
Eng Immo

If the **Engine Immobilised Refer to Owners Manual** animation is displayed:

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- **Eng Immo** remains displayed until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.

See *Immobiliser on page 2-12*.

Anti-theft Alarm System Messages


Alarm
Activated
by Driver's
Door

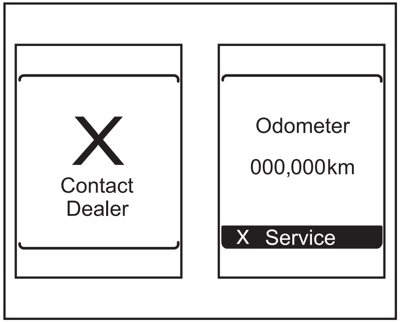
If the **Alarm Activated** animations are displayed the alarm has been triggered.

- The **Alarm Activated** animation and an animation indicating the trigger point are displayed alternately.
- Multiple animations indicate more than one trigger point.
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation(s).

See *Anti-theft Alarm System on page 2-12*.

Service Vehicle Messages

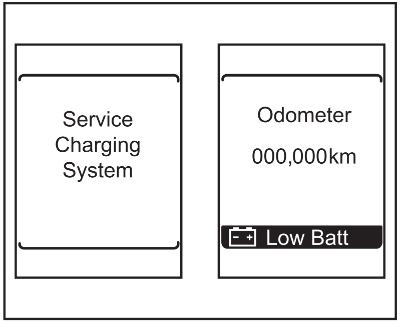
Service error animation


X
Contact Dealer
Odometer
000,000km
X Service

If the **Contact Dealer** animation is displayed there is a problem with the instrument panel.

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- **X Service** remains displayed until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

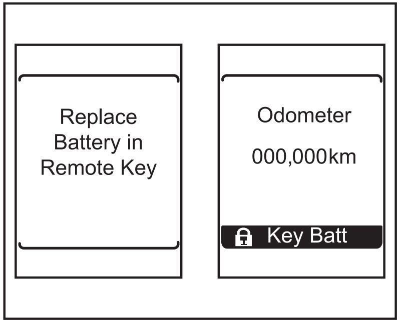
Service charging system animation


Service Charging System
Odometer
000,000km
Low Batt

If the **Service Charging System** animation is displayed there is a problem with the charging system.

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- 🔋 **Low Batt** remains displayed until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

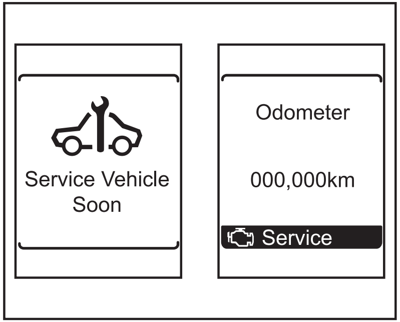
Replace battery in remote key animation


Replace Battery in Remote Key
Odometer
000,000km
Key Batt

If the **Replace Battery in Remote Key** animation is displayed and a chime sounds, the battery in the remote key needs replacing.

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- 🔒 **Key Batt** remains displayed until the problem is repaired.
- Contact a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

Service vehicle soon animation



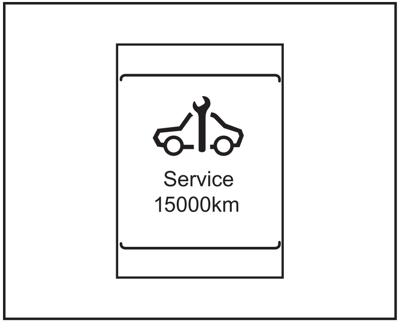
If the **Service Vehicle Soon** animation is displayed there is a problem with one of the vehicle systems.

- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- **Service** remains displayed until the problem is repaired.

⚠ CAUTION

Although the vehicle may still be drivable, take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer as soon as possible. Excessive driving may result in vehicle damage.

Service animation



The **Service** animation, showing the kilometre reading when the service is due, is displayed 1,000 km before the service becomes due.

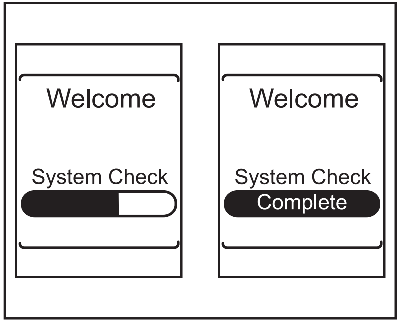
- Press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- The animation is displayed when the ignition is turned on or off.
- If the service becomes overdue, the animation is displayed and flashes when the ignition is turned on or off.
- The service reminder will be reset when the vehicle is serviced.

⚠ CAUTION

The service reminder is distance based. If the vehicle is driven infrequently, special servicing may be required. See the Service/ Warranty Booklet supplied with the vehicle.

Starting the Vehicle Messages

System check animations



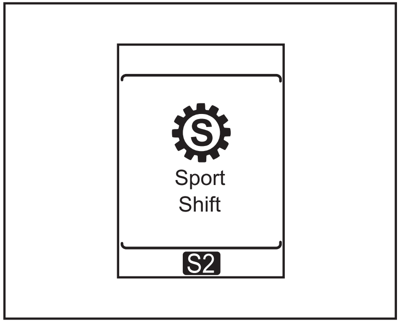
When the ignition is turned on a system check is performed and the following are displayed:

- The status of the vehicle systems
- Any warnings or service reminders as required
- The trip computer display

Note: Press **TRIP** to clear each warning displayed. If no warning is displayed, pressing **TRIP** during the system check will display the trip computer display.

Transmission Messages

Sport shift animation

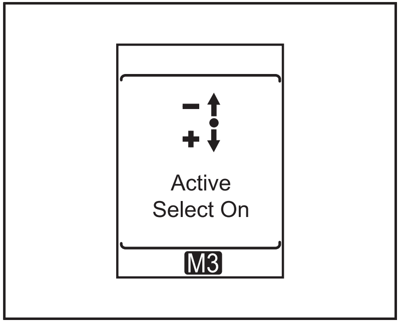


The **Sport Shift** animation is displayed when sport shift mode is selected.

- **Sport Shift** is displayed for a short time.
- **S** and the current gear **(1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6)** is displayed.

See “Sport shift mode” under *Selector Lever on page 9-7*.

Active select animation

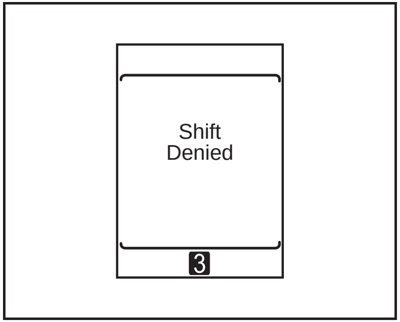


The **Active Select On** animation is displayed for a short time when active select mode is selected.

- **M** and the current gear **(1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6)** is displayed.

See “Active Select (A/S) mode” under *Selector Lever on page 9-7*.

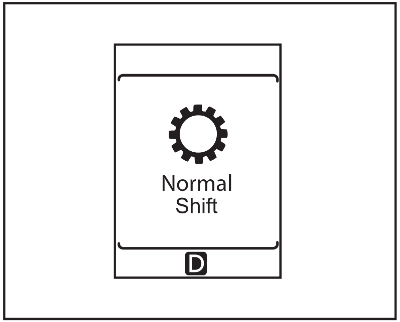
Shift denied animation



The **Shift Denied** animation is displayed when the transmission has not shifted to the selected gear, as the current vehicle speed will result in an engine speed outside the suitable range.

See “Active Select (A/S) mode” under *Selector Lever on page 9-7*.

Normal shift animation



The **Normal Shift** animation is displayed when exiting sport shift mode or active select.

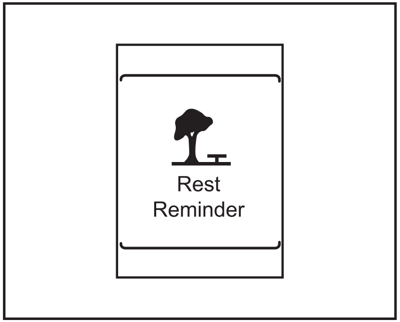
- **Normal Shift** is displayed for a short time.
- **D** is displayed.

See “Normal shift mode” under *Selector Lever on page 9-7*.

Vehicle Reminder Messages

When the ignition is turned off, any current service reminders are displayed, then the odometer appears for about 30 seconds. The odometer is displayed again when the driver’s door is opened.

Rest reminder animation



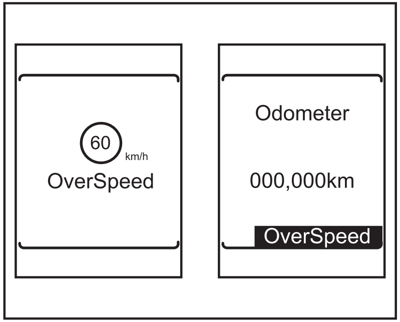
The **Rest Reminder** animation is displayed after 2 hours of continuous driving.

- Driving for too long without a break may be hazardous.
- Consider stopping when safe and taking a rest.
- The reminder timer counts from when the ignition is turned on.
- Alternatively, press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- The **Rest Reminder** animation will display again after 20 minutes and the chime will sound.

See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

Vehicle Speed Messages

Overspeed animation



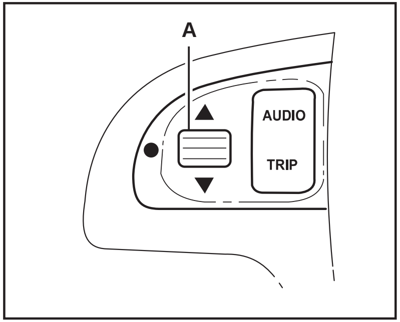
The **OverSpeed** animation is displayed and a chime sounds when the vehicle speed exceeds the preselected value.

- Reduce speed.
- Alternatively, press **TRIP** or the ENTER button to clear the animation.
- Alternatively, adjust the preselected value by rotating ▲ or ▼ while the warning is active.

See “Overspeed” under *Trip Computer on page 5-29*.

Trip Computer

Controls



1. Press **TRIP** to navigate between displays.
2. Scroll with ▲ and ▼, using the ENTER button (A) to change the highlighted value/setting.
3. Push on the scroll wheel (A) to make a selection.

Note:

- Values are highlighted for a short period. Press **TRIP** to re-highlight a value.
- If the wrong buttons are accidentally pressed, causing the display to show anything other than normal, turn the ignition off then on again (only when the vehicle is stationary).
- The display settings are remembered when the ignition is turned off and recalled next time the ignition is turned on.

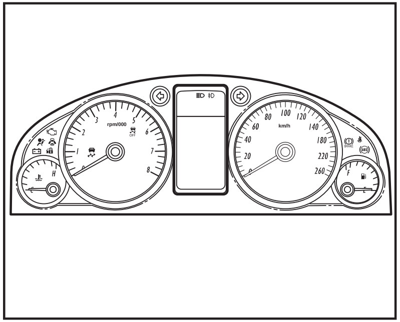
The vehicle may have personal identity keys.

The display settings are remembered for each key and recalled next time the ignition is turned on with that key. See “Personal identity keys” under *Keys on page 2-1*.

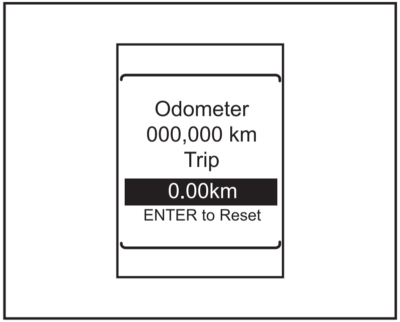
Displays

The vehicle may have a Single-window or Triple-window display.

Single-window display



Odometer/trip

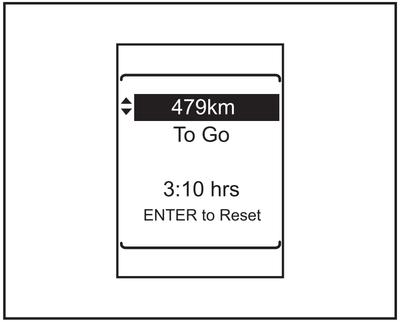

Odometer
000,000 km
Trip
0.00km
ENTER to Reset

Displays total vehicle kilometres.

Reset trip meter:

- Press the ENTER button for 3 seconds to reset.
- Press the ENTER button briefly to reset trip, average speed and average fuel values.

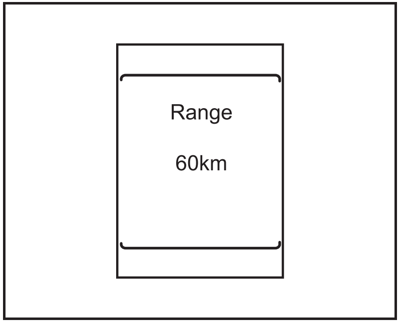
Distance/time to go


479km
To Go
3:10 hrs
ENTER to Reset

Displays distance and time to arrival:

- Rotate ▲ or ▼ to enter estimated trip distance.
- The default value is 500 km. This default can be adjusted.
- Can be enabled or disabled. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

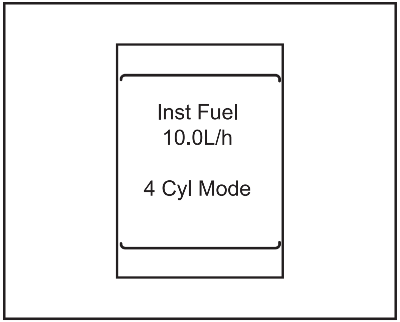
Range



Displays an estimate of how far the vehicle will go on the current amount of fuel, based on the fuel usage over approximately the previous quarter of the tank.

Note: The range is an estimate only and may vary with driving style and variation in the fuel gauge reading.

Instantaneous fuel


Inst Fuel
10.0L/h
4 Cyl Mode

The vehicle may have an instantaneous fuel display.

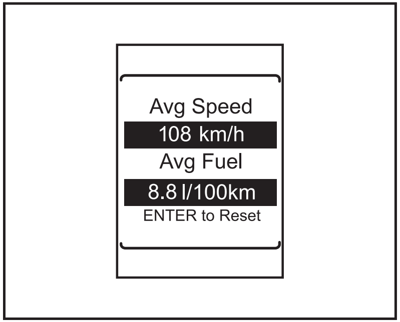
Displays instantaneous fuel consumption.

- Litres per 100 km is displayed when vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.
- Litres per hour is displayed when vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.

The vehicle may have Active Fuel Management (AFM).

- Displays the number of currently active cylinders.
- The AFM display may be enabled or disabled. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

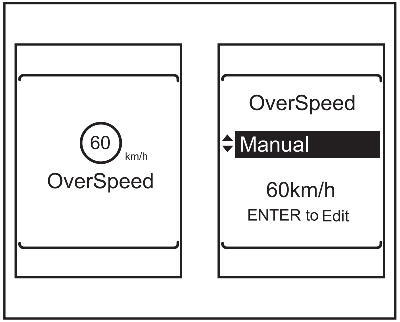
Average speed/average fuel


Avg Speed
108 km/h
Avg Fuel
8.8 l/100km
ENTER to Reset

Displays average speed and fuel consumption.

- It is calculated from the last time the trip computer was reset.
- Press the ENTER button for 3 seconds to reset.
- Press the ENTER button briefly to reset trip, average speed and average fuel values.

Overspeed


60
km/h
OverSpeed
OverSpeed
Manual
60km/h
ENTER to Edit

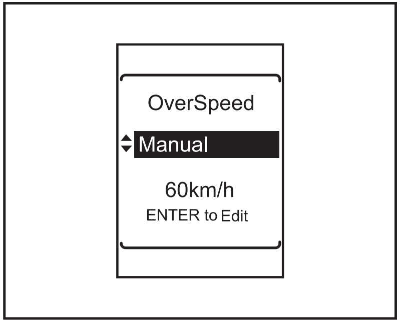
OverSpeed is displayed and a chime sounds when vehicle speed equals or exceeds a preselected value.

The **OverSpeed** display is shown for 10 seconds to allow the preselected value to be adjusted.

Set the overspeed mode:

1. Press **TRIP** to navigate to the **OverSpeed** display.
2. Rotate ▲ or ▼ to select the required mode:
   - **Off**
   - **Manual** (accepts values higher than 20 km/h in 5 km/h steps)
   - **Preset 1** (60 km/h)
   - **Preset 2** (80 km/h)
   - **Preset 3** (100 km/h)
   - **Preset 4** (110 km/h)
3. Press the ENTER button to set the overspeed mode.

Manual

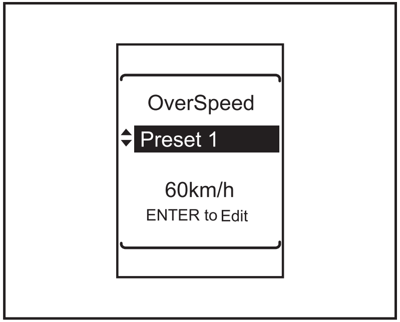


Setting the manual preselected value:

1. Rotate ▲ or ▼ to select manual mode.
2. Press the ENTER button.
3. Rotate ▲ or ▼ to set the required value.

   Alternatively, press the ENTER button for 3 seconds to set the value to the nearest 5 km/h step above the current setting.

Preset (1 to 4)

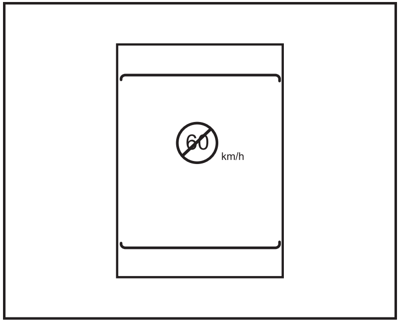


Using the preset values:

1. Rotate ▲ or ▼ to select the required **Preset** (1 to 4) mode.
2. Press the ENTER button.
3. Rotate ▲ or ▼ to set the required value. The value adjusts in 1 km/h steps.
4. Press the ENTER button to confirm the setting.

Note: The presets are arranged in ascending order based on the km/h value set.

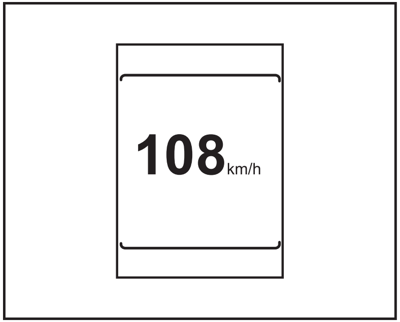
Underspeed



The underspeed animation is displayed and a chime sounds when the vehicle's speed drops below the set value.

Can be enabled or disabled. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

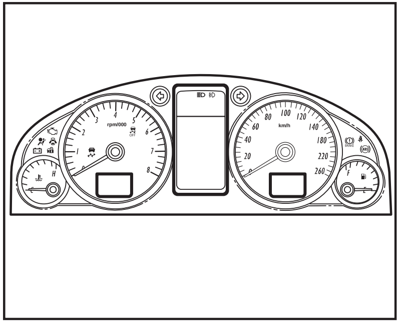
Digital speedometer



The vehicle speed can be displayed numerically.

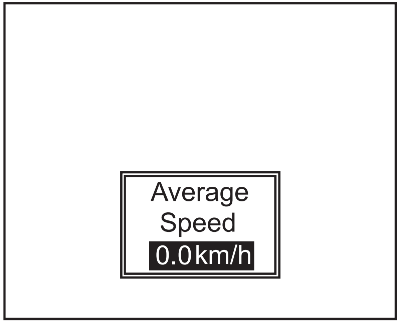
The digital speedometer can be enabled or disabled. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

Triple-window display



The vehicle may have a Triple-window display.

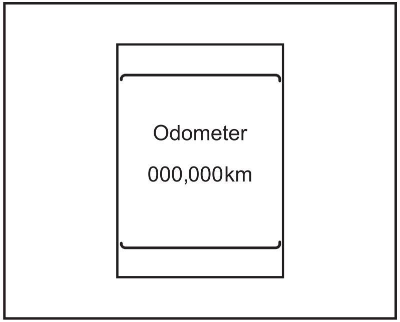
Average speed


Average Speed
0.0 km/h

Displays average speed:

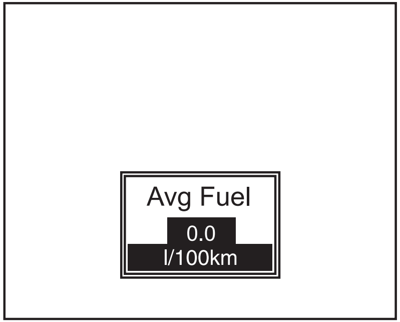
- It is calculated from the last time the trip computer was reset.
- Press **TRIP** to navigate to the displays, then press the ENTER button briefly to reset the **Trip Distance, Average Speed** and **Avg Fuel** values.
- Press the ENTER button for 3 seconds to reset the **Trip Distance** only.

Odometer


Odometer
000,000km

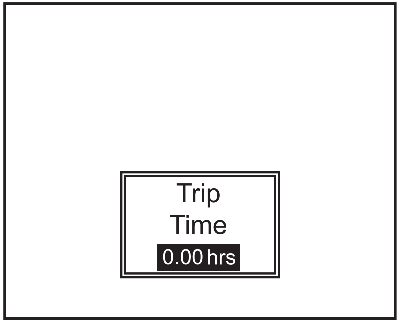
Displays total vehicle kilometres.

Average fuel


Avg Fuel
0.0
l/100km

Displays average fuel consumption.

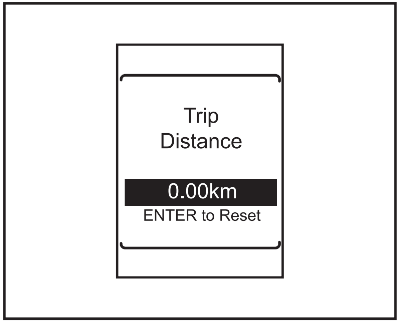
Trip time


Trip
Time
0.00 hrs

Displays the time since the last time the trip computer was reset.

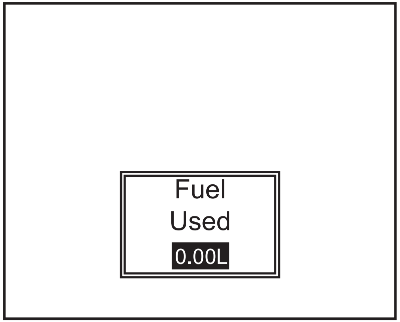
- Press **TRIP** to navigate to the displays.
- Press the ENTER button to reset.
- Not displayed when **Trip computer A&B** is selected. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

Trip distance


Trip
Distance
0.00km
ENTER to Reset

Displays the distance travelled since the last time the trip computer was reset.

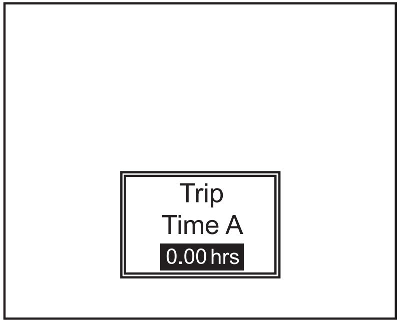
Fuel used


Fuel
Used
0.00L

Displays fuel used since the last time the trip computer was reset.

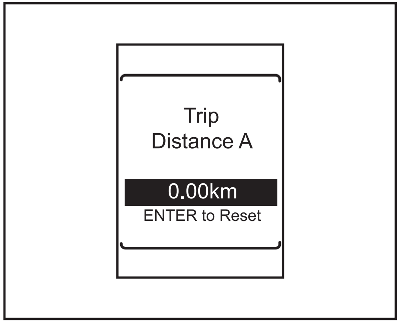
Trip computer A&B

Trip time A


Trip
Time A
0.00 hrs

Trip computer A&B is selected from the Vehicle personalisation menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

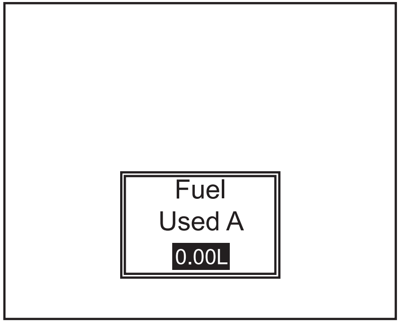
Trip distance A


Trip
Distance A
0.00km
ENTER to Reset

Two sets of trip time/distance and fuel used values can be calculated at the same time.

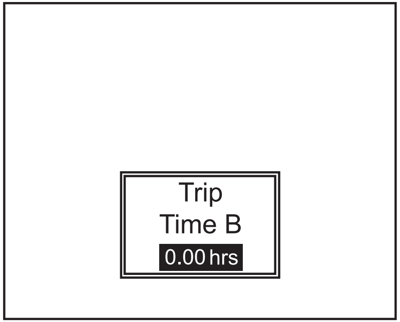
- Press **TRIP** to swap the display between Trip computer A and Trip computer B.

Fuel used A


Fuel
Used A
0.00L

- Average speed and average fuel displays are calculated based on Trip computer A.

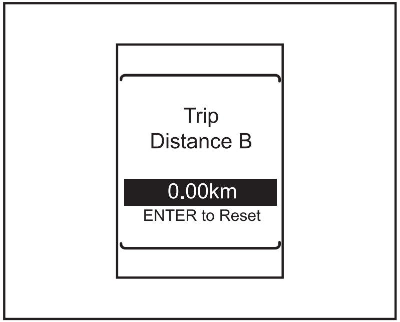
Trip time B


Trip
Time B
0.00 hrs

Displays the time since the last time the trip computer was reset.

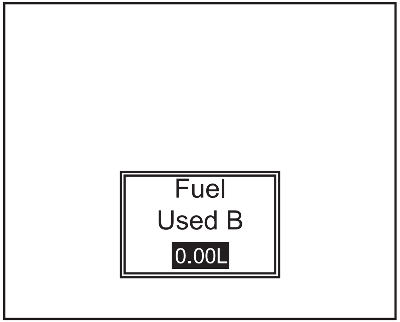
- Press **TRIP** to navigate to the displays.
- Press the ENTER button to reset.

Trip distance B


Trip
Distance B
0.00km
ENTER to Reset

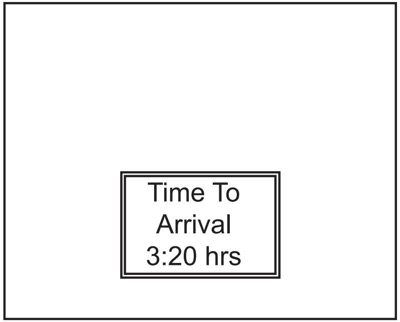
Displays the distance travelled since the last time the trip computer was reset.

Fuel used B


Fuel
Used B
0.00L

Displays fuel used since the last time the trip computer was reset.

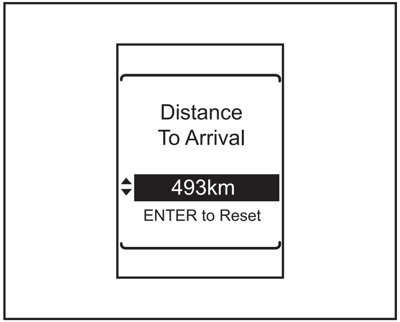
Time to arrival


Time To
Arrival
3:20 hrs

Displays time to arrival.

- Not displayed when **Trip computer A&B** is selected. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

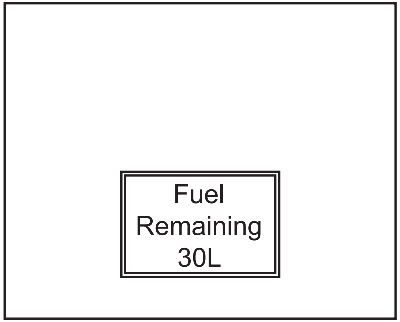
Distance to arrival


Distance
To Arrival
493km
ENTER to Reset

Displays distance to arrival.

- Rotate ▲ or ▼ to enter estimated trip distance.
- The default value is 500 km. This default can be adjusted.
- Press the ENTER button, then rotate ▲ or ▼ to adjust the value while **Distance To Arrival** is displayed.
- Not displayed when **Trip computer A&B** is selected. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

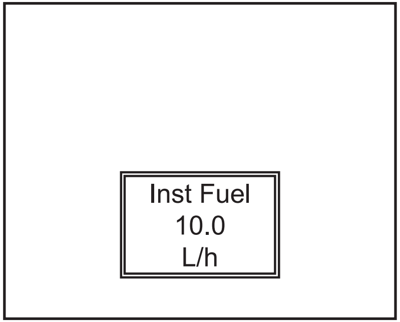
Fuel remaining


Fuel
Remaining
30L

Displays fuel remaining to the nearest 5 litres.

Displays **LOW** when the **Low Fuel** warning is displayed.

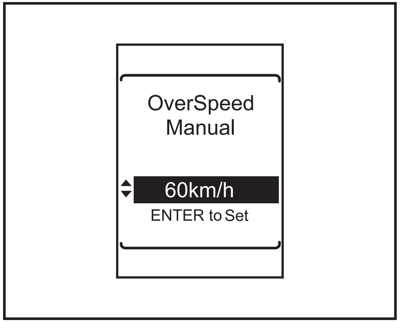
Instantaneous fuel


Inst Fuel
10.0
L/h

Displays instantaneous fuel consumption.

- Litres per 100 km is displayed when vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.
- Litres per hour is displayed when vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.

Overspeed

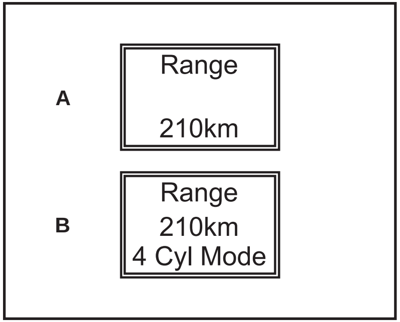

OverSpeed
Manual
60km/h
ENTER to Set

OverSpeed is displayed and a chime sounds when vehicle speed equals or exceeds a preselected value.

The **OverSpeed** display is shown for 10 seconds to allow the preselected value to be adjusted.

To adjust the preselected value, see “Overspeed” under “Single-window display” earlier in this section.

Range



Range
210km

Range
210km
4 Cyl Mode

Displays an estimate of how far the vehicle will go on the current amount of fuel, based on the fuel usage over approximately the previous quarter of the tank.

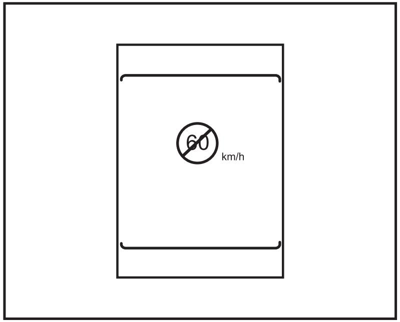
Note: The range (A) is an estimate only and may vary based on driving style and variation in the fuel gauge reading.

The vehicle may have Active Fuel Management (AFM) (B).

- Displays the number of currently active cylinders.

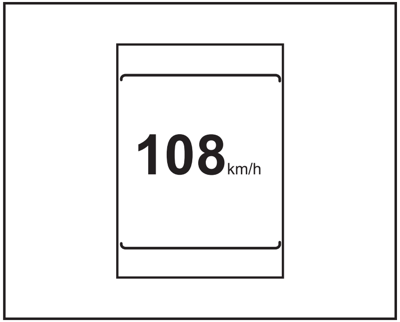
- The AFM display may be enabled or disabled. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

Underspeed



The underspeed animation is displayed and a chime sounds when the vehicle speed drops below the set value. This can be enabled or disabled. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

Digital speedometer

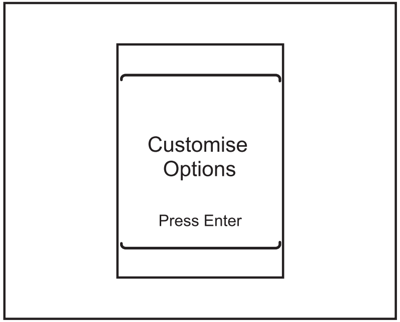


The vehicle speed can also be displayed numerically.

The digital speedometer can be hidden or disabled. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

Vehicle Personalisation

Customisation options

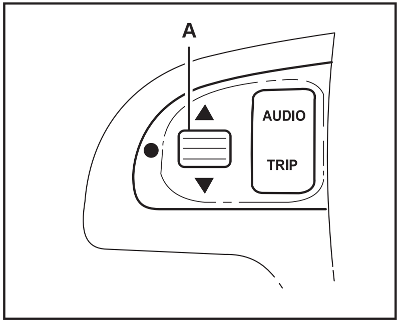


Entering the Customisation menu

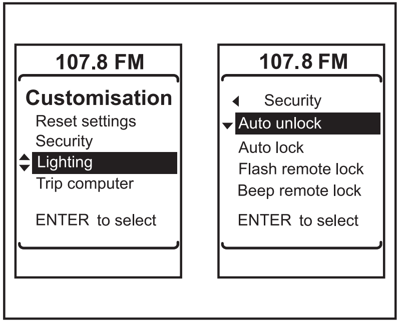
1. Press **TRIP** to navigate to the Customisation menu.
2. Press the Enter button.

Note: The Customisation menu cannot be opened above 10 km/h. **Not Available** is displayed.

Navigating the Customisation menus


A
AUDIO
TRIP

A. ENTER button

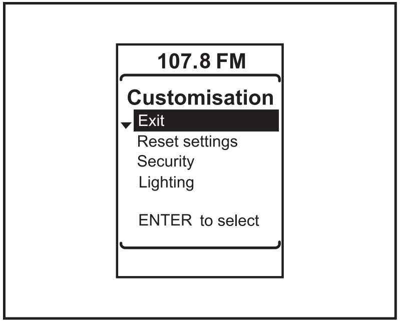

107.8 FM
Customisation
Reset settings
Security
Lighting
Trip computer
ENTER to select
107.8 FM
Security
Auto unlock
Auto lock
Flash remote lock
Beep remote lock
ENTER to select

1. Rotate ▲ or ▼ to scroll through and highlight the menu items.
2. Press the ENTER button to make a selection.
3. Scroll to ◄ and press the ENTER button to go up/back a menu level.

Help screens

A help screen will display a few seconds after each menu item is selected.

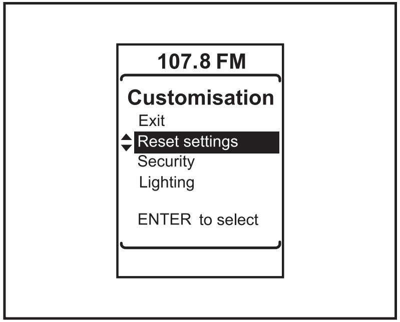
Exiting the Customisation menu


107.8 FM
Customisation
Exit
Reset settings
Security
Lighting
ENTER to select

To exit from the Customisation menu:

1. Navigate to **Exit** and press the ENTER button.
2. Press **TRIP** and revert to the trip computer display.
3. Drive the vehicle at more than 10 km/h.
4. Turn the ignition off (only if stationary).

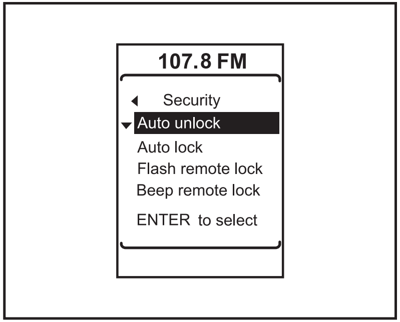
Resetting the settings


107.8 FM
Customisation
Exit
Reset settings
Security
Lighting
ENTER to select

To reset all settings to the default:

1. Navigate to **Reset settings**.
2. Press the ENTER button.
3. Rotate ▲ or ▼ to highlight **Yes** or **No**.
4. Press the ENTER button to confirm the reset.

Security


107.8 FM
Security
Auto unlock
Auto lock
Flash remote lock
Beep remote lock
ENTER to select

See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-11*.

Auto unlock: Automatic door unlocking options:

- **Off** Auto unlock is switched off.
- **Driver door key out** The driver's door unlocks when the ignition key is removed.
- **Driver door in park** (vehicles with automatic transmission) The driver's door unlocks when **P** (park) is selected.
- **All doors at key out** All doors unlock when the ignition key is removed.
- **All doors in park** (vehicles with automatic transmission) All doors unlock when **P** (park) is selected.

Auto lock: Automatic door locking options:

- **Off** Auto lock is switched off.
- **At vehicle speed** The doors will lock when the vehicle speed is at or above 13 km/h.
- **Out of Park** (vehicles with automatic transmission) All doors will lock when the gear lever is out of **P** (park).

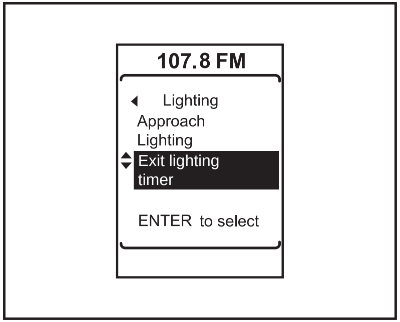
Flash remote lock: The turn signals flash when the doors are locked.

Beep remote lock: The horn sounds when the doors are locked.

Flash remote unlock: The turn signal lights flash when the doors are unlocked.

Two stage unlock: Only the driver's door unlocks when 🔓 is pressed. Press again to unlock all passenger doors and the tailgate (Sportwagon models).

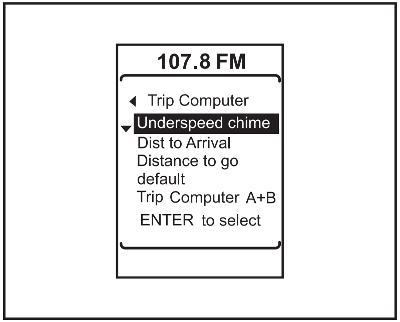
Lighting


107.8 FM
◀ Lighting
Approach Lighting
Exit lighting timer
ENTER to select

See *Exterior Light Controls on page 6-1*.

- **Approach lighting** The exterior lights illuminate when the doors are unlocked.
- **Exit lighting** The exterior lights illuminate for a selectable time when the doors are locked.

Trip computer


107.8 FM
◀ Trip Computer
Underspeed chime
Dist to Arrival
Distance to go default
Trip Computer A+B
ENTER to select

See *Trip Computer on page 5-29*.

- **Underspeed chime** The underspeed chime will operate.
- **Distance to go** (Single-window display) The distance to go will be displayed.
- **Dist to Arrival** (Triple-window display) The distance to arrival will be displayed.
- **Distance to go default** Adjust the default value. The default setting is 500 km.
- **Trip Computer A+B** (Triple-window display) Selects Trip computer A or A&B.
- **Digital speedometer** The digital speedometer will be displayed.
- **Rest reminder** The rest reminder will operate. See "Rest reminder animation" under *Vehicle Reminder Messages on page 5-27*.

The vehicle may have Active Fuel Management.

- **Cylinder mode** Displays how many cylinders are operating:

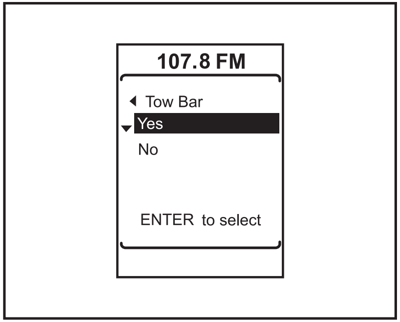
  Off Choose if you do not want to display how many cylinders are currently active.

  On Choose if you want to display how many cylinders are currently active.

Note: Instantaneous fuel is not available for Single window displays if cylinder mode is deactivated.

- **Night panel** When in night panel mode, enable or disable the tachometer. See “Night panel mode” under *Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-4*.
- **Sound volume** Sound volume for all chimes can be set to Low, Normal or High.

Parking Assist (PA)



The vehicle may have PA. See *Parking Assist on page 9-20*.

Select if a towbar is fitted to the vehicle.

Lighting

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Light Controls 6-1
Headlight High/Low-Beam Changer 6-2
Automatic Headlight System 6-2
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-3
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 6-3
Fog Lights 6-4

Interior Lighting

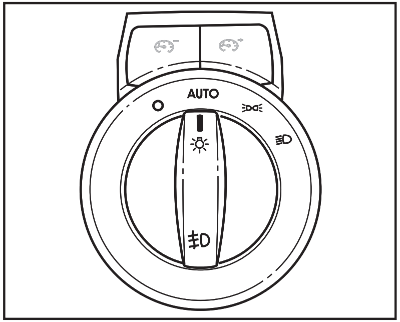
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 6-4
Boot Lights 6-4
Dome Lights 6-5
Reading Lights 6-5
Glove Box Lights 6-6
Sun Visor Lights 6-6

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting 6-6
Exit Lighting 6-7
Battery Power Protection 6-7

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Light Controls



O (Off): Turns the headlights and parking lights off. The switch returns to **AUTO**.

AUTO (Automatic headlights): Headlights and parking lights switch on and off automatically. Select high and low beam using the lever.

Note: When wipers are operating, headlights and parking lights switch on automatically after six wipes.

(Parking lights): Turns on the parking lights, tail lights, rear number plate lights, and instrument panel lighting.

(Headlights): Turns on the headlights and all parking lights.

(Fog lights): The vehicle may have fog lights.

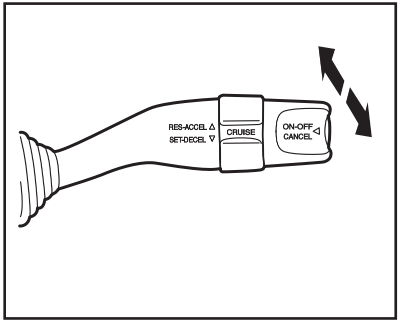
When the light control is set to parking lights or headlights, pull the switch out to turn the fog lights on. Push the switch in to turn them off.

The indicator lights up on the instrument panel when the fog lights are on.

Note: The fog light switch can also be pulled out with the switch in the **AUTO** position.

If left in this position, whenever the parking lights and headlights turn on automatically, so will the fog lights.

Headlight High/Low-Beam Changer



To activate high beam:

- With the headlights on, push the lever towards the front of vehicle until it clicks, then release.
- The high beam indicator light ≣D illuminates on the instrument panel.

To return to low beam:

- Pull the lever towards the rear of the vehicle.

To flash the high beam lights:

- Pull the lever towards the rear of the vehicle and release.
- The high beam lights can be flashed even if the headlights and/or ignition are off.

Automatic Headlight System

When the light control is in the **AUTO** position, the headlights and parking lights switch off and on automatically depending on the ambient light.

Note:

- Keep the sensor clean and do not cover it. See *Instrument Panel Overview on page 5-2*.
- The headlights, parking lights, reverse lights and puddle lamps are activated by the approach lighting feature. See *Entry Lighting on page 6-6*.

⚠ WARNING

The automatic headlight sensor cannot replace the driver’s personal judgement of the prevailing light conditions. For example, the sensor is unable to detect foggy conditions.

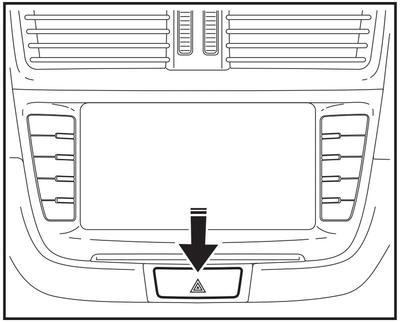
In situations such as this, set the light switch to ≣D, otherwise your safety and that of other road users could be endangered.

- Do not leave the headlights or parking lights on when the engine is not running.
- To prevent the battery running flat, the headlights and parking lights switch off when the ignition is turned to the lock position.

  The lights stay off until the ignition is turned on or the lights are switched on using the light control.

- To keep the lights on when leaving the vehicle, turn the ignition key to the lock position, then rotate the light control first to **AUTO**, then to parking lights or headlights.

Hazard Warning Flashers



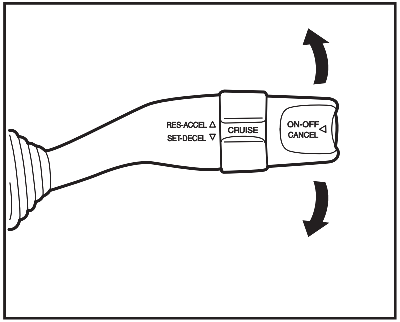
Press ⚠ to turn the hazard warning flasher on or off, with the ignition in any position.

All turn signals flash continuously.

Use the hazard warning flashers if the vehicle becomes a traffic hazard, day or night.

Note: Using hazard warning flashers while the vehicle is moving is illegal in some states and countries.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



- Push the lever in the direction the steering wheel is turned.
- To signal a lane change, push the lever part way in the direction of the turn.

  The turn signals will flash three times.
- To cancel the lane change function, push the lever in either direction.
- A green arrow on the instrument panel flashes when the lights are in operation.

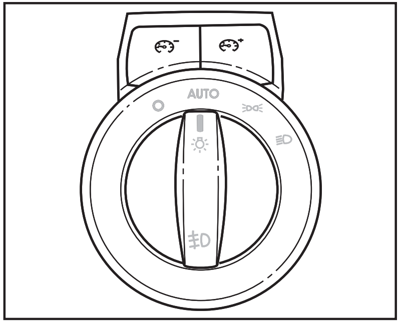
Fog Lights

The vehicle may have fog lights.

- In very heavy fog, vision may be improved by having the parking lights and fog lights on and turning the headlights off.
- When the fog lights are turned on, the fog light indicator illuminates on the instrument panel.
- Reduce speed when driving in fog.
- Check state laws regarding use of fog lights when driving.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control



The instruments are automatically illuminated when the parking lights or headlights are switched on.

To adjust the instrument lighting, hold or until the desired level is reached.

Night panel mode

Press or together to enable night panel mode for country driving.

Press and hold either button again to switch instrument lighting back on.

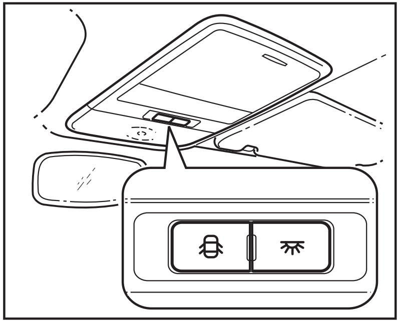
Note:

- When night panel mode is enabled, the speedometer, information displays and warning reminders remain illuminated while all other instrument panel illumination is switched off.
- In night panel mode, only the gauges that are illuminated will be active.

Boot Lights

The light illuminates when the boot (Sedan) / tailgate (Sportwagon) is opened and switches off when closed.

Dome Lights



The two interior lights are located in the centre-front of the roof and the centre-rear of the roof.

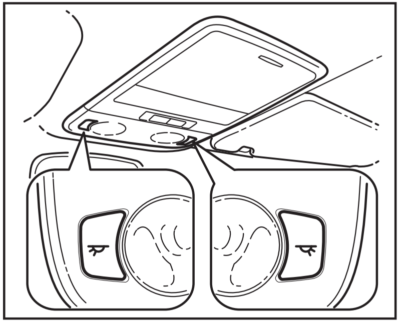
Two settings are available:

- **(On/off)**
- **(Door activated)**: The light automatically switches on when a door is opened, the vehicle is unlocked, or the key is removed from the ignition.

  The light dims to off after all doors are closed.
- Switching the ignition on dims the lights off immediately (unless a door remains open).
- When the interior lights are set to door activated, they operate automatically only when it is dark.
- The lights switch off approximately 10 minutes after the key is turned to the lock position. See *Battery Power Protection on page 6-7*.

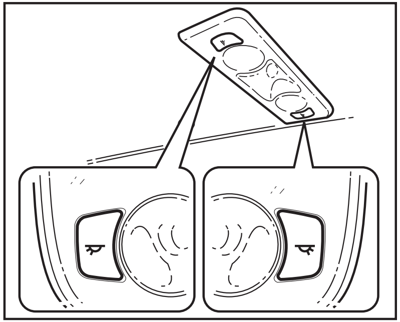
Reading Lights

Front reading lights



- The vehicle may have front reading lights.
- Front reading lights are located in the centre-front roof console.
- Press or to switch the light on or off.

Rear reading lights



- The vehicle may have rear reading lights.
- Rear reading lights are located in the centre-rear roof console.
- Press ⌓ or ⌓ to switch the light on or off.

Glove Box Lights

The glove box light comes on when the glove box is opened and switches off when closed.

Sun Visor Lights

The vehicle may have lights at either side of the mirror.

The lights turn on and off automatically when the cover is opened and closed.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

Approach lighting

Approach lighting provides additional security when returning to the vehicle at night.

- Press 🔒 on the key.

  The vehicle headlights, parking lights and reverse lights will illuminate for 60 seconds. The vehicle may also have puddle lamps, which will also illuminate.
- The lights only turn on if the light control is left in the **AUTO** position.
- To enable or disable this function, see “Lighting” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

Exit Lighting

To illuminate a path, set a time delay from when the ignition is turned to the lock position to when the lights automatically switch off. See “Lighting” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-40*.

Personal identity keys

The vehicle may have personal identity keys.

When 🔓 is pressed on the key, the headlight time delay is set to the last adjustment used for that key. See “Personal identity keys” under *Keys on page 2-1*.

Battery Power Protection

To prevent the battery from discharging, the lights for the glove box, boot (Sedan), cargo area (Sportwagon) and reading lights automatically switch off approximately 10 minutes after the key is turned to the lock position.

Once the lights have been deactivated, they are reactivated if either:

- The ignition is switched on
- The vehicle is unlocked
- The boot is opened
- The tailgate is opened
- The glove box is opened
- The reading lights are switched on

✍ NOTES

Infotainment System

Introduction

Introduction 7-1
Theft Deterrent Feature 7-3
Overview 7-4
Operation 7-5

Radio

AM-FM Radio 7-10
Radio Data System (RDS) . . . 7-10
Radio Reception 7-14

Audio Players

CD Player 7-15
MP3 7-17
Mass Storage Media (MEM) 7-18
USB 7-20
Auxiliary Devices 7-22
Bluetooth Audio 7-26

Rear Seat Infotainment

Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System 7-27

Navigation

Navigation System Overview 7-45
Getting Started 7-49
Plan Route 7-51
Enter Destination 7-54
Navigation Menu 7-59

Bluetooth Phone/Devices

Bluetooth 7-71

Introduction

General information

Do the following before driving:

- Read the Infotainment System section to become familiar with the functions.
- Become familiar with the hard keys on the faceplate and the touch-sensitive screen buttons.
  - “Press” refers to hard keys.
  - “Touch” refers to screen keys.
- Set up the audio by presetting your favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speaker settings.
- Set up the navigation features before driving, for example, enter an address or preset destination, or delete information you may have entered using various options.

- The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.

About the system

- The system includes navigation and audio functions.
- Some features may be disabled while driving. These functions will be greyed out.
- A greyed-out function indicates it is not available when the vehicle is moving.
- All functions are available when the vehicle is parked.

⚠ DANGER

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using the navigation system could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to yourself or others. Focus your attention on driving.

⚠ WARNING

When driving the vehicle, be sure to keep the volume of the unit set low enough to hear sounds from outside the vehicle (e.g. road and traffic conditions).

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place beverages close to the audio system. The audio system may be damaged if they spill.

Do not strike or allow anything to impact the audio system, as this could damage the system.

Traffic Message Channel (TMC) feature

The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions (as updated from time to time) that apply to the use of the Traffic Message Channel (TMC).

To view the full terms and conditions relevant to the use of the service, refer to www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

Appropriate use

The TMC is intended as an aid only, and does not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions.

The TMC service should not be relied upon for journeys that are time critical, because you may experience delays on occasion even when using the TMC service.

Use of the TMC while driving

You must operate the TMC in accordance with all relevant road rules and laws. In particular, you must only operate the TMC when the vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

Service continuity and reception

Reasonable endeavours will be made to provide the TMC 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. However, the service may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. The provider of the TMC reserves the right to withdraw the service at any time.

Uninterrupted reception of the TMC cannot be assumed at any particular location.

Limitation of liability

Neither GM Holden nor the provider of the TMC will be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use the TMC.

No guarantee or any warranties are provided as to the availability, accuracy or completeness of the TMC, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any state or federal legislation in relation to the TMC are excluded.

For operation, see “Traffic Message Channel (TMC)” under *Navigation Menu on page 7-59*.

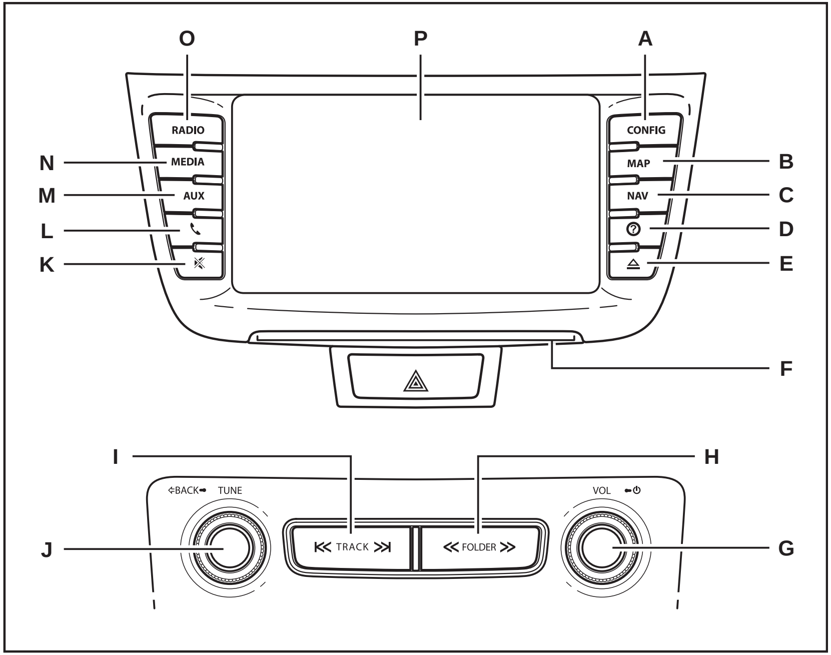
Theft Deterrent Feature

The infotainment system includes an electronically coded security system.

This electronically links the infotainment system to the vehicle.

When the electronic link between the vehicle and the infotainment system is interrupted, **Security Lockout Active** will be shown. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Overview


O
P
A
RADIO
CONFIG
N
MEDIA
MAP
B
M
AUX
NAV
C
L
D
K
E
F
I
H
BACK
TUNE
VOL
TRACK
FOLDER
J
G

A. Configuration menu button

B. Navigation map view button

C. Navigation menu button

D. Help menu button

E. CD eject button

F. CD slot

G. Power/volume switch

H. Tune up/down (AM, FM)

Folder up/down button (MP3)

I. Continuous seek up/down button (AM, FM)

Seek next/previous track button (CD, USB, iPod®, Bluetooth® audio and VCDC)

J. Tune switch (AM, FM)

Page up/page down (menu control)

Back (menu control)

K. Mute sound button (AM, FM, CD, USB, iPod®, Bluetooth® audio and VCDC)

L. Phone button (Bluetooth®)

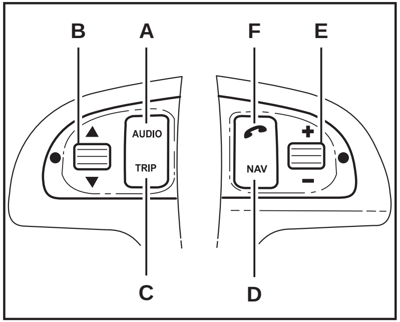
M. Auxiliary selection button (front, rear, DVD)

N. Media selection button (CD, USB, iPod®, Bluetooth® audio and VCDC)

O. Radio source selection button (AM, FM)

P. Touch screen (radio, media, navigation)

Steering wheel remote controls


B
A
F
E
AUDIO
TRIP
NAV
C
D

A. Audio source selection button (radio and media)

B. Scroll up/down wheel

   Radio (next/previous favourite preset)

   Media (next/previous track)

C. Trip selection button

D. Navigation button

E. Volume scroll wheel (radio, media, Bluetooth®)

   Mute button (all media except navigation)

F. Bluetooth® phone button

Operation

Switching on/off

- Press ⏻ (G) to turn the audio system on or off.
- Rotate **VOL** (G) to adjust the volume.

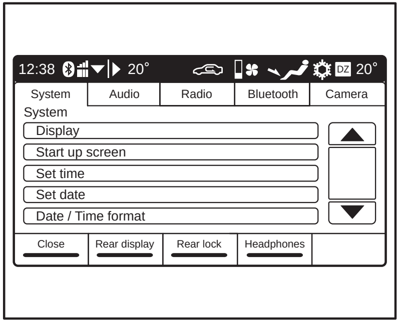
Mute

Press (E) on the steering wheel remote controls or press 🔇 (K).

Setting the clock

The time and date as well as the time and date format can be set.

Setting the date/time format


12:38
20°
DZ
20°
System
Audio
Radio
Bluetooth
Camera
System
Display
Start up screen
Set time
Set date
Date / Time format
Close
Rear display
Rear lock
Headphones

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch **Date/Time format**.

3. Touch **12 hr.** or **24 hr.**

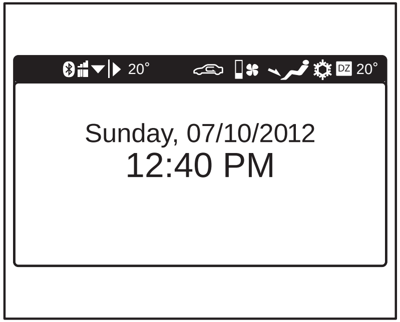
   The option selected is indicated by ⊙.

4. Touch **dd mm yyyy** (07/10/2012) or **dd mmm yyyy** (7th October 2012).

   The option selected is indicated by ⊙.

5. Touch **Back** to exit.

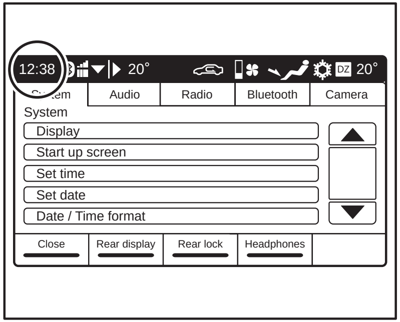
Setting the time


20°
20°
Sunday, 07/10/2012
12:40 PM

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch **Set time** to access the **Set time** menu.
3. Touch ▼ or ▲ to set the **Hour**, **Minute** and **AM/PM** settings.

   AM/PM are only available in a 12 hour format.

4. Touch **OK** to store the settings.
5. Touch **Back** to exit.


12:38
20°
20°
System
Audio
Radio
Bluetooth
Camera
System
Display
Start up screen
Set time
Set date
Date / Time format
Close
Rear display
Rear lock
Headphones

Alternatively, touch and hold the time where shown and repeat steps 3 to 5.

Setting the date

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch **Set date** to access the **Set date** menu.
3. Touch ▼ or ▲ to set the **Day**, **Month** and **Year** settings.
4. Touch **OK** to store the settings.
5. Touch **Back** to exit.

Setting the display brightness

To adjust the display brightness.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch **Display**.
3. Touch ◄ or ► to adjust the display brightness.
4. Touch **Back** to exit.

Start-up screen

Enable or disable the start-up screen.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch **Start up screen**.

3. Select either **Start up screen ON** or **OFF**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.

4. Touch **Back** to exit.

Driving lockouts

In the **Driving lockouts** menu driving lockouts can be switched on or off.

When selected, text entry into these features is locked out while the vehicle is moving.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch ▼ or ▲ and select the second **System** screen.
3. Touch **Driving lockouts**.
4. Touch the **On** or **Off** option for **Phone** and/or **Navigation text entry**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.

5. Touch **Back** to exit.

Restore factory settings

With this option, all radio favourites will be erased and configuration settings reset to factory defaults.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch ▼ or ▲ and select the second **System** screen.
3. Touch **Restore factory settings**.
4. Touch **OK** if you want to restore the factory settings or touch **Cancel** to exit without restoring the factory settings.

GPS clock synchronisation (with navigation)

Synchronise the clock of the infotainment system via GPS.

When activated, the system clock will only be able to adjust in 30-minute increments to account for changes in time zones.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch ▼ or ▲ and select the second **System** screen.
3. Touch **GPS clock sync**.
4. Touch **On** or **Off**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.

5. Touch **Back** to exit.

Settings

Adjusting the tone (treble, bass, midrange)

The bass, midrange or treble can only be adjusted while the equaliser is set to Custom.

Bass, midrange and treble can be adjusted in the range –12 to +12.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch the **Audio** tab.
3. Touch **Bass/Treble**.
4. **Treble**: Touch ◀ or ▶ to increase or decrease the treble.
5. **Midrange**: Touch ◀ or ▶ to increase or decrease the midrange.
6. **Bass**: Touch ◀ or ▶ to increase or decrease the bass.

7. Touch **Back** to exit.

Note: The settings will be applied to the currently selected audio source.

Adjusting fader and/or balance

Adjust the sound between the front and rear speakers and the left and right speakers.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch the **Audio** tab.
3. Touch **Fader/Balance**.
4. **Fader**: Touch ◄ or ► to adjust the sound between the front and rear speakers.
5. **Balance**: Touch ◄ or ► to adjust the sound balance between the left and right speakers.
6. Touch **Back** to exit.

Setting the equaliser

The equaliser enables the user to control the sound of the audio system.

With Custom selected, you can adjust the bass/midrange/treble tone.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch the **Audio** tab.
3. Touch **Equaliser**.
4. Touch the option required.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
5. Touch **Back** to exit.

Setting the Speed Dependent Volume Control (SDVC)

The audio system volume adjusts depending on the vehicle's speed.

As the vehicle's speed increases, the volume of the audio system also increases to compensate for the driving noise.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch the **Audio** tab.
3. Touch **Speed dependent volume control**.
4. Touch the option required.

   1: Small volume increase

   2: Larger volume increase

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
5. Touch **Back** to exit.

Setting the Dynamic Distortion Limiter (DDL)

DDL limits the amount of amplifier distortion.

When the limit is reached the volume will not be able to be increased.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch the **Audio** tab.
3. Touch **Dynamic distortion limiter**.

4. Touch the option required.

   OFF: No distortion limiting

   1: Maximum distortion limiting

   2: Minimum distortion limiting

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.

5. Touch **Back** to exit.

Switching the loudness on/off

This feature automatically boosts the bass and treble response at low volume levels.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch the **Audio** tab.
3. Touch ▲ or ▼ to select the second **Audio** page.
4. Touch **Loudness**.
5. Touch **On** or **Off**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.

6. Touch **Back** to exit.

Voice guidance (with navigation)

The voice guidance volume can be adjusted and turned on or off.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch the **Audio** tab.
3. Touch ▲ or ▼ to select the second **Audio** page.
4. Touch **Voice guidance volume**.
5. **Voice guidance**:

   Touch **On** or **Off**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.

6. **Voice guidance volume**:

   Touch ◄ or ► to adjust the voice guidance volume.

7. Touch **Back** to exit.

Voice guidance volume can be adjusted during announcements:

1. Rotate **VOL** (G).

   Alternatively, scroll **+/-** (E) on the steering wheel remote controls.

Selecting the voice guidance output speakers

Select the speakers:

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch the **Audio** tab.
3. Touch ▲ or ▼ to select the second **Audio** page.
4. Touch **Voice guidance speaker output**.
5. Touch either **Driver**, **Front** or **All**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.

6. Touch **Back** to exit.

Changing the Traffic Announcement (TA), phone or startup volume

Adjust the volume settings for the TA, phone or infotainment system startup:

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch the **Audio** tab.

3. Touch ▲ or ▼ to select the second **Audio** page.
4. Touch **Volume**.
5. **TA**:

   Touch ◄ or ► to adjust the volume.
6. **Phone**:

   Touch ◄ or ► to adjust the volume.
7. **Startup**:

   Touch ◄ or ► to adjust the volume.
8. Touch **Back** to exit.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

AM band

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night.

The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other.

For better radio reception, most AM radio stations boost their power levels during the day and then reduce these levels at night.

Static can also occur when storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, reduce the treble on the radio.

FM stereo band

Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills.

Radio Data System (RDS)

RDS encodes information on the system's FM frequency only.

When tuned to an RDS station, the station name is displayed.

Many but not all radio stations transmit RDS information, so it is possible that this feature will not operate in some regions or on some stations.

FM radio text can be switched on or off. See “FM radio text” later in this section.

Traffic Announcement (TA)

TA bulletins may be broadcast to assist with route planning and avoidance of traffic. See “FM Traffic Announcements (TA)” later in this section.

The volume of these bulletins can be adjusted. See “Changing the Traffic Announcement (TA), phone or startup volume” earlier in this section.

Radio settings

Autoseek sensitivity

The autoseek sensitivity can be changed.

- When **Local** is selected, the radio will seek strong station signals.

  Loc is displayed.
- When **Distant** is selected, the radio will seek weak station signals.

  Dis is displayed.
- When **Auto** is selected the first sweep of the frequency band will search local stations and the second sweep will search distant stations.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch **RADIO** tab.
3. Touch **Autoseek sensitivity**.
4. Touch either **Local**, **Distance** or **Auto**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
5. Touch **Back** to exit.

FM radio text

FM radio text can be switched on or off.

If additional Radio Data System (RDS) information is received from the currently tuned radio station, it appears on the infotainment screen.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch **RADIO** tab.
3. Touch **FM**.
4. **Radio text**:

   Touch **On** or **Off**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
5. Touch **Back** to exit.

FM Alternate Frequency (AF)

When AF is switched on and the current FM station becomes too weak, the radio switches to a stronger RDS capable station with the same program identifier code.

AF can be switched on or off.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch **RADIO** tab.
3. Touch **FM**.
4. **Alternate frequency**:

   Touch **On** or **Off**.

   AF is displayed when selected.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
5. Touch **Back** to exit.

FM Traffic Announcements (TA)

When TA is switched on and an announcement is transmitted, it will be audible via the radio.

TA can be switched on or off.

1. Press **RADIO** (O).

2. Touch **FM**.
3. Touch **More**.
4. Touch **TA On**.

   The **TP search** pop-up is displayed.

   The radio searches for TP stations.
5. To cancel TA search, touch **Cancel**.

Note:

- If no TP station is found, **No TP station** is displayed.
- When seeking a station, only TP stations will be found. See “Seek” later in this section.
- If listening to another source, the TA will still be audible for the duration of the announcement.

FM Program Type (PTY) Seek

Tune to radio stations by program type.

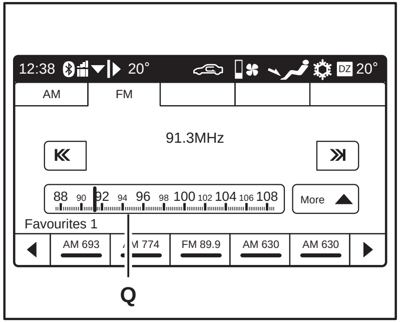
There are six categories: Pop, Country, Classic, Jazz, Rock and Any.

1. Press **RADIO** (O).
2. Touch **FM**.
3. Touch **More**.
4. Touch **PTY List**.

   The list is displayed.
5. Touch a program type.

   The radio searches for stations with the selected program type.

Frequency bar display


12:38
20°
20°
AM
FM
91.3MHz
88 90 92 94 96 98 100 102 104 106 108
More
Favourites 1
AM 693
AM 774
FM 89.9
AM 630
AM 630
Q

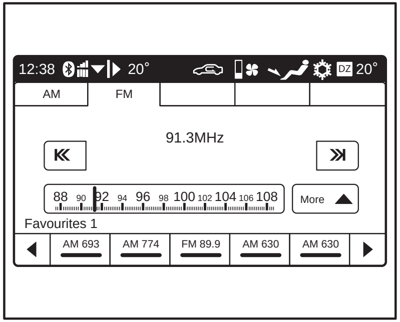
Switch the display of the frequency bar (Q) on or off.

1. Press **CONFIG** (A).
2. Touch **RADIO** tab.
3. Touch **Manual tune**.
4. Touch **On** or **Off**.

   The option selected is indicated by ◉.
5. Touch **Back** to exit.

Station search

Selecting a band



- Press **RADIO** (O) or touch the tab to either select AM or FM.

  The selected band is shown by the tab on the infotainment screen.

Manual tune

Manually tune to a radio station:

1. Press **RADIO** (O) to either select the AM or FM band.
2. Rotate **TUNE** (J).

   Alternatively, press ≪ or ≫ to tune to the next available radio station.

Seek

Automatically seek for the next or previous radio station.

Audio is muted while seeking.

1. Press **RADIO** (O) to either select the AM or FM band.
2. Press or touch |≪ or ≫|.

   The radio seeks for the previous or next strongest radio station in the selected band.

Note: When TA is switched on, only TA stations will be found. To seek all stations, switch TA off. See “FM Traffic Announcements (TA)” earlier in this section.

Frequency scan

The radio will scan through the frequencies, pausing for 10 seconds when a station is found.

1. Press **RADIO** (O) to either select the AM or FM band.
2. Touch **More**.
3. Touch **Frequency scan**.

   To cancel the scan, touch any button.

   Stations may be stored to Presets during the scan. See “Storing a radio station in the favourite lists” later in this section.

   The scan will need to be restarted after storing a station.

Preset stations

- There are three favourite lists for storing radio stations.
- The favourite lists are stored across AM and FM stations.
- There are two autostore lists, one for AM stations and one for FM stations.
- There are five presets in each list.

Storing radio stations in the autostore list

The radio will scan the entire band, select the stations with the best reception quality, and store them in the AM or FM autostore list.

1. Press **RADIO** (O) to either select the AM or FM band.
2. Touch **More**.
3. Touch **Show autostore**.

   AM or FM autostore list will be enabled.
4. Touch **More**.
5. Touch **Autostore search**.

   Autostoring AM/FM stations is displayed.

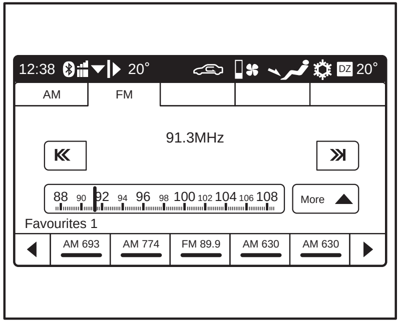
   Autostore scans the corresponding band and stores the first five strongest stations.

   When Autostore is completed the first stored station is selected.
6. To cancel Autostore, touch **Cancel**.

Storing a radio station in the favourite lists

Store a radio station under any preset:

1. Press **RADIO** (O) to either select the AM or FM band.
2. Seek for a radio station either manually or automatically.



3. Touch and hold the preset station to be stored.

   A beep sounds.
4. The radio station is stored.

Recall a favourite station

Recall a station from the favourite lists.

1. Press **RADIO** (O) to either select the AM or FM band.
2. Touch the preset.

   To select an alternate favourite list, touch ◄ or ►.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet.

If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

Audio Players

CD Player

The vehicle may have a CD player or a virtual CD changer (VCDC).

Compact disc player (CD player)

A single CD player can play one CD at a time.

Virtual Compact Disc Changer (VCDC player)

A virtual CD player stores CDs in the internal memory of the audio system, which can then be played.

⚠ CAUTION

If a label is added to a CD, if more than one CD is inserted into the slot at a time, or if an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs, the CD player may be damaged.

(Continued)

CAUTION (Continued)

Use only CDs in good condition without any labels, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids and debris.

CD player

General information

⚠ CAUTION

Avoid inserting any foreign objects into the slot of the player.

Failure to observe this may cause malfunction due to the precise mechanism of this unit.

Disc formats

The CD player supports the following disc types:

- Copy protected CDs
- CD-Audio (CD-DA)
- CD-R
- CD-RW

The CD player supports the following media types:

- MP3
- WMA

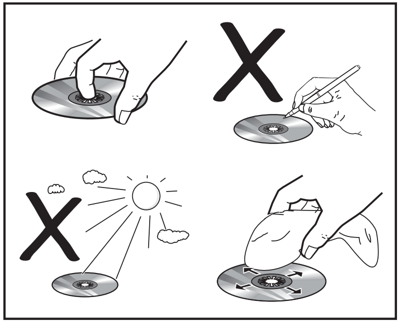
Note:

- Only closed session discs can be read. Open session discs will be ignored. The message **Disc Error** will be displayed.
- If a disc has unreadable formats, unsupported formats, or no tracks, then **Disc Error** is displayed for 2 seconds and the disc is ejected.
- Depending on the type of CD-R/ CD-RW CDs, some CDs may not operate normally.
- The last track played is held in memory until the CD is removed.

Copy-protected audio CDs

Some copy-protected CDs may not operate.

Handling CDs

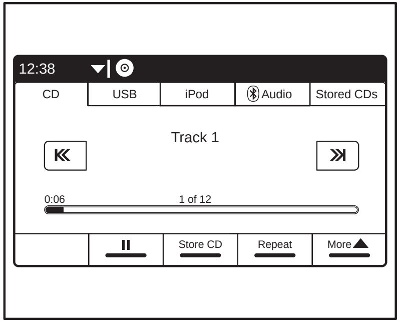


- Avoid leaving fingerprints on the CD when removing it.
- Store all CDs in their protective covers.
- Ensure that CDs are clean and dry before inserting.
- Protect CDs from heat and direct sunlight.

Cleaning the unit

Do not clean using cleaning fluid, alcohol or other solvents. Use only a damp cloth.

Inserting a CD



1. Insert an audio CD into the CD slot.

   Loading CD is displayed.

   ◎ is visible when the climate control display bar is minimised to indicate a CD is loaded.

   The first track of the CD is played automatically.

Ejecting a CD

1. Press ⏏ to eject a CD from the CD slot.

   Ejecting CD is displayed.

Pausing/playing a CD

Touch II to pause the CD.

Touch ▶ to play the CD.

Go to next track

1. Press or touch ⏭ to go to the next track or rotate ▲ (B) on the steering wheel remote controls.

Replay current track

1. Press or touch ⏮ to replay the current track.

Go to previous track

1. Press or touch ⏮ twice within 5 seconds to select and play the previous track.

   Pressing or touching ⏮ or rotating ▼ (B) on the steering wheel remote controls within

5 seconds of the start of a track will select and play the previous track.

Fast forward/backward

Advance the track being played forward and backward.

1. Press/touch and hold either ⏭ or ⏮ to fast forward or fast reverse the current track.

Scan track

1. Touch **More** to open the options menu.
2. Touch **Intro scan** to activate the scan track option.

   Scan trk is displayed.

   The next track is selected and played for 10 seconds, then the following track is played for 10 seconds, until the starting track is reached.
3. To cancel Scan track, touch any button.

Random disc on/off

With random disc on, all tracks on the CD are played in a non-sequential order. No track is repeated until all the other tracks have been played.

1. Touch **CD** tab.
2. Touch **More**.
3. Touch **Random** to switch random play on or off.
4. **Rdm all** is displayed.

MP3

MP3 files can be played on the CD player.

The total number of files and folders that can be searched is limited to a pre-defined value.

- The maximum number of entries per folder is 255 (entries can be folders or files).
- The maximum number of playable files is 999.
- Additional files and folders will be ignored.

Root directory

The root directory is treated as a folder.

All .mp3 files in the root directory are accessed before folders in the root directory.

Empty directory or folder

Empty directories and folders will not show on the display.

The system will ignore them and advance to the next directory or folder containing .mp3 files.

No folder

If a CD has only .mp3 files in the root directory, the next and previous folder functions are not available.

File system and naming

Track names must be shorter than 39 characters. Names that are longer will be cut short.

The track name will be shown as:

- The song name that is in the ID3 tag.
- The file name without the file extension, if the song name is not in the ID3 tag.

Playing an MP3 CD

Browsing the media list and playing a track

Browse and navigate the media list, select a track and play it.

1. Insert an MP3 CD into the CD slot.

   Loading CD is displayed.

   The first track of the CD is played automatically, the song title, artist name and album name are shown.
2. Touch **Browse** to open the file list.

   MP3 files and folders are displayed.
3. Touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll the files and folders.
4. Touch the title to play the title, or touch the folder to open the folder.
5. Touch **Back** to exit.

Next folder

While playing an MP3 CD, press ENTER (B) on the steering wheel remote controls to change to the next folder.

Repeat current track/folder/off

1. Touch **Repeat** to repeat the current track.
2. Touch **Repeat** twice to repeat the current folder.
3. Touch **Repeat** 3 times to switch off the repeat folder/file function.

Random play

With random on, tracks on the CD are played in a non-sequential order. No track is repeated until all the other tracks have been played.

1. Touch the **CD** tab.
2. Touch **More**.
3. Touch **Random** to switch to random mode.

   Rdm fldr or **Rdm all** is displayed.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to change mode or to turn random play off.

Mass Storage Media (MEM)

Virtual CD changer (VCDC)

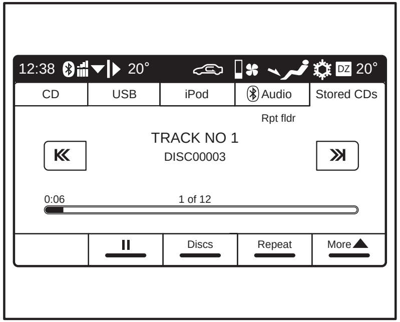
The vehicle may have a virtual CD changer.

Notes on virtual CD

- The audio system will only store audio CDs to the VCDC.

  MP3 and WMA files on a CD cannot be stored to the VCDC.
- The audio system will stop CD playback while storing the audio CD to the VCDC.
- The audio system will always start playback at the first track after storing an audio CD to the VCDC.

Storing an audio CD



Copy an entire audio CD to the VCDC.

1. Insert an audio CD in the CD slot.

   The first track of the CD is played.

2. Touch **Store CD**.

   The currently playing disc will be stored in a free slot. The storage process is displayed.

   The number of empty slots is also shown.

3. Touch **OK** to continue storing and exit.

Notes on storing CDs

- If the **Stored CD** tab is pressed when no discs are stored, **No stored discs** is displayed.
- Playback of the audio CD will not be available while the disc is being stored. Other media sources are available during the storing process.
- While storing CDs, only the previously selected stored CD may be played.

Renaming a disc

1. Touch the **Stored CDs** tab.
2. Touch **Discs**.

   The list of CDs is displayed.

3. Touch **Rename**.

   If the disc to be renamed is not shown in the list, touch ▲ or ▼ or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll through the stored CDs.

4. Touch the disc to be renamed.

   The keyboard is displayed.

5. Use the keyboard to enter the new name (18 characters maximum).
6. Press **OK** to confirm the changes.

   Disc renamed is displayed.

Deleting a disc

1. Touch the **Stored CDs** tab.
2. Touch **Discs**.

   The list of CDs is displayed.

   If the disc to be deleted is not shown in the list, touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll through the stored CDs.

3. Touch **Delete**.
4. Touch the disc to be deleted.

   Delete *?** is displayed.

5. Press **OK**.

   After deletion, the corresponding slot shows **<No Disc>**.

Deleting all discs

1. Touch the **Stored CDs** tab.
2. Touch **Delete**.

   The list of CDs is displayed.
3. Touch **Delete all**.

   Delete all discs? is displayed.
4. Press **OK**.

   After deletion, all slots show **<No Disc>**.

Playing a track from a stored disc

1. Touch the **Stored CDs** tab.
2. Touch **Discs**.

   The list of CDs is displayed.

   If the disc to be played is not shown in the list, touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll through the stored CDs.
3. Touch the disc to be played.
4. Touch the track to be played.

   Playback of the disc will start from the chosen track.

Changing disc

While playing a stored CD, press ENTER (B) on the steering wheel remote controls to change to the next stored disc.

USB

General information

A USB stick can be connected to the USB port.

The USB port is located under the lid of the centre console.

⚠ WARNING

Do not connect USB devices such as hard discs, multiplug USB hubs or other digital equipment to the USB port.

Connecting other devices can cause malfunction or destroy the audio equipment.

Do not use any equipment that prevents safe driving.

⚠ CAUTION

In rare cases, a USB stick (thumb drive) may not be recognised by the system or may cause a malfunction.

To ensure compatibility with the infotainment system the file system for USB sticks should be FAT32.

The following file formats are supported:

- MP3 (MPEG 1 layer 3)
- WMA (Windows Media Audio)

The total number of files and folders that can be searched is limited to a pre-defined value.

The MP3 player is able to read and play a maximum of:

- 255 entries per folder (entries can be folders or files)
- 999 playable files

Additional files and folders will be ignored.

- The last track played is held in memory until the USB stick is removed.

Selecting the USB as source

1. Connect the USB stick to the port.

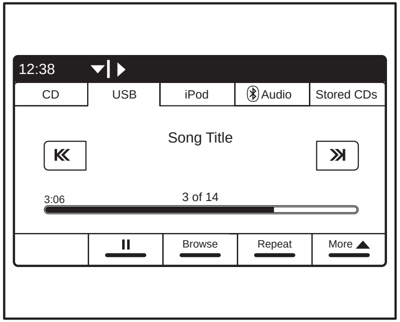
   The USB device is automatically detected by the system.

2. **Reading media...** is displayed.

   If there are no playable tracks on the USB, **USB device empty** is displayed.

   The previously used source will be selected.

3. The USB menu is displayed and USB will be the current source.
4. The audio system plays the first track in the root directory.



Pausing/playing a song

1. Touch ⏸ to pause a song.
2. Touch ▶ to continue playing a song.

Go to next track

1. Touch or press ⏭.

Replay the current track

1. Touch or press ⏮.

Go to the previous track

1. Touch ⏮ twice within 5 seconds to select and play the previous track.

   Pressing or touching ⏮ within 5 seconds of the start of a track will select and play the previous track.

Fast forward/backward

Advance the track being played forward and backward.

1. Touch or press and hold either ⏭ or ⏮ to fast forward or fast reverse the current track.

Repeat current track/folder/off

1. Touch **Repeat** to repeat the current track.

   Rpt trk is displayed.

2. Touch **Repeat** again to repeat the current folder.

   Rpt fldr is displayed.

3. Touch **Repeat** again to switch off.

Random folder/random all/random off

1. Touch **More**.
2. Touch **Random** to play the tracks in the current folder at random.
3. Touch **More**.
4. Touch **Random** to play all the tracks at random.
5. Touch **More**.
6. Touch **Random** to switch off the random function.

Go to next/previous folder

1. Press either ≫ or ≪ to select the next or previous folder.

   The first track in the folder will be played.

Browsing the media list and playing a track

1. Touch **Browse** in the USB tab.

   The folders and tracks available on the USB will be displayed.
2. Touch ▲ or ▼ or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll through the tracks and folders.
3. Touch the track to be played, or touch the folder to be opened.

Disconnecting the USB

1. Remove the USB from the port.
2. **Media disconnected** is displayed.

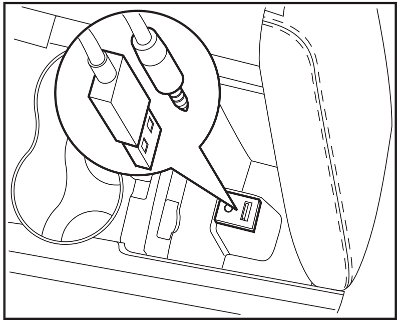
   The previously used source will be selected.

Auxiliary Devices

General information

- Devices that can be connected to the infotainment system are: iPod® devices, USB sticks, MP3 players and Bluetooth® (BT) streaming devices.

  For Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) auxiliary devices, see “RSE auxiliary devices” under *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-27*.
- Connect using either the USB port, the 3.5 mm socket, or Bluetooth®.



The 3.5 mm (front AUX) socket is located under the lid of the centre console, next to the USB port.

Note: The socket has a lift-up cover.

iPod®

All audio media types that are supported by the iPod® can be played.

Connecting an iPod®

1. Connect the iPod® to the USB port using the USB cable supplied with the iPod®.

   The iPod® is automatically detected by the system.

2. **iPod connected...** is displayed.
3. The iPod® menu is displayed.

   The iPod® becomes the current source.

4. The audio system plays the track last played on the iPod®.

   If there are no playable tracks on the iPod®, **No songs in iPod** is displayed and the previously used source will be selected.

   If the connected iPod® is not working or the system is not able to detect the iPod®, **iPod ERROR** is displayed and the previously used source will be selected.

Note: An iPod® may also be connected to the 3.5 mm socket but cannot be controlled via the audio system.

Selecting iPod® as source

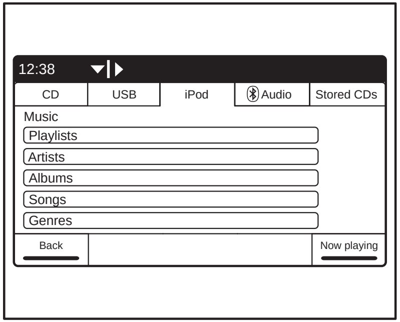
1. Press **Media**.
2. Touch the **iPod** tab.

Disconnecting the iPod®

1. Unplug the iPod®.
2. **iPod disconnected...** is displayed.

   The previously used source will be selected.

Searching for a song via the playlists



1. Touch **Browse**.

   The iPod® music menu is displayed, showing:

   - Playlists
   - Artists
   - Albums
   - Songs
   - Genres

2. Touch **Playlists**.

   The playlists are displayed.

3. Touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll the playlists.
4. Touch the playlist to be opened.
5. Touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll the playlist.

   Touch the track to be played.

Searching for a song via the artists list

1. Touch **Browse**.
2. Touch **Artists**.

   The list of artists is displayed.
3. Touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll the artists list.

   To move to another point in the artists list:

   A. Touch **ABC**.

      A keyboard is displayed.

   B. Touch a letter, **A**, **B**, **C** etc.

      Searching... is displayed.

      The artists list is displayed from that point of the alphabet.
4. Touch the artist name.

   The list of albums is displayed.
5. Touch the album name to be played.
6. Touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll the list of songs.

   Touch the song to be played.

Searching for a song via the albums list

1. Touch **Browse**.
2. Touch **Albums**.

   The list of albums is displayed.
3. Touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll the list of albums.

   To move to another point in the albums list:

   A. Touch **ABC**.

      A keyboard is displayed.

   B. Touch a letter, **A**, **B**, **C** etc.

      Searching... is displayed.

      The albums list is displayed from that point of the alphabet.
4. Touch the album name to be played.
5. To play the first song:

   Touch the first song on the screen, or touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll the list of songs.

   Touch the song to be played.

Searching for a song via the songs list

1. Touch **Browse**.
2. Touch **Songs**.

   The list of songs is displayed.

3. Touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll the songs list.

   To move to another point in the songs list:

   A. Touch **ABC**.

      A keyboard is displayed.

   B. Touch a letter, **A**, **B**, **C** etc.

      Searching... is displayed.

      The songs list is displayed from that point of the alphabet.

4. Touch the song to be played.

Searching for a song via the genres list

1. Touch **Browse**.
2. Touch **Genres**.

   The list of genres is displayed.

3. Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll the genres list.

   To move to another point in the genres list:

   A. Touch **ABC**.

      A keyboard is displayed.

   B. Touch a letter, **A**, **B**, **C** etc.

      Searching... is displayed.

      The genres list is displayed from that point of the alphabet.

4. Touch the genre to be played.
5. Touch the artists name to be played.
6. Touch the album name to be played.
7. To play the first song:

   Touch the first song on the screen, or touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** (J) to scroll the list and touch the song to be played.

Playing songs in random order

Songs on the iPod® are played in random order.

To switch random play on or off:

1. Touch **Random** on the iPod tab.

   Random is displayed.

Playing a song in repeat mode

To switch between repeat all tracks and repeat current track:

1. Touch **Repeat** on the iPod tab.

   Rpt is displayed. All tracks are repeated.

   Rpt trk is displayed. The current track is repeated.

Pausing/playing the iPod®

1. Touch **II** to pause the iPod®.
2. Touch ▶ to play the iPod®.

Bluetooth Audio

General information

Music may be played from the Bluetooth® (BT) device.

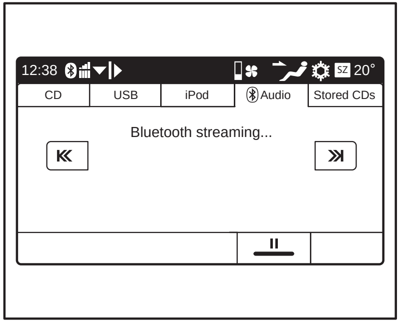
Before uploading music, the Bluetooth® device must be paired with the infotainment system. See *Bluetooth on page 7-71*.

Note:

- Bluetooth® streaming is not available when an iPod® is connected to the USB port.
- Bluetooth® streaming may need to be reselected as the current source when starting the vehicle.

Operation

Playing/pausing a song



Bluetooth streaming...

1. Press **Media** (N) or **Audio** on the steering wheel remote controls to select BT audio.

   The ✱ **Audio** tab is displayed, showing that **Bluetooth streaming...** has started.

Note: Pressing **Audio** on the steering wheel remote controls scrolls through the media sources.

2. When complete, the first track will play automatically.
3. Touch **II** to pause the song.
4. Touch ▶ to continue playing the song.

Go to the next track

1. Press or touch ⏭ to go to the next track.

Replay the current track

1. Press or touch ⏮ to replay the current track.

Go to the previous track

1. Press or touch ⏮ twice within 5 seconds to select and play the previous track.

   Pressing or touching ⏮ within 5 seconds of the start of a track will select and play the previous track.

Note: Not all devices will support the track selection controls ⏮ and ⏭.

Rear Seat Infotainment

Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System

The vehicle may have RSE.

CD/DVD player

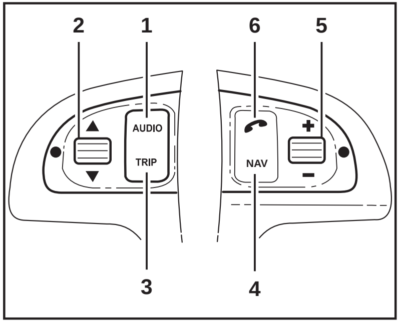
Important information

- Do not apply any form of cleaning solution to the CD/DVD player display, as this may void the warranty.
- Do not insert CDs or DVDs that have labels attached.
- Do not insert any objects other than CDs or DVDs into the CD/DVD player, as this may void the warranty.

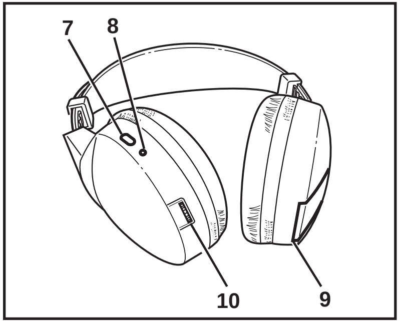
Maintenance

- Wipe the CD/DVD unit with a clean, dry cloth.
- Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or any cleaning fluid on the unit.
- Excessively scratched or dirty/dusty DVDs or CDs may not play correctly.

Steering wheel remote controls (all units)

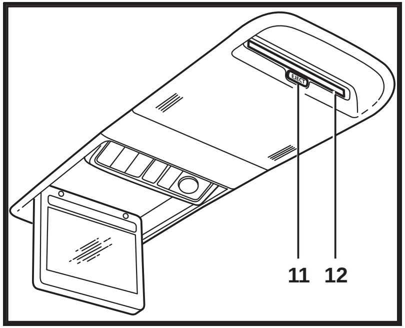


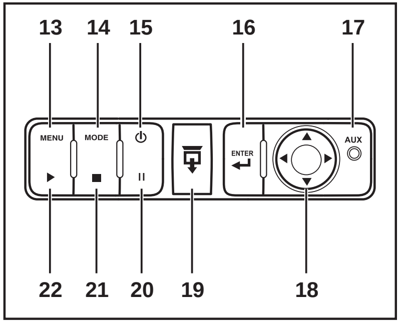
Infrared headphones



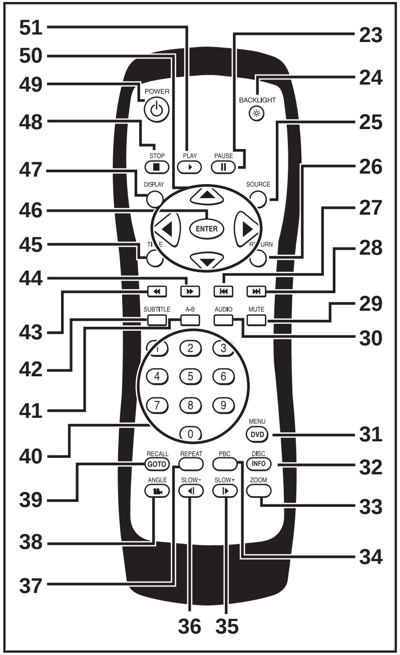
DVD player controls

The vehicle may have a DVD player and the following controls.




13
14
15
16
17
MENU
MODE
ENTER
AUX
22
21
20
19
18

DVD remote controls


51
50
49
48
47
46
45
44
43
42
41
40
39
38
37
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
36
35
POWER
BACKLIGHT
STOP
PLAY
PAUSE
DISPLAY
SOURCE
ENTER
TITLE
RETURN
SUBTITLE
A-B
AUDIO
MUTE
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
MENU
DVD
RECALL
GOTO
REPEAT
PBC
DISC
INFO
ANGLE
SLOW-
SLOW+
ZOOM

Audio controls

See *Overview on page 7-4*.

Steering wheel remote controls

1. Audio button
2. Enter button and scroll wheel
3. Trip button
4. Navigation button
5. Volume/mute
6. Bluetooth® phone

Infrared headphones

7. On/off button
8. Power indicator light
9. Battery cover
10. Volume control dial

DVD player controls

11. Eject button
12. CD slot
13. To enter the DVD menu
14. To select the DVD/AUX source
15. DVD power on/off button

16. Enter button
17. Audio/video input socket
18. DVD multifunction directional control
19. Screen release button
20. DVD pause button
21. DVD stop button
22. DVD play button

DVD remote controls

23. DVD pause button
24. DVD remote control illumination button
25. DVD/AUX source select button
26. Return menu button
27. Previous track/chapter button
28. Next track/chapter button
29. Audio mute button
30. DVD audio select button
31. DVD main menu button
32. DVD information button
33. DVD zoom select button
34. VCD PBC on/off button
35. Slow forward button
36. Slow reverse button
37. Repeat button
38. DVD angle select button
39. GOTO button
40. Numeric keypad
41. A-B repeat select button
42. DVD subtitle select button
43. Fast reverse button
44. Fast forward button
45. DVD title menu button
46. Menu enter/select button
47. Display menu button
48. DVD stop button
49. DVD power on/off button
50. Menu navigation buttons
51. DVD play button

Infrared headphones

1. Switch on using the on/off button (7) on the ear speaker.

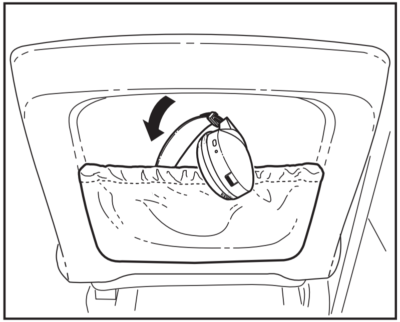
   The red power indicator (8) lights up.
2. Place the headphones on your head with the red power indicator facing to the rear.
3. Adjust the volume using the volume control (10) on the ear speaker.

Performance may be affected by:

- Direct sunlight.
- Very bright light.
- Objects blocking the line of sight between the screen and the headphones.
- Low battery.

If the indicator does not light up or poor sound quality is experienced, the batteries may need replacing. See “Battery replacement” later in this section.

If the headphones do not receive a signal for about 20 seconds, they will switch off automatically.



To protect the headphones, store in the front seatback pockets.

DVD player

The Digital Versatile Disc (DVD) player is located in the roof pod.

The DVD player can be controlled by the buttons on the DVD player, by the buttons on the DVD remote control, or by the touch screen.

The DVD control panel contains the socket for the 3.5 mm type AV aux-in plug.

> **⚠ WARNING**
>
> The DVD player is for passengers only. The driver cannot safely view the video screen while driving and should not try to do so.

> **⚠ CAUTION**
>
> Prolonged use of the DVD system while the engine is not running can drain the vehicle battery and may prevent the engine from starting.

Rear video screen

The video screen is located on the DVD player in the roof pod.

The video screen contains the infrared receiver for the DVD remote control and the infrared transmitter for the wireless headphones.

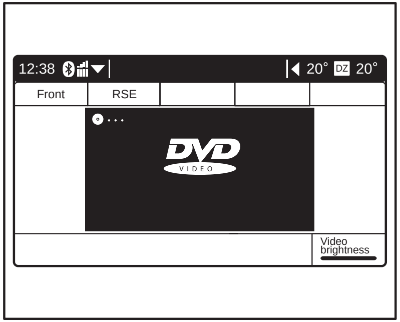
1. To lower the video screen, press ⍗ (19) to release, then pull down.
2. To replace, push up until it locks into place.

Maintenance

Avoid touching the rear video screen, as damage may occur.

To clean the rear video screen, wipe with a soft cloth dampened with water.

Front infotainment screen



The screen will only display the selected DVD when the vehicle speed is below 3 km/h.

Touch the screen to minimise or maximise the DVD screen.

DVD remote control

Aim the DVD remote control at the video screen while pressing the required button.

Performance may be affected by:

- Direct sunlight.
- Very bright light.
- Objects blocking the line of sight.
- Low battery.

To light up all buttons on the DVD remote control, press ☼ (24).

The light turns off after a short period of time.

Battery replacement

To change the batteries in the DVD remote control or the headphones:

1. Remove the battery door located on the back of the DVD remote control or the speaker of the headphones.
2. Replace the two AAA batteries.
3. Close the battery door securely.

Do not store the DVD remote control or the headphones where they are exposed to heat or direct sunlight. If damage occurs it may void the warranty.

If the DVD remote control or the headphones are to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

Playable disc types

Types of discs that can be played:

- DVD video, DVD-R/RW
- Video CD (VCD)
- SVCD
- CD-DA, CD-R, CD-RW

  Playback cannot be guaranteed because of the disc characteristics or recording conditions.
- MP3
- JPEG

Note:

- The maximum number of files per disc (MP3, JPEG, or a mix of both) is 1000.
- The maximum number of folders per disc is 99.

- The maximum number of subfolders is 10.

  If these limits are exceeded, the MP3 or JPEG may not play.

The DVD player will only play DVDs of the appropriate DVD zone/region code for the country where the vehicle was sold.

The DVD zone/region code is printed on the jacket of most DVDs.

Code	Zone/region
1	United States, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, South Africa and Middle East (including Egypt)
3	South East Asia and East Asia (including Hong Kong)
4	Australia, New Zealand, Pacific Islands, Central America, Mexico, South America and the Caribbean
5	Eastern Europe (former Soviet Union), Indian subcontinent, Africa, North Korea and Mongolia
6	China

Playing a video DVD

Loading a DVD

Load the DVD into the DVD load/remove slot (12), with the label facing upwards, until the mechanism pulls it inside.

While the disc is loading, a disc-rotating animation will appear in the top left corner of the video screen.

Ejecting a DVD

To remove, press **EJECT** (11).

Note: If a disc is ejected from the player but is not removed, the DVD player will reload the disc within 10 to 15 seconds.

The disc will then be stored in the DVD player.

The DVD player will not resume playing this disc automatically if it is in auxiliary mode.

Turning the rear screen on

Press ⏻ (15) on the DVD player controls or ⏻ (49) on the DVD remote control.

The screen always returns to the off state after the ignition is switched off and the audio system shuts down.

The screen needs to be switched on again to resume operation.

Listening through speakers

1. Turn the audio system on by pressing ⏻ (G) on the audio system.
2. Select the DVD mode by pressing **AUX** (M) and touching **RSE**, or by pressing **AUDIO** (1) on the steering wheel remote controls until the DVD mode is selected.

Listening through headphones

When the screen is on, the infrared headphone signal is transmitted. See “Infrared headphones” earlier in this section.

Playing a DVD

Press ▶ (22) on the DVD player controls or ▶ (51) on the DVD remote control.

Some DVDs will not allow you to fast forward or skip the copyright or previews.

Some DVDs will begin playing after the previews have finished. If the DVD does not begin playing the main title, refer to the on-screen instructions, as the DVD may be displaying its main title menu.

Stopping DVD playback

Press ■ (21) on the DVD player controls, or press and release ■ (48) on the DVD remote control.

Resume playback

Press ▶ (22) on the DVD player controls or ▶ (51) on the DVD remote control.

As long as the DVD disc has not been ejected and ■ (48) on the DVD remote control has not been pressed twice, the movie will resume playing from where it was last stopped.

If the disc has been ejected, or if ■ (48) has been pressed twice, the disc will resume playing at the beginning.

Pausing a DVD

Press ❙❙ (20) on the DVD player controls or ❙❙ (23) on the DVD remote control.

To continue playing, press ❙❙ (20) again or ▶ (51) on the DVD remote control.

Chapter/track/time selection

While an audio CD is composed of tracks and a VCD disc is composed of chapters, a DVD is composed of titles.

Each title may be subdivided into chapters.

Select a desired chapter or time on a DVD by:

1. Pressing **GOTO** (39) on the DVD remote control, once for chapter/track selection.
2. Pressing **GOTO** (39) again for time selection.

   The video screen will show the selection mode accordingly.
3. During chapter/track selection, use the numeric keypad (40) on the DVD remote control to enter the desired chapter/track number.
4. Confirm by pressing **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control.

5. During time selection, use the numeric keypad (40) on the DVD remote control to enter the desired time.
6. Confirm by pressing **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control.

Note:

- To clear the number, press **GOTO** (39) on the DVD remote control once again.
- If the chapter/track number or the time keyed in exceeds the disc's limit, an invalid symbol ✋ will appear on the video screen.

  The selection will not be executed.
- For CD/VCDs, time selection functions are only available when **GOTO** (39) is pressed on the DVD remote control.

  Press the numeric keypad (40) on the DVD remote control to go to the desired chapter/track selection.

Previous/next

To skip to the previous or the next chapter/track:

1. Press ⏮ (27) or ⏭ (28) on the DVD remote control.
2. Press ▼ or ▲ (18) on the DVD player controls.

Note: Pressing ▲ (18) at the last track/chapter of the disc will stop the DVD playback and return to the DVD menu.

Fast forward/fast reverse

To move rapidly backwards or forwards within the current chapter:

1. Press ⏪ (43) or ⏩ (44) on the DVD remote control, or press ◄ or ► (18) on the DVD player controls.

   Pressing the same buttons repeatedly will increase the speed in the order of 2x > 4x > 8x > 16x > back to normal speed.
2. To resume playback at normal speed, press the same button repeatedly until playback speed returns to normal, or press ► (22) on the DVD player controls or ► (51) on the DVD remote control.

Note: After fast forwarding to the end of the current chapter, the next chapter will playback at the normal speed.

After fast reversing to the beginning of the current chapter, the current chapter will playback at the normal speed.

Slow forward/slow reverse

To move slowly backwards or forwards within the current chapter:

1. Press ◄I (36) or I► (35) on the DVD remote control.

   Pressing the same button repeatedly will reduce the speed in the order of 1/8x > 1/4x > 1/2x > back to normal speed.

2. To resume playback at normal speed, press ◀I (36) or I▶ (35) repeatedly until playback speed returns to normal, or press ▶ (22) on the DVD player controls or ▶ (51) on the DVD remote control.

Note: The slow reverse function is available in DVD mode only, whereas slow forward is available in both DVD and VCD modes.

Zoom the VCD/DVD playback picture

This function is only available in DVD and VCD playback modes.

To select different zoom ratios, press **ZOOM** (33) on the DVD remote control once or several times.

The zoom ratio will change in the order of 1.5x > 2x > 3x > back to normal.

A-B playback

To set two points of a track/chapter for repeating playback:

1. Pressing **A-B** (41) on the DVD remote control for the first time will set the first point.
2. Pressing **A-B** (41) again will set the second point of the movie.
3. After setting points A and B, the movie will play repeatedly between points A and B.
4. To cancel this function and return the movie to normal operation, press **A-B** (41) again.
5. Press **RETURN** (26) on the DVD remote control to cancel the first point if it was wrongly set.

   However, pressing **RETURN** (26) while A-B mode is running will not cancel the function.

Repeat

To repeat CD/VCD/DVD/MP3 playback, press **REPEAT** (37) on the DVD remote control once or as many times as required to activate repeat mode.

VCD (PBC off) or Audio CD

Press REPEAT	Mode/display	Description
For the 1st time	REPEAT ONE	Repeat the current chapter
For the 2nd time	REPEAT ALL	Repeat this disc
For the 3rd time	REPEAT OFF	To switch off this function

DVD

Press REPEAT	Mode/display	Description
For the 1st time	CHAPTER REPEAT ON	Repeat the current chapter
For the 2nd time	TITLE REPEAT ON	Repeat the current title
For the 3rd time	REPEAT OFF	To switch off this function

MP3

Press REPEAT	Mode/display	Description
For the 1st time	REPEAT ONE	Repeat the current track/file
For the 2nd time	FOLDER REPEAT	Repeat all tracks/files of the current folder
For the 3rd time	DISC	To play all tracks/files in this disc once then stop

MP3 (cont'd)

Press REPEAT	Mode/display	Description
For the 4th time	DISC REPEAT	Repeat all tracks/files in this disc
For the 5th time	DISC SCAN	To play the first 10 seconds of all tracks/files in the disc
For the 6th time	SINGLE	To play the current track/file once then stop
For the 7th time	REPEAT OFF	To switch off repeat function

Playback Control (PBC) on/off in VCD playback

This function is only available during playback of a VCD 2.0 formatted disc.

1. To switch PBC on or off, press **PBC** (34) on the DVD remote control.

   When PBC is on, the VCD will not execute play mode immediately.

2. Press ► (22) on the DVD player controls or ► (51) on the DVD remote control, or **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control to play the DVD disc.
3. Alternatively, press the numeric buttons (40) on the DVD remote control followed by **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control to play the desired chapter.
4. When PBC is on and the disc is playing, press **DVD** (31) on the DVD remote control to go to the catalogue list menu.
5. When PBC is off you can immediately execute play mode, but it will play one chapter after another in ascending order.

   No chapter selection is allowed.

Note: This function is VCD dependent.

MP3 menu in MP3 playback

This MP3 menu is only available while playing an MP3 disc.

The MP3 menu shows the folders list on the left side and the files and/or folders list on the right side.

To select a folder or a file:

1. Use the menu navigation buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to highlight the desired folder or files in the smart menu.

   The menu can also be navigated using the menu navigation buttons (18) on the DVD player controls.

2. Confirm the selection by pressing **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control.
3. You may select a folder or file directly by pressing the numeric button (40) on the DVD remote control corresponding to the number displayed beside the folder or file.
4. During MP3 stop mode, press ⏮ (27) or ⏭ (28) on the DVD remote control to view the previous or next 8 items.
5. During MP3 playback, press ⏮ (27) or ⏭ (28) on the DVD remote control to play the previous or next MP3 file.

Error messages from the DVD player

In some cases the DVD player may have trouble playing, loading or ejecting DVDs.

If this happens, one of the following error messages may be displayed on the video screen:

- **Disc Error**: A disc is inserted upside down, the disc cannot be read, the disc format is not compatible with the DVD player, the DVD player cannot play the disc, or the disc is severely damaged.
- **Load/Eject Error**: The disc is not properly loaded or ejected.
- **Region Code Error**: The region code of the DVD is not compatible with the DVD player.
- **No Disc**: ▶ was pressed and no disc is in the player.
- **SECURITY ERROR**: Displays if the user tries to switch on the security locked DVD player. Contact a Holden Dealer.
- **DTS NOT SUPPORT**: Displays if the DTS audio mode is selected.

  Select another audio mode.

On-screen menus

The system provides several on-screen menus which may be used to select preferences or make adjustments.

The on-screen display will automatically time out after a few seconds.

Navigation and adjustment of preferences in these menus can be done by:

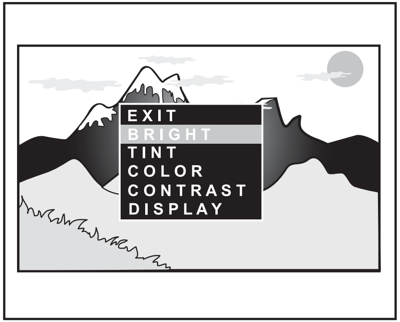
- Using the navigation buttons (50) and **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control.
- Using the navigation buttons (18) and **ENTER** (16) on the DVD player controls.

Display menu

The display menu can be used to modify various video screen display characteristics such as brightness, tint, colour and contrast.

To access the display menu:

1. Press **DISPLAY** (47) on the DVD remote control or press **MENU** (13) on the DVD player controls.



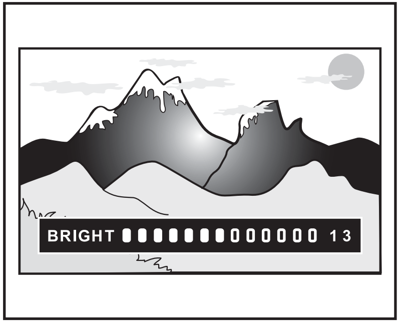
2. Press **ENTER** (16) on the DVD player controls to select display settings.

   The display will appear on the video screen once the display settings are selected.

To adjust brightness

To adjust the brightness of the rear screen:

1. Use the menu navigation buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to highlight **BRIGHT** in the display menu.



2. Press **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control. The display will appear on the video screen.
3. Press the left or right direction buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to adjust the brightness of the video screen.

   Pressing the right button increases the brightness. Pressing the left button decreases the brightness.

   The video screen brightness will adjust as the buttons are pressed.
4. When the desired brightness is achieved, press **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control or allow the on-screen display to time out.

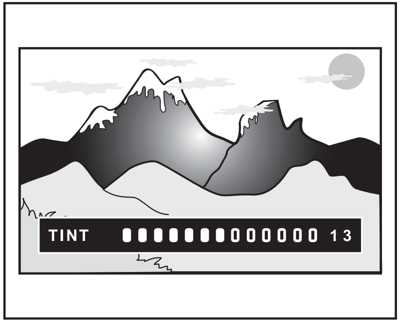
To adjust the brightness of the front infotainment screen:

1. Touch the **RSE** tab.
2. Touch **Video brightness**.
3. Touch **–** or **+** to adjust.

To adjust tint

To adjust the tint (red or green bias) of the screen:

1. Use the menu navigation buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to highlight **TINT** in the display menu.



2. Press **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control.

   The display will appear on the video screen.

3. Press the left or right direction buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to adjust the tint of the video screen.

   Pressing the right button increases the tint (decreases the green bias). Pressing the left button decreases the tint (increases the green bias).

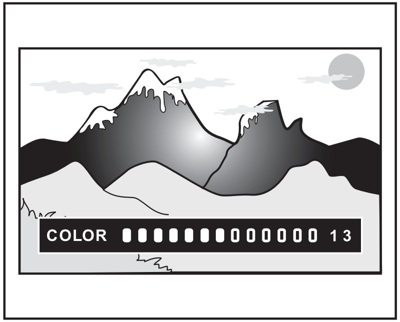
   The video screen tint will adjust as the buttons are pressed.

4. When the desired tint is achieved, press **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control, or allow the on-screen display to time out.

To adjust colour

To adjust the colour of the screen:

1. Use the menu navigation buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to highlight **COLOR** in the display menu.



2. Press **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control.

   The display will appear on the video screen.

3. Press the left or right direction buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to adjust the colour of the video screen.

   Pressing the right button increases the colour (red). Pressing the left button decreases the colour.

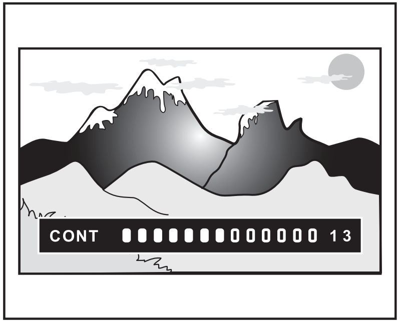
   The video screen colour will adjust as the buttons are pressed.

4. When the desired colour is achieved, press **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control or allow the on-screen display to time out.

To adjust contrast

To adjust the contrast of the screen:

1. Use the menu navigation buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to highlight **CONT** in the display menu.



2. Press **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control.

   The display will appear on the video screen.

3. Press the left or right direction buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to adjust the contrast of the video screen.

   Pressing the right button increases the contrast. Pressing the left button decreases the contrast.

   The video screen contrast will adjust as the buttons are pressed.

4. When the desired contrast is achieved, press **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control or allow the on-screen display to time out.

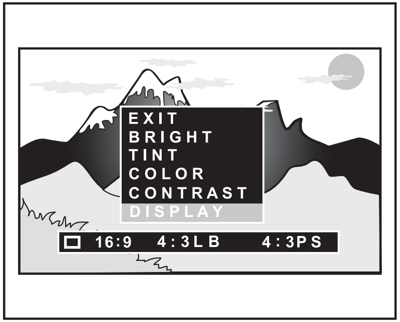
To adjust display mode

DVD movies may be recorded in various formats (e.g. 16:9, 4:3 L/B, 4:3 P/S).

The video display may be adjusted to achieve the preferred appearance.

To adjust the display mode of the screen:

1. Use the menu navigation buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to highlight **DISPLAY** in the display menu.



2. Press **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control.

   The display will appear on the video screen.

3. Press the left or right direction buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to adjust the display mode of the video screen.
4. Scroll through the three available display mode options of 16:9, 4:3 L/B or 4:3 P/S.

   The video screen display mode will adjust as the buttons are pressed.
5. When the desired display mode is selected, press **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control or allow the on-screen display to time out.

DVD information

Information on the playing disc (DVD, CD, MP3 or VCD) may be viewed on the video screen by pressing **INFO** (32) on the DVD remote control.

To clear the track/chapter information from the video screen, press **INFO** (32) on the DVD remote control repeatedly until the information disappears from video screen.

Advanced DVD video features

Invalid operation icon

Some functions will not be available with some DVDs or at certain times during playback.

If a button is pressed for a function that is not supported by the DVD, the invalid symbol ✋ will be displayed on the video screen.

DVD title menu

Some DVDs may contain more than one title and may have a title menu listing all the titles on the disc.

In this case, the title menu may be viewed on the video screen by pressing **TITLE** (45) on the DVD remote control.

If the symbol ✋ appears on the video screen after pressing the TITLE button, the disc does not have a title menu.

DVD menu

DVDs generally have their own menus which show the disc contents, language and subtitle options, artist information and additional features.

To access the DVD menu:

1. Press **DVD** (31) on the DVD remote control.

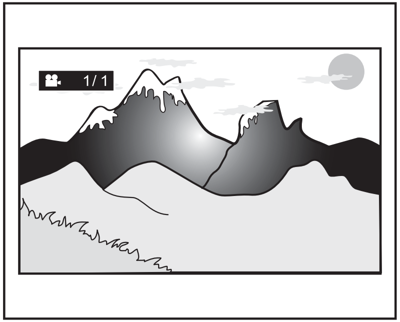
   The DVD menu will appear on the video screen.
2. Use the menu navigation buttons (50) on the DVD remote control to highlight a desired item.
3. Press **ENTER** (46) on the DVD remote control to select the item.
4. To exit the current menu and return to the previous screen, press **RETURN** (26) on the DVD remote control again.
5. Alternatively, to access the DVD menu using the DVD player controls, press **MENU** (13) and press ▼ (18) to highlight the disc menu.

6. Press **ENTER** (16) on the DVD player controls.
7. Use the navigation buttons (18) on the DVD player controls to highlight a desired item.
8. Press **ENTER** (16) to select the item.

   If the symbol ✋ appears on the video screen after pressing the DVD **MENU** button, the disc does not have a DVD menu.

Selecting a scene angle from the DVD video

A variety of scene angles may be selected if the DVD contains multi-angle scenes, where multiple cameras were used to shoot the same scene from different angles.



To select a scene angle:

1. Press 🎥 (38) on the DVD remote control.

   The display will appear on the video screen.

2. Press 🎥 (38) on the DVD remote control repeatedly until the desired angle is selected.

   Each press of 🎥 (38) will advance the angle number.

   The on-screen display will automatically time out after a few seconds.

Subtitle selection

DVDs can contain subtitle options. The subtitles may be switched on or off and may be viewed in various languages.

To change the subtitle language while a DVD is playing:

1. Press **SUBTITLE** (42) on the DVD remote control.
2. Press **SUBTITLE** (42) repeatedly until the desired subtitle language is selected.

   Each press of the **SUBTITLE** (42) button will advance the subtitle number.

   The on-screen display will automatically time out after a few seconds.

3. Subtitles may be turned off by pressing **SUBTITLE** (42) repeatedly until **SUBTITLE OFF** appears on the video screen.

Audio language selection

DVDs may contain the audio in various languages.

To change the audio language while a DVD is playing:

1. Press **AUDIO** (30) on the DVD remote control.

   DTS audio mode is not supported in this DVD player. You will not hear any audio when DTS audio mode is selected.

2. Press **AUDIO** (30) repeatedly until the desired audio language is selected.

   Each press of **AUDIO** (30) will advance the audio language number.

   The on-screen display will automatically time out after a few seconds.

RSE auxiliary devices

General information

The 3.5 mm AUX Audio/Video (AV) input socket (17) is located in the DVD player controls. It allows you to connect audio and video from an auxiliary device such as a camcorder or a video game unit to the DVD player, just as you would to a standard television.

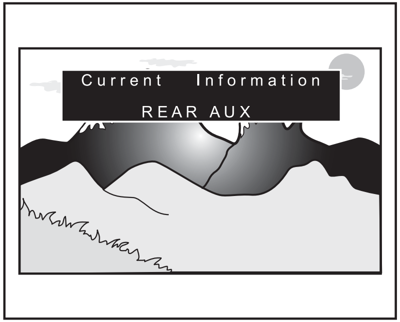
3.5 mm type AV cables are needed to connect the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input socket.

Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper connection of your auxiliary device.

Connecting auxiliary devices

To use the AUX AV input socket on the DVD player:

1. Connect an external auxiliary device to the 3.5 mm AUX AV input socket (17) and switch both the auxiliary device and the DVD player power on.



2. If the DVD player was previously in the DVD player mode, press **MODE** (14) on the DVD player controls or **SOURCE** (25) on the DVD remote control.

   The display will appear on the video screen.

3. Pressing **MODE** (14) on the DVD player controls will toggle between the auxiliary device and the DVD player.

Video format in the auxiliary mode

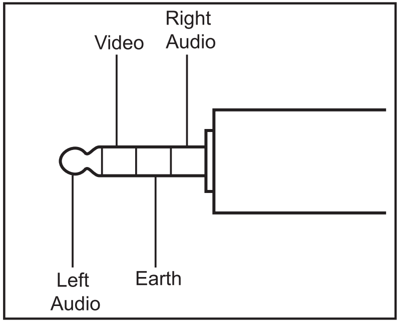
The auxiliary input video format is preset to NTSC.

In some cases the video format may be in the PAL system.

The DVD player will detect the video format and set the video screen automatically.

Note:

- Several different types of auxiliary plugs exist on external devices.
- If you have problems connecting audio and displaying video, the plug on the external source may be incompatible with the vehicle's AUX input socket.



- Use a plug of the type shown.

Navigation

Navigation System Overview

The vehicle may have navigation.

The navigation system:

- Allows a route to be planned
- Provides map guidance
- Provides voice prompts during driving

⚠ WARNING

Information in the system may not always be up-to-date.

Road conditions, such as detours and road construction works, change frequently.

Traffic regulations have priority over any instructions from the navigation system. Always follow posted road signs, speed limits and road restrictions.

General information

Before using the navigation system, read this section thoroughly.

- Become familiar with the system controls and operation.
- Follow the warnings and cautions to avoid risk of injury to yourself and others and damage to property.
- If an inoperable function is selected, a message may be displayed indicating that the function is not available.
- Navigation guidance is displayed on the infotainment screen and may also be displayed on the instrument panel. See Display navigation under *Navigation Menu on page 7-59*.
- The navigation maps are stored on an SD card within the navigation system.

  To check for the availability of updated maps, contact a Holden Dealer.
- To scroll the map view, touch a position on the map to centre the view.
- Pressing NAV on the steering wheel remote controls will display:

  The navigation page when not in guidance mode.

  The map when in guidance mode.
- Additional route information may be transmitted by voice guidance.

⚠ DANGER

Giving prolonged attention to navigation tasks while driving will greatly increase the risk of a collision that may cause personal injury or death.

Road safety has absolute priority!

(Continued)

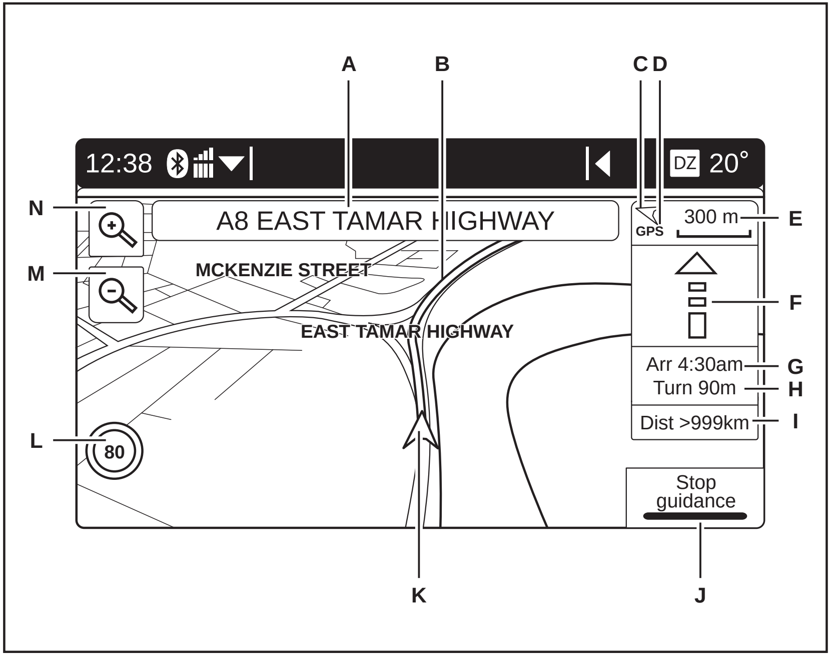
DANGER (Continued)

Only operate this system if road and traffic conditions allow you to do so.

The driver's full attention is always required while driving.

Use voice guidance directions whenever possible.

Overview


A
B
C
D
12:38
DZ 20°
N
M
L
E
F
G
H
I
K
J
A8 EAST TAMAR HIGHWAY
MCKENZIE STREET
EAST TAMAR HIGHWAY
GPS
300 m
Arr 4:30am
Turn 90m
Dist >999km
80
Stop guidance

A. Current road

B. Planned route

C. Compass

D. GPS reception

E. Selected map scale

F. Navigation prompt

G. Estimated arrival time

H. Distance to turn/instruction

I. Distance to destination

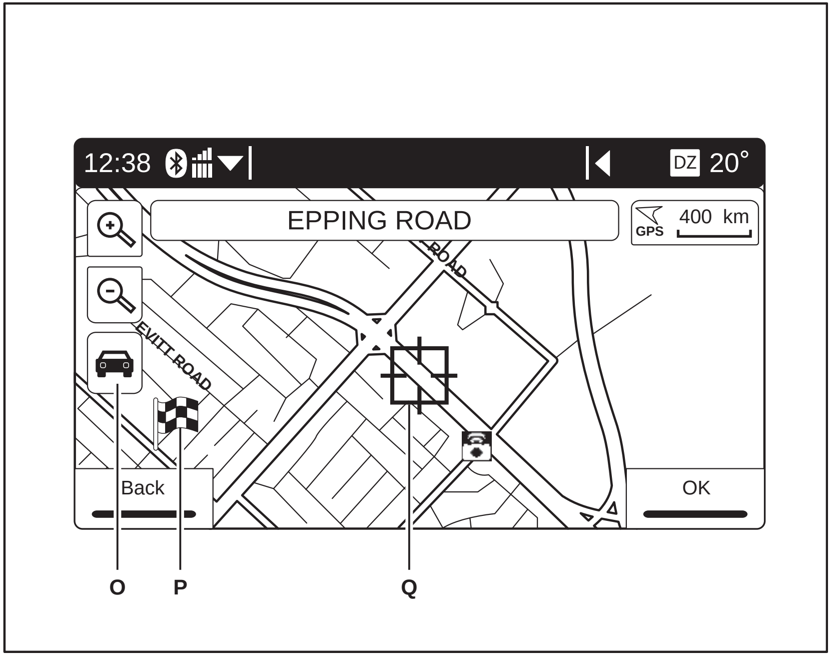
J. Stop guidance

K. Current vehicle position and direction

L. Road speed limit

M. Zoom out

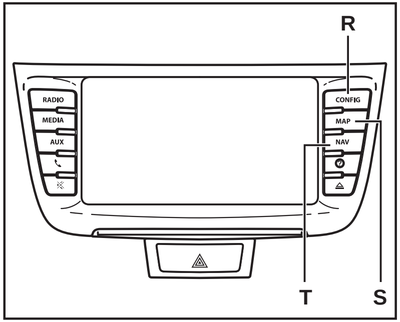
N. Zoom in


12:38
DZ 20°
EPPING ROAD
GPS
400 km
ROAD
EVITT ROAD
Back
OK
O
P
Q

O. Show current location

P. Destination flag

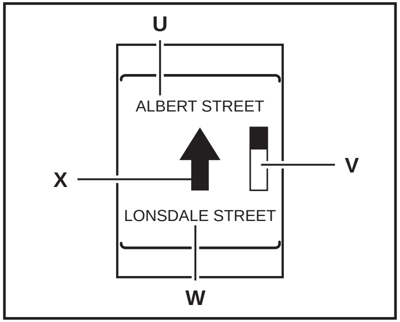
Q. Destination on the map


R
RADIO
MEDIA
AUX
CONFIG
MAP
NAV
T
S

R. Configuration menu button

S. Display map view

T. Navigation settings


U
ALBERT STREET
X
V
LONSDALE STREET
W

U. Next street name or distance counter

V. Distance indicator bar

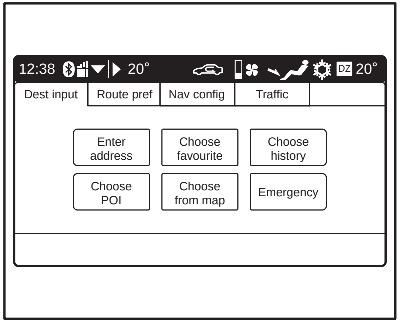
W. Current street name

X. Direction symbol

Getting Started

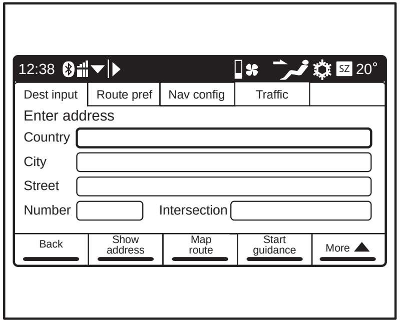
Information may be entered into the navigation system using the on-screen keyboard or by selecting a point on a map.

Destination address


12:38
20°
DZ 20°
Dest input
Route pref
Nav config
Traffic
Enter address
Choose favourite
Choose history
Choose POI
Choose from map
Emergency

To enter a destination address:

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.


12:38
SZ 20°
Dest input
Route pref
Nav config
Traffic
Enter address
Country
City
Street
Number
Intersection
Back
Show address
Map route
Start guidance
More

3. Touch **Enter address**.
4. Touch **Country** input box.

   Enter the country’s name or its first letter(s).

   Touch **List** to select the country from the list.

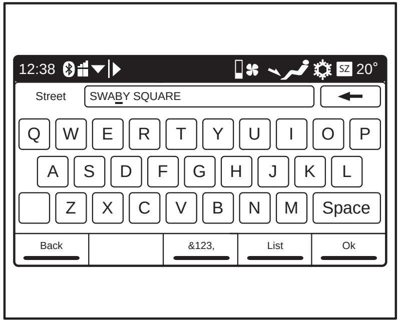
   Touch **OK** to enter.
5. Touch **City** input box.

   Enter the name of the city or its first letter(s).

   Touch **List** to select the city from a list.

   Touch **OK** to enter.

Note: Enter a suburb name or a city name to cover a larger search area.



Street: SWABY SQUARE

6. Touch **Street** input box.

   Enter the name of the street or its first letter(s).

   Touch **List** to select the street from a list.

   Touch **OK** to enter.

7. Touch **Number** input box.

   Enter the street number if required.

   Touch **OK** to enter.

8. Touch **Intersection** input box.

   Enter the name of the street or its first letter(s) .

   Touch **List** to select the street from a list.

   Touch **OK** to enter.

9. Touch **Start guidance** to calculate and return to the map screen. The system is ready for departure.

   Alternatively, touch **Map route** to show the route on the map screen, without guidance.

Simulating a trip

Simulate a trip along an entered route from the current position to the final destination.

The calculated route is highlighted on the map.

Note: This function is only available when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Enter the destination by following Steps 1 to 8 below *Getting Started on page 7-49*.
2. Touch **More**.
3. Touch **Simulate trip**.
4. Touch **Current position**. Simulation begins.

   Alternatively, touch **Choose address**.

   Enter the start address.

   Alternatively, touch **Cancel** to close the pop-up.

5. Touch **OK**.

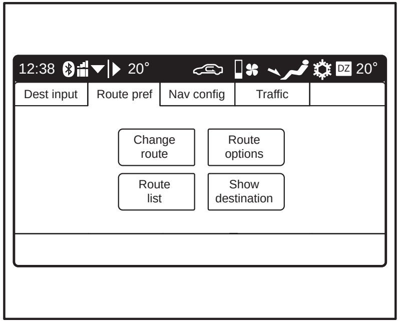
   A pop-up is displayed.

   Simulation begins.

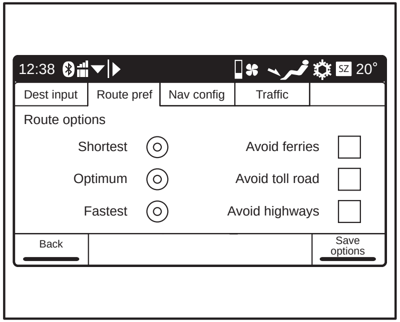
6. Touch **Stop guidance** to cancel simulation.

Plan Route

Setting route options


12:38
20°
DZ
20°
Dest input
Route pref
Nav config
Traffic
Change route
Route options
Route list
Show destination

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Route pref** tab.


12:38
SZ
20°
Dest input
Route pref
Nav config
Traffic
Route options
Shortest
Optimum
Fastest
Avoid ferries
Avoid toll road
Avoid highways
Back
Save options

3. Touch **Route options**.

   Select from:

   - **Shortest**: (the route is calculated based on the shortest distance).
   - **Optimum**: (the route is calculated based on estimated travel distance and estimated travel time with a balance of 50% travel distance and 50% travel time).
   - **Fastest**: (the route is calculated based on the fastest route in time).

     The option selected is indicated by ⦿.

4. Select what to avoid:

   - **Avoid ferries**
   - **Avoid toll roads**
   - **Avoid highways**

     The option selected is indicated by ✓.

5. Touch **Save options**.

   The route will be recalculated and the map screen displayed.

   Alternatively, touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Viewing the route list

View details of the current journey plan in a list view.

This includes the address of the starting point, the final destination, and all the streets/roads along the way.

If stages are added, they are also included in the list view.

When navigation is active and any of the streets have been passed, they will be removed from the list.

Note: This option is only available when a Destination is selected.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Route pref** tab.
3. Touch **Route list**.
4. Touch the route option to be viewed in detail:
   - Distance to this point
   - Length
   - City

   Touch ▼ or ▲ to select next or previous page if available.
5. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Viewing destination

View the destination selected, on the map.

Note: This option is only available in Guidance mode and with the route already calculated.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Route pref** tab.
3. Touch **Show destination**.

   The map with the destination is shown.

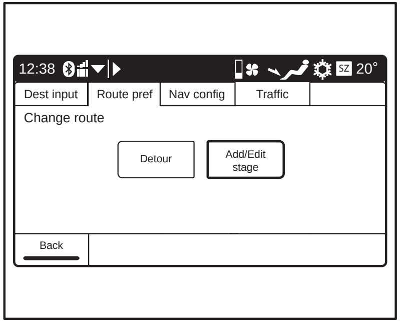
Changing selected route

Insert a stage into an existing route or journey plan.

- Add up to three stages.
- During active guidance, each stage entered will be treated as a new address before the final destination.
- With a journey plan, a stage is integrated into the route and indicated as an intermediate stage.
- 🏁 is displayed on the map.

Adding/editing/re-ordering stages

Add to a journey, edit an existing stage, or re-order entered stages.



1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Route pref** tab.
3. Touch **Change route**.
4. Touch **Add/Edit stage**.
5. Touch **Add**.

   Dest input tab is displayed.
6. Touch the option you would like to select as the stage.

   Touch **OK** to enter.

7. To change the order of the entered stages, touch **Reorder Stage**.
8. To reposition added stages, touch the stage to be moved.
9. Touch either **Move up** or **Move down** (depending on the stage's position).
10. Touch **Back**.
11. Touch **Save route**.

    The selected route is recalculated.

    Guidance is started and the navigation screen with the calculated route is shown.
12. To cancel guidance touch **Stop guidance**.

Deleting a stage

Delete a stage from an existing route or journey plan.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Route pref** tab.
3. Touch **Change route**.
4. Touch **Add/Edit stage**.
5. Touch **Delete stage**.

   Touch the stage to be deleted from the list.
6. Confirm the selection.

   Touch **OK** to delete the selected address or touch **Cancel**.
7. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.
8. Touch **Save route** to continue guidance.

Detour

Set a distance to detour from the current route.

The system automatically calculates a new route based on the distance to detour, to avoid the current road for the selected distance.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Route pref** tab.
3. Touch **Change route**.
4. Touch **Detour**.
5. Touch the distance (selected distance is marked by *).

   The detour will be calculated.
6. Press **Map** to return to map view and continue guidance.

To clear detours:

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Route pref** tab.
3. Touch **Change route**.
4. Touch **Detour**.
5. Touch **Clear detours** to clear all settings.
6. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.
7. Touch **Map** to return to map view and continue guidance.

Enter Destination

Entering an address by its geographical co-ordinates

Enter an address by latitude and longitude.

The geographical coordinates have to be entered in the corresponding fields.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Enter address**.
4. Touch **More**.
5. Touch **Input via co-ords**.
6. Enter the geographical coordinates using the on-screen keyboard.
7. If required, touch **S** (South) to switch to **N** (North) and vice versa. Touch **E** (East) to switch to **W** (West) and vice versa.
8. Touch **Map route** to calculate the route and display it on the map.

Note: The map zoom function is not available with this feature.

9. Touch **Back** to exit and return to the previous screen.
10. Touch **Start guidance** to calculate the route, return to the map screen and start guidance.

Entering a destination from map view

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Choose from map**.

   Position ⌖ at desired destination.

   The destination street or geographical co-ordinates will be displayed after a few seconds.
4. Touch **OK** to select destination.
5. Touch **Start guidance** to calculate the route, return to the map screen and start guidance.

Saving an address as a favourite

Save an entered destination address as a general favourite, home or work address. See Destination address under *Getting Started on page 7-49*.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Enter address** to enter a new address or select an existing address.
4. Touch **More**.
5. Touch **Save as**.
6. A pop-up is displayed.

   Save the address under Favourites, Home or Work.
7. Touch selection to save the destination or touch **Cancel** to return to the previous screen.

Renaming an address

Rename any destination address in the favourites list, except <Home> and <Work>.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Choose favourite**.
4. Touch **Rename**.

   Touch the entry to be renamed.
5. Enter the new name using the on-screen keyboard.
6. Touch **OK** to rename.
7. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

   The selected entry will be renamed and will appear under its new name in the Favourites List.

Deleting an address

Delete an address from the favourites list.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Choose favourite**.
4. Touch **Delete**.
5. Touch the entry to be deleted from the Favourites list.

   The **Delete favourite** pop-up is displayed.
6. Touch **OK**.

   The selected entry will be deleted from the Favourites list.

Deleting all addresses

Delete all addresses from the Favourites list.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Choose favourite**.
4. Touch **Delete**.
5. Touch **Delete all**.

   The **Delete all favourites** pop-up is displayed.
6. Touch **OK**.

   All addresses will be deleted from the Favourites list.

Viewing a destination address

View a destination address on the map.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Choose favourite**, **Choose history**, or **Choose POI**.
4. Select the destination address to be viewed on the map.
5. Touch **Show address**.

   The map is displayed.

   The address is indicated by ⌖.
6. Zoom in or out on the address.
7. Touch **Back** to exit and return to the previous screen.

Selecting an address

Select a destination address from the Favourites list.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Choose favourite**.
4. Touch the favourite to be selected.

   If the favourite is not shown on the first page, touch ▼ to select the next page.

   The address is displayed in the Enter Address screen.
5. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Selecting a history address

Select a previously entered destination address from the history list, or delete the complete history list.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Choose history**.
4. Touch an address to select it.

   Touch ▼ or ▲ to select the next or previous page if available.
5. Touch **Back** to exit and return to the previous screen.

Deleting history addresses

To delete all history addresses from the list.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Choose history**.
4. Touch **Clear all**.
5. The Clear History List? pop-up is displayed.
6. Touch **OK** to confirm.
7. Touch **Back** to exit and return to the previous screen.

Points of interest

Select Points of Interest (POI) either by name or by category near the current vehicle position, around the destination, or near an address.

- **By name**: Enter the name of the POI by the company name.
- **By category**: Browse the POIs for restaurants, petrol stations, airports etc.

POI near the current position

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Choose POI**.
4. Touch **current position**.
5. Select the POI either **By name** or **By category**.

   Alternatively, touch **Cancel** to exit.

Note: The search radius is a limited distance around the current vehicle position.

If entering by name:

1. Enter the name using the on-screen keyboard.
2. Touch **OK**.

   A list of POIs is displayed.

3. Touch ▼ or ▲ to select the next or previous page if available.
4. Touch a listed POI to select it.

   A POI information screen is displayed.

Note: If a telephone number is listed, touch **CALL** to call the POI.

5. Touch **OK** to proceed to the POI address screen.
6. Touch **Start guidance** to calculate the route and return to the map screen.

If entering by category:

1. Touch a listed category to select.

   A list of POIs is displayed.
2. Touch ▼ or ▲ to select the next or previous page if available.

Note: If there are over 50 results, touch **Next batch** for the next 50 results.

3. Touch a listed POI to select it.

   A POI information screen is displayed.

Note: If a telephone number is listed, touch **CALL** to call the POI.

4. Touch **OK** to proceed to the POI address screen.
5. Touch **Start guidance** to calculate the route and return to the map screen.
6. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

POI near the destination (available during guidance mode only)

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Choose POI**.
4. Touch **destination**.
5. Select the POI either **By name** or **By category**.

   Alternatively, touch **Cancel** to exit.
6. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

If entering by name:

1. Enter the name using the on-screen keyboard.
2. Touch **OK**.

   A list of POIs is displayed.
3. Touch ▼ or ▲ to select the next or previous page if available.
4. Touch a listed POI to select it.

   A POI information screen is displayed.

Note: If a telephone number is listed, touch **CALL** to call the POI.

5. Touch **OK** to proceed to the POI address screen.
6. Touch **Start guidance** to calculate the route and return to the map screen.

If entering by category:

1. Touch a listed category to select.

   A list of POIs is displayed.
2. Touch ▼ or ▲ to select the next or previous page if available.

Note: If there are over 50 results, touch **Next batch** for the next 50 results.

3. Touch a listed POI to select it.

   A POI information screen is displayed.

Note: If a telephone number is listed, touch **CALL** to call the POI.

4. Touch **OK** to proceed to the POI address screen.
5. Touch **Start guidance** to calculate the route and return to the map screen.
6. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

POI near an address (available during non-guidance mode only)

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Choose POI**.
4. Touch **an address**.
5. Enter an address using the on-screen keyboard.
6. Touch **OK**.
7. Select the POI either **By name** or **By category**.

   Alternatively, touch **Cancel** to exit.
8. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

If entering by name:

1. Enter the name using the on-screen keyboard.
2. Touch **OK**.

   A list of POIs is displayed.
3. Touch ▼ or ▲ to select the next or previous page if available.
4. Touch a listed POI to select it.

   A POI information screen is displayed.

Note: If a telephone number is listed, touch **CALL** to call the POI.

5. Touch **OK** to proceed to the POI address screen.
6. Touch **Start guidance** to calculate the route and return to the map screen.

If entering by category:

1. Touch a listed category to select.

   A list of POIs is displayed.
2. Touch ▼ or ▲ to select the next or previous page if available.

Note: If there are over 50 results, touch **Next batch** for the next 50 results.

3. Touch a listed POI to select it.

   A POI information screen is displayed.

Note: If a telephone number is listed, touch **CALL** to call the POI.

4. Touch **OK** to proceed to the POI address screen.
5. Touch **Start guidance** to calculate the route and return to the map screen.
6. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Emergency destination

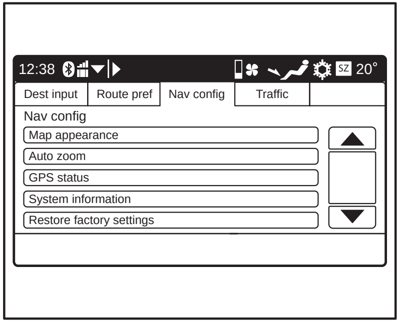
Select an emergency destination.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch **Dest input** tab.
3. Touch **Emergency**.
4. Touch the emergency destination to be selected from the Emergency List.
   - **Police Station**
   - **Hospital**

   If the emergency destination is not displayed, touch ▲ or ▼ to select the previous or next page.
5. Touch listed destination to select.
6. Touch **Start guidance** to calculate the route and return to the map screen.

Navigation Menu

Configuring the navigation system


12:38
20°
Dest input
Route pref
Nav config
Traffic
Nav config
Map appearance
Auto zoom
GPS status
System information
Restore factory settings

Change the configuration settings or view navigation information using **Nav config**.

Available are:

- Map appearance
- Auto zoom
- GPS status
- System information
- Restore factory settings
- Traffic management settings
- Points of Interest (POI)
- Alert points
- Alert points feedback
- Speed limit warnings

Voice guidance settings may also be changed.

Voice guidance speaker output:

1. Press **CONFIG**.
2. Touch the **Audio** tab.
3. Touch **Voice guidance speaker output**.

   Select from: **Driver**, **Front** or **All**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
4. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Voice guidance volume:

1. Press **CONFIG**.
2. Touch the **Audio** tab.

3. Touch **Voice guidance volume**.

   Select from: **On** or **Off**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⊙.

4. Touch ◀ or ▶ to adjust the volume.

   During voice guidance, rotate **VOL** to adjust the volume.

5. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Map appearance

Change the appearance of the map on the screen.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Nav config** tab.
3. Touch **Map appearance**
   - **Map facing**: Either **Heading up** or **North up**.
   - **Map view**: Either **2D** or **3D** (not selectable in North Up view).
   - **Brightness mode**: Either **Day**, **Night** or **Auto**.

     The option selected is indicated by ⊙.
4. Touch **Back** to save the settings and return to the previous screen.

Automatic zoom

Automatically zoom in on the approaching manoeuvre point, to view in detail.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Nav config** tab.
3. Touch **Auto zoom**.
4. Touch either **On** or **Off**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⊙.
5. Touch **Back** to save the settings and return to the previous screen.

Restore factory settings

With this option, all navigation favourites will be erased.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Nav config** tab.
3. Touch **Restore factory settings**.
4. Touch **OK** if you want to restore the factory settings or touch **Cancel** to exit without restoring the factory settings.

Viewing GPS status

Look up the status and accuracy of the GPS signal.

1. Fix:
   - Searching: The system is searching for satellites.
   - Tracking: The system finds less than three satellites and starts to evaluate the signal quality of the satellites found.
   - 2D Fix: There are a minimum of three available satellites to calculate the position.
   - 3D Fix: There are at least four available satellites with good signal quality.

2. Current Number of Satellites: Indicates the number of available satellites.
3. HDOP (GPS Accuracy): Indicates the quality of satellite reception. A lower number indicates better reception quality.
4. Latitude/Longitude: Indicates the current position of the vehicle on the globe.

   This information is based on the GPS satellite signals.

   To view this information:

   A. Press **NAV**.

   B. Touch the **Nav config** tab.

   C. Touch **GPS status**.

      The GPS status is displayed.

   D. Touch **Back** to exit and return to the previous screen.

System information

View system information such as platform, software version, and map database.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Nav config** tab.
3. Touch **System information**.

   The GPS status is displayed.
4. Touch **Back** to exit and return to the previous screen.

POI settings

Select POIs to display on the map.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Nav config** tab.
3. Touch ▼ to select the second **Navigation config** page.
4. Touch **POI selection**.
5. Touch to select the **POI** you want to display.

   The POI selected is indicated with an *.

   Touch ▼ or ▲ to select the next or previous page.

   To clear all selected POIs touch **Clear all**.
6. Touch **Back** to exit and return to the previous screen.

Display navigation

To view the navigation display on the instrument panel:

1. Press **TRIP** to navigate to the navigation display or press **NAV** on the steering wheel remote controls.

Note: Pressing **NAV** in guidance mode:

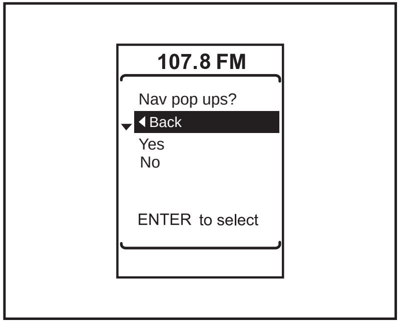
- The navigation screen is displayed.
- Repeats the last voice guidance instruction.

Pressing **NAV** in non-guidance mode:

- The navigation screen is displayed.
- Displays the current vehicle position.

The display options are changed in the Customisation menu:

1. Press **TRIP** to navigate to the **Customise Options** display.
2. Press the ENTER button.
3. Rotate ▲ or ▼ to select **Navigation**.
4. Press the ENTER button.



Select from:

1. **Nav pop-ups?**
    - **Yes**
    - **No**

      Press the ENTER button.

Note: When **No** is selected, the navigation display will only be visible when the navigation display is selected on the instrument panel.

2. **Select Speed Limit Warning?**
    - **Disable**
    - **Enable**

      Press the ENTER button.
3. **Select Speed Limit Flash?**
    - **Disable Flash**
    - **At speed limit**

      Press the ENTER button.

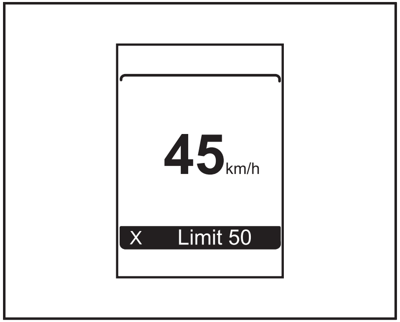
Note: Select a speed, above the current limit, at which the speed limit warning will flash.

Alert points and alert feedback

When switched on, a warning of an approaching alert point may be shown on the infotainment screen or heard through the speakers.

- When **All screens** is selected, audio feedback and a message is displayed on the infotainment screen.
- When **Map screens** is selected, audio feedback and an alert point icon ⚠ is displayed in map view only.

  Touching ⚠ displays the alert point information.
- When **Off** is selected, no alert information is given.
- During a phone call only a display will appear on the infotainment screen without any audio feedback.
- Alert information is available on railway crossings, speed and red light cameras (safety cameras), and school zones.



- The warnings may also be displayed on the instrument panel.

  To enable or disable, see “Display navigation” earlier in this section.

Configuring alert points

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Nav config** tab.
3. Touch ▼ to select the second Nav config page.
4. Touch **Alert points**.
5. Select **Alert points** as required.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
6. Touch **Back** to exit and return to the previous screen.

Configuring alert point feedback (audio chime)

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Nav config** tab.
3. Touch ▼ to select the second Nav config page.
4. Touch **Alert points feedback**.
5. Touch the corresponding button to switch Alert point feedback on or off.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
6. Touch **Back** to exit and return to the previous screen.

Configuring speed limit warnings

Where available, the navigation system displays the documented speed limit for the current road.

If the vehicle speed:

- is less than the navigation system speed limit, the speed symbol will be grey.
- Is greater than the navigation system speed limit, the speed symbol will be coloured red.

  There is no audio alert with this warning.

⚠ WARNING

Information in the system may not always be up-to-date.

Road conditions, such as detours and road construction works, change frequently.

Traffic regulations have priority over any instructions from the navigation system. Always follow posted road signs, speed limits and road restrictions.

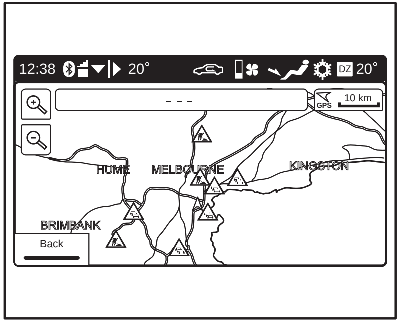
This feature is available in guidance and non-guidance modes.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Nav config** tab.
3. Touch ▼ to select the second Nav config page.
4. Touch **Speed limit warnings**.
5. Touch the corresponding button to switch Speed limit warnings on or off.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
6. Touch **Back** to exit and return to the previous screen.

Traffic Message Channel (TMC)

TMC provides traffic and travel information.



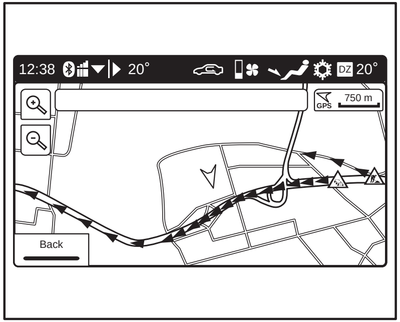
The information is displayed in map view using symbols. See “TMC symbols” later in this section.

TMC is digitally coded using the FM-RDS system on conventional FM radio broadcasts.

Traffic information is only available in areas where it is specifically provided by local FM radio stations, therefore it may not be available in some areas or towns.

TMC may be switched on or off.

Traffic congestion



Traffic congestion on roads is indicated by triangles along that section of road.

The number of triangles shown depends on the map scale displayed, not on the severity of congestion.

The triangles point in the direction of the traffic congestion.

Traffic avoidance

Automatic (default setting)

The route is continuously calculated. If a better route is available than the current one, the alternative route is activated immediately.

Manual

In manual mode an alternative route is suggested. The option is given to select an alternative route.

Switching traffic avoidance on/off

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Nav config** tab.
3. Touch **Traffic management settings**.
4. Touch either **Auto** or **Manual** to switch traffic avoidance on.

   Alternatively, touch **Off** to switch traffic avoidance off.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
5. Touch **Back** to save the settings and return to the previous screen.

Note: When traffic avoidance is off, the RDS-TMC settings are disabled.

Radio Data System – Traffic Message Channel (RDS-TMC)

When traffic avoidance is on, information about traffic on the selected route is displayed.

The RDS-TMC stations provide information relating to:

- Roadworks
- Dangerous vehicles
- Poor visibility etc.

Select/deselect the required options via the TMC filter under the tab **Traffic** – **TMC messages**.

RDS-TMC modes

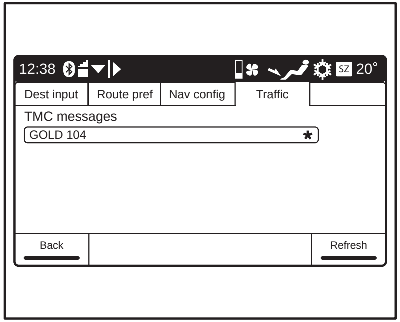
- **Automatic**: The navigation system automatically selects the best TMC station available.
- **Preferred**: Select a preferred TMC station from a list of available TMC stations.

Changing the RDS-TMC settings

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Nav config** tab.
3. Touch **Traffic management settings**.
4. Touch either **Automatic** or **Preferred**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
5. Touch **Back** to save the settings and return to the previous screen.

Viewing and updating TMC stations


12:38
20°
SZ
Dest input
Route pref
Nav config
Traffic
TMC messages
Back
Refresh

GOLD 104 *

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Traffic** tab.
3. Touch **TMC stations**.

   Available TMC stations are displayed.

   The currently selected TMC station is marked with an *.
4. Touch **Refresh** to update the current list.

   Updating TMC stations... will appear on the screen.
5. Touch **Cancel** to cancel the TMC station search.

   Alternatively, touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Selecting a TMC station

Select a favourite TMC station.

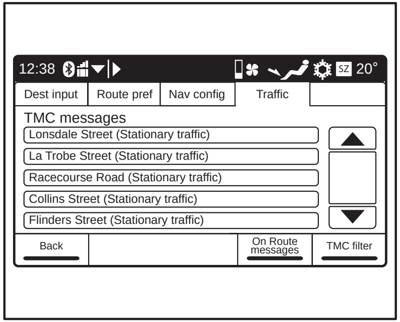
1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Traffic** tab.
3. Touch **TMC stations**.

   The screen shows available TMC stations.

   The currently selected TMC station is marked with an *.
4. Touch to select a TMC station.

   The selected TMC station is marked with an *.
5. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Viewing TMC messages


12:38
20°
SZ
Dest input
Route pref
Nav config
Traffic
TMC messages
Back
On Route messages
TMC filter

Lonsdale Street (Stationary traffic)
La Trobe Street (Stationary traffic)
Racecourse Road (Stationary traffic)
Collins Street (Stationary traffic)
Flinders Street (Stationary traffic)

View current TMC messages and update them if required.

1. Press **NAV**.
2. Touch the **Traffic** tab.
3. Touch **TMC messages**.

   Current TMC messages are displayed.

   Touch any TMC message to provide further detail of the TMC event.

- On-route messages:

  Touch **On route messages** when in guidance mode to list all TMC events on the chosen route.
- TMC filter:

  Touch **TMC filter** to select acceptable TMC events on any route.

  To personalise TMC events that may be displayed, touch to select or deselect.

  The currently selected TMC events are marked with an *.

4. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

TMC Symbols

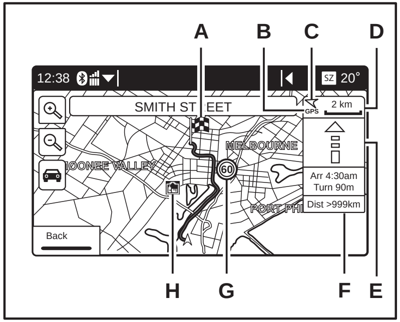
⚠ Accident
⚠ Danger
⚠ Dangerous vehicle
⚠ Delay
⚠ Vehicle on wrong carriageway
⚠ High winds
🅿 No parking
⚠ Obstruction
⚠ Partly closed road
⚠ Poor visibility
⚠ Queuing traffic
⛔ Road closed
⚠ Roadworks
⚠ Stationary traffic
⚠ Severe weather
⚠ Slippery road
⚠ Slow traffic
⚠ Smog
⚠ Faulty traffic signals
⚠ Uneven surface
⚠ Vehicle breakdown
△ Warning

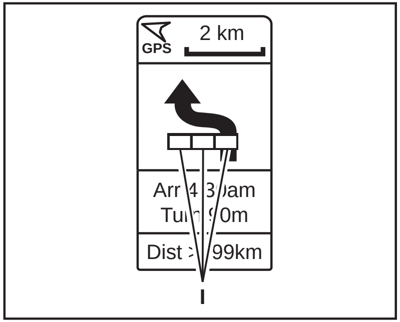
Vehicle restrictions:

○ Restriction
○ Height
tons Weight
● Hazardous load
● Height/hazardous load
tons Weight/hazardous load
○ Multiple restrictions

Navigation map symbols

The following symbols may appear on the map screen.


A
B
C
D
12:38
SZ 20°
SMITH ST EET
GPS
2 km
MELBOURNE
OONEE VALLEY
60
Arr 4:30am
Turn 90m
Dist >999km
PORT PHI
Back
H
G
F
E


GPS
2 km
Arr 4 3 am
Tu 0m
Dist 99km
I

Flag: After a route has been planned, a destination flag (A) indicates the stage or final destination.

Satellite signal: The **GPS** indicator (B) provides satellite signal status.

If there are:

- No satellites available, **GPS** will be red.
- Satellites available, **GPS** will be green.

Map scale: (D) displays the current map scale.

Guidance direction: The direction arrow (E) shows the direction or turn to follow.

- Touch the arrow to repeat the last voice guidance, or press **NAV** on the steering wheel remote controls.
- The arrow may also indicate lane guidance on multi-lane roads (I).
- The lane to follow will be indicated in green.
- An optional lane will be indicated in orange.
- Lanes to avoid will be indicated in red.

Distance to destination, destination time and distance to next turn/instruction: (F) displays the distance to the final destination, the estimated arrival time, and the distance to the next turn/instruction.

Touch above the direction arrow box to view or hide the information.

Map view: The △ (C) indicates north and the currently selected map view configuration.

- 2D map (North Up): North will always be at the top of the map screen regardless of which direction the vehicle is travelling.
- 2D map (Travel direction): The map view is in travel direction.
- 3D Map: The map view is from a 3D elevated position, in the travel direction.
- Touch △ (C) to switch between the different views.

Speed limit: The navigation system may display a speed limit symbol (G).

It displays the speed limit for the current road.

If the vehicle speed is:

- Less than the displayed speed limit, the speed symbol will be grey.
- Greater than the displayed speed limit, the speed symbol will be red.

⚠ WARNING

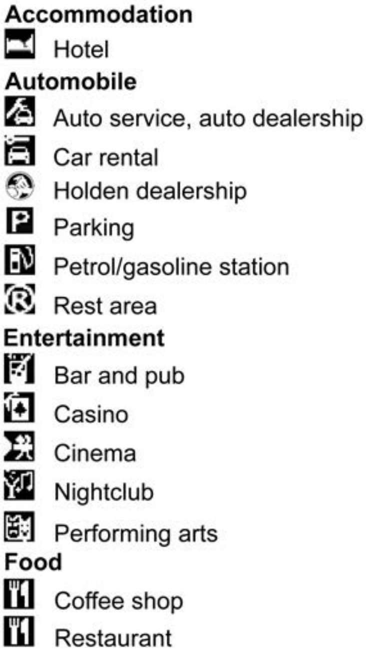
Information in the system may not always be up-to-date.

Road conditions, such as detours and road construction works, change frequently.

Traffic regulations have priority over any instructions from the navigation system. Always follow posted road signs, speed limits and road restrictions.

POI: A symbol (H) indicates a useful location. The symbols will be displayed when the selected map scale is less than 500 m.

Point of Interest (POI) symbols



Accommodation

Hotel

Automobile

Auto service, auto dealership

Car rental

Holden dealership

Parking

Petrol/gasoline station

Rest area

Entertainment

Bar and pub

Casino

Cinema

Nightclub

Performing arts

Food

Coffee shop

Restaurant

Medical services

- Hospital
- Medical service
- Pharmacy

Services

- ATM
- Bank
- Business facility
- Cemetery
- Court house
- Embassy
- Government office
- Higher education facility
- Place of worship
- Police station
- Post office
- Public library
- Public rest room
- School
- Town centre, city centre
- Town hall

Shopping

- Book store
- Clothing store
- Consumer electronic store
- Convenience store
- Department store
- Grocery store
- Home improvement and hardware store
- Office supply and service store
- Shopping
- Speciality store
- Sporting goods store

Sports and recreation

- Amusement park
- Boat marina
- Bowling centre
- Convention centre
- Golf course
- Historical monument
- Ice skating rink
- Museum
- Park and recreation centre
- Sport centre
- Tourist attractions
- Tourist information
- Winery

Transport

- Airport
- Bus and coach station
- Ferry terminal
- Railway station
- Taxi
- Transportation service

Other

- Blackspot
- Check speed
- Country town exit point
- Highway exit
- Military base
- Railway
- School zone
- Traffic camera

Bluetooth Phone/ Devices

Bluetooth

General information

Bluetooth® allows users with a Bluetooth® enabled mobile phone to make and receive hands-free calls using the vehicle's infotainment system and controls.

The Bluetooth® enabled mobile phone must be paired to the vehicle's infotainment system before it can be used in the vehicle.

Not all phones will support all functions. For more information visit: www.holden.com.au.

The following symbols may be displayed at the top of the infotainment screen:

ᛒ : Bluetooth® device connected

Blue symbol: Paired

Grey symbol: In discoverable mode,
or Pairing In Progress,
or Connection In Progress

📶 : Mobile phone signal strength

▮▮▮▮ : Mobile phone battery status

Bluetooth® also allows streaming of music files from a device, if files are available. See *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-26*.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a mobile phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

Pairing

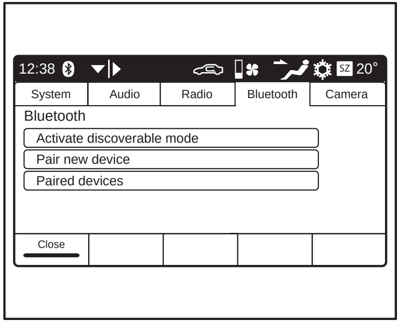
A Bluetooth® enabled mobile phone must be paired to the in-vehicle Bluetooth® system, then connected to the vehicle before it can be used.

See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth® functions before pairing the mobile phone.

- Up to five mobile phones can be paired to the in-vehicle Bluetooth® system.
- The in-vehicle Bluetooth® system automatically links with the first available paired mobile phone in the order the phone was paired.
- Only one paired mobile phone can be connected to the in-vehicle Bluetooth® system at a time.
- Before pairing a new device, ensure that no devices are currently connected.
- Pairing should only need to be completed once, unless changes have been made to the pairing information or the phone is deleted.

Note: A Bluetooth® device without phone features may also be paired to use BT streaming.

Bluetooth® pairing initiated via the mobile phone



1. Press **CONFIG**.
2. Touch the **Bluetooth** tab.
3. Touch **Activate discoverable mode**.

   Discoverable for 5 minutes is displayed.
4. Use your mobile phone to pair it with the infotainment system.
5. Choose a 4 digit code and enter it when **Enter 4 digit code** is displayed.
6. Touch **OK**.
7. Enter the 4 digit code into the mobile phone to pair it.

   Pairing completed will be displayed.

Pairing a Bluetooth® device with the infotainment system

1. Switch the Bluetooth® device on.
2. Press **CONFIG**.
3. Touch the **Bluetooth** tab.
4. Touch **Pair new device**.

   Searching for Bluetooth devices is displayed.
5. Touch **Refresh**.

   The detected Bluetooth® devices are displayed.

6. Touch the Bluetooth® device.

   Pairing device... is displayed.

   Enter code XXXX into device is displayed.

7. Enter the displayed code into the mobile phone to start pairing.

   If pairing failed, **Pairing failed** is displayed.

   If pairing was successful, **Pairing completed** is displayed.

8. Pairing is now completed.

Add up to five devices to the Last paired devices list.

Deleting a Bluetooth® device

1. Press **CONFIG**.
2. Touch the **Bluetooth** tab.
3. Touch **Paired devices**.

   A list of paired devices is displayed.

4. Touch **Delete**.
5. Touch the device to be deleted.

   Delete the paired device <Device Name> is displayed.

6. Touch **OK**.

   The device will be deleted from the Last paired devices list.

Connecting another Bluetooth® device

Connect an extra Bluetooth® device and disconnect the currently paired device without deleting the device from the Last paired devices list.

1. Switch on the extra Bluetooth® device to be paired, and prepare it for pairing.
2. Press **CONFIG**.
3. Touch the **Bluetooth** tab.
4. Touch **Paired devices**.

   The current connection is marked with an asterisk on the right hand side.

5. Touch the device to be paired on the Last paired devices list.

   The pop-up **Connect** <Device Name> **?** is displayed.

   The currently connected device will be disconnected.

6. Touch **OK**.

   Disconnecting device... is displayed.

   You may be asked to enter the code into the mobile phone.

   Connecting... is displayed.

   Pairing of the new device is now completed.

Auto-connecting a Bluetooth® device

1. Switch the Bluetooth® device on.

2. Switch on the infotainment system.

   Bluetooth® searches for an automatic connection with the device in the Last paired device list.

   Device <Device Name> **is connected** is displayed.

Accepting/rejecting an incoming phone call

When an incoming call is received, audio from the infotainment system is muted and a ring tone sounds over the vehicle speakers.

The caller's phone number or name is displayed in the **Phone** tab.

1. Touch 📞 or press ☎ on the steering wheel remote controls to accept the call.

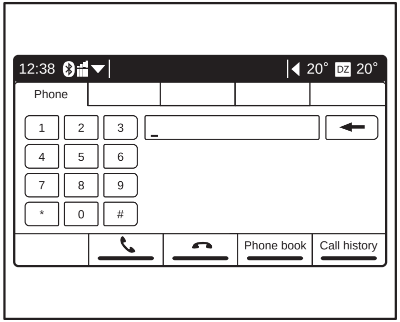
   Call in progress, the caller's phone number, and the time of the connection are displayed.

2. To reject the incoming call, touch ☎.

Ending a call

1. Touch ☎ or press ☎ on the steering wheel remote controls to end a call.

Making a direct outgoing call


12:38
20°
DZ
20°
Phone
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#
Phone book
Call history

1. Touch 📞 or press ☎ on the steering wheel remote controls to open the phone screen.

2. Enter the phone number on the key pad.

   To enter **+**, press and hold the **0** button.

3. Touch 📞 to dial the entered phone number.

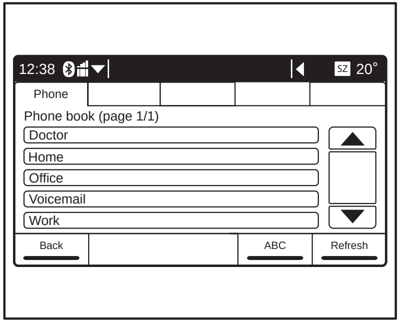
   While the connection is being made, **Calling ...** is displayed.

Making a call from the phone's address book

Access the phone's address book through the infotainment system.

For phones that support this feature, refer to: www.holden.com.au

1. Activate the **Phone** menu screen.


12:38
SZ
20°
Phone
Phone book (page 1/1)
Doctor
Home
Office
Voicemail
Work
Back
ABC
Refresh

2. Touch **Phone book**.

   The Phone book is displayed.

3. Touch the name of the person to call.

   If the person’s name is not visible in the list, touch ▼ or ▲, or rotate **TUNE** to select the person from the address book.

   To go to a different position in the phone book:

   A. Touch **ABC**.

      A keyboard is displayed.

   B. Touch a letter, **A**, **B**, **C** etc.

      The phone book is displayed from that point of the alphabet.

   C. Continue to search for the person’s name by touching ▼ or ▲ or rotating **TUNE**.

      Call <Name> is displayed.

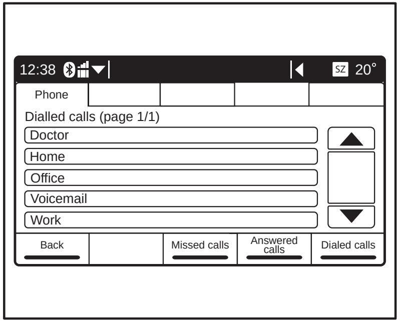
4. Touch **OK** to start dialling.

Making a call from the dialled numbers list

Access the phone's dialled numbers list through the infotainment system.

For phones that support this feature, refer to: www.holden.com.au

1. Activate the **Phone** menu screen.



2. Touch **Call history**.

   Dialled calls list is displayed.

Note: The contacts list may need to update.

Updating contacts... is displayed.

3. Touch the name of the person to be called.

   If the person’s name is not visible, touch ▼ or ▲, or rotate **TUNE** to select the person from the dialled numbers list.

   Call <Name> is displayed.

4. Touch **OK** to start dialling.

Updating contacts list

To update the contact list visible on the display:

1. Activate the **Phone** menu screen.
2. Touch **Phone book**.
3. Touch **Refresh**.

   Updating contacts... is displayed.

Making a call from the answered calls list

Access the phone's answered call list through the infotainment system.

For phones that support this feature, refer to: www.holden.com.au

1. Activate the **Phone** menu screen.
2. Touch **Call history**.

   Dialled calls list is displayed.

Note: The contacts list may need to update.

Updating contacts... is displayed.

3. Touch **Answered calls**.

Note: The contacts list may need to update.

Updating contacts... is displayed.

4. Touch the name of the person to be called back.

   If the person's name is not visible, touch ▼ or ▲, or rotate **TUNE** to select the person from the Answered calls list.

   Call <Name> is displayed.
5. Press **OK** to start dialling.

Making a call from the missed calls list

Access your phone's missed call list through the infotainment system.

For phones that support this feature, refer to: www.holden.com.au

1. Activate the **Phone** menu screen.
2. Touch **Call history**.

   Dialled calls is displayed.

Note: The contacts list may need to update.

Updating contacts... is displayed.

3. Touch **Missed calls**.
4. Touch the name of the person to be called back.

   If the person's name is not visible, touch ▼ or ▲, or rotate **TUNE** to select the person from the Missed calls list.

   Call <Name> is displayed.
5. Touch **OK** to start dialling.

Making a call from voice tag

The phone may have voice tag capability.

1. Press ☎ on the steering wheel remote controls twice to trigger the voice tag.

   Say name is displayed.
2. After the beep, say the name of the contact to be called.
3. The voice tag will be dialled.
4. When the call has ended, the previous source will be selected.

Transferring a call back to the phone

During a call you can transfer from the infotainment system back to the phone handset.

1. Touch **Transfer call**.

   The call is transferred to the phone handset.

   To transfer back to the infotainment system, touch **Transfer call** again.

Receiving a discreet phone call in map view (with navigation)

The ring tone is audible via the vehicle speakers.

Voice In is displayed in the Audio status bar.

1. Press ☎ on the steering wheel remote controls to accept the call.

Help system

General information

The help system provides help topics and information on features, which may assist with operation.

Activating/deactivating the help feature

1. Press ?⃝ to open the **Help** tab.
2. To get help on:
    - Features, touch **Feature help**.
    - Operating buttons, touch **Button help**.
3. Touch **Close** to exit.

Help on features

Feature help topics are subdivided into main topics and subtopics.

The main topics are:

- Aux
- Bluetooth pairing
- Bluetooth phone
- Configuration
- Media
- Navigation
- Navi configuration
- Radio
- Radio configuration
- Status bar
- Traffic

Selecting help on features

1. Press ?⃝ to open the **Help** tab.
2. Touch **Feature Help**.
3. Touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** to browse the main topic list.
4. Touch the main topic for information.
5. Touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** to browse the subtopic list.
6. Touch the subtopic for information.
7. When highlighted, touch ▼ or rotate **TUNE** clockwise to select the second page of the subtopic.
8. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Help on buttons

Access help topics on the button functions.

The button functions are:

- AUX
- BACK
- CONFIG
- EJECT
- FOLDER NEXT/PREV
- HELP
- LEFT ROTARY

- MAP
- MEDIA
- MUTE
- NAV
- PHONE
- POWER
- RADIO
- RIGHT ROTARY
- TRACK UP/DOWN

Selecting help on buttons

1. Press ⓘ to open the **Help** tab.
2. Touch **Button Help**.
3. Touch ▲ or ▼, or rotate **TUNE** to browse the button function list.
4. Touch the button function for information.
5. Touch **Back** to return to the previous screen.

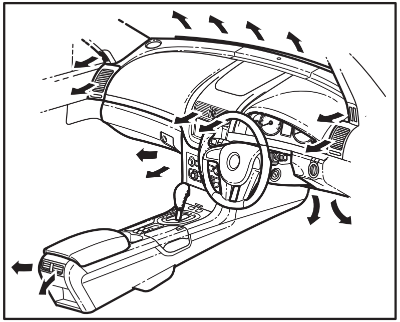
Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems

Heating and Ventilation System 8-1
Air Conditioning System 8-2

Climate Control Systems

Heating and Ventilation System



Outside air is drawn into the vehicle through the opening between the bonnet and the windscreen, unless recirculation has been selected.

Keep the area clear of debris.

Vents

The face and rear seat vents can be adjusted up or down and left or right to allow directional air flow.

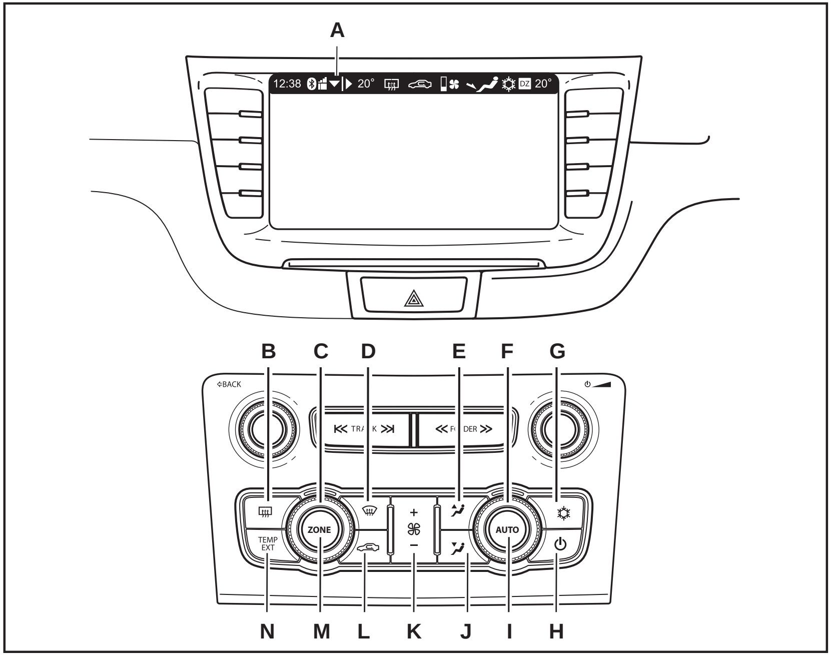
The vents have shut-off doors to adjust the air volume, e.g. air flow at the centre vents can be reduced to enhance air flow at the rear seat vents.

The demister and floor-level outlets are fixed. They direct air to the windscreen, side windows and feet.

Air Conditioning System

The climate control panel is located in the centre of the dashboard.

Settings for the driver and passenger can be adjusted independently.


A
12:38
20°
DZ
20°
B
C
D
E
F
G
BACK
TRACK
FOLDER
ZONE
AUTO
TEMP EXT
+
−
N
M
L
K
J
I
H

Controls

A. Display bar

B. Rear window demister

C. Temperature control: left side

D. Windscreen demister

E. Mode up

F. Temperature control: right side

G. Air conditioning

H. Off

I. Auto

J. Mode down

K. Fan speed

L. Recirculation

M. Zone

N. Exterior air temperature

Temperature controls

- Rotate controls (C) and (F) clockwise (warmer) or anticlockwise (cooler).
- The settings for each side appear on the display bar (A).
- Turning the control past 30°C will show **H** (hottest).

  Turning the control past 17°C will show **C** (coolest).
- Between 22°C and 24°C is recommended.

Single and dual zone

- Press **ZONE** (M) to select Single-Zone (SZ) mode or Dual-Zone (DZ) mode.
- **SZ** or **DZ** appears on the display.

Single-Zone (SZ) mode

All zones are set to the same temperature.

The temperature is shown on the display.

Adjust using the control (F).

Dual-Zone (DZ) mode

Dual-Zone mode allows different temperatures to be set for the left and right sides or to link them.

Adjust the passenger side by rotating control (C).

When linked, the passenger side temperature setting mirrors the driver side temperature setting.

To link, press and hold **AUTO** (I) for at least 3 seconds.

Note: Linking occurs automatically if the passenger and driver sides are set to the same temperature when the ignition is turned on.

Automatic operation

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press **AUTO** (I) if the icon is not already displayed.
3. Use the temperature controls (C) and (F) to adjust the temperature.
4. Allow the system to stabilise for a few minutes.
5. Adjust the angle of the air vents.

Note: The setting does not change when the ignition is turned off or on (unless extreme hot or cold is selected).

Fan

- Press **+** or **–** on (K) to increase or decrease the fan speed.
- The fan speed appears on the display.

Note:

  - The climate control sets the fan speed automatically.
  - When adjusting the fan speed, the system will revert to semi-automatic operation.

    An animation will appear on the display bar (A).
  - When the engine is not running, fan speed is limited to conserve the battery.
  - To return to automatic operation, press **AUTO** (I).

Mode

Press the mode buttons (E) and (J) to switch between the following positions:

- Face mode directs air to both dashboard and console vents.
- Bi-level mode directs approximately half the air to both dashboard and console vents and most of the remaining air to the floor vents.

  Cooler air is directed to the upper outlets and warmer air to the floor vents.
- Floor mode directs most of the air to the floor vents, and some to the outer dashboard vents, windscreen and side window demist vents.
- Floor and windscreen demist (blend) mode directs air between the windscreen and floor vents, some to the outer dashboard vents and side window demist vents.

  The settings appear on the display bar (A).

Note:

  - Manual selection of any mode will revert the system to semi-automatic operation.
  - To return to automatic operation, press **AUTO** (I).

Auto

- Pressing **AUTO** (I) switches the system to automatic.
- **AUTO** appears on the display bar (A).

Note:

  - Use a minimum of manual adjustment.

- The **AUTO** icon on the display goes out when the system is operating manually.
- Allow the system to stabilise before changing settings.

Air conditioning

- Press ❄ (G) to switch the air conditioning on and off.
- ❄ appears on the display bar (A) when switched on.
- ❄ OFF appears on the display bar (A) when switched off.

Note:

- When ♨ or 🚗 or ♨ is selected, the air conditioning is automatically switched on.
- To conserve fuel, the air conditioning may switch off in cold weather.

  Other climate control functions are maintained.
- Air conditioning removes moisture and heat from the air.
- Switch the air conditioning on for at least 5 to 10 minutes once every 2 weeks to lubricate the system, even in winter.
- Air conditioning cannot be turned off in demist mode.
- Air conditioning may switch off during heavy acceleration, when towing, or when there is abnormal system pressure.

Recirculation

- Press 🚗 (L) to switch the air intake between recirculated air and outside air.
- 🚗 appears on the display.

Note:

- Recirculation reuses interior air so is not recommended for long periods of time.

  If left on, fresh air is let into the cabin periodically.
- Do not use recirculation if occupants are smoking.
- Recirculation cannot be activated in demist mode.

Pollution mode

- Pollution mode selects recirculation when the vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h to prevent exhaust fumes entering the interior in heavy, stop/start traffic.
- To switch on or off, press 🚗 and hold for 4 seconds.
- **Pollution Mode ON** or **Pollution Mode OFF** appears on the display.

Windscreen demister

- Press (D) to demist the windscreen and side windows.
- Air conditioning is switched on automatically.

  Air conditioning cannot be switched off and recirculation mode cannot be switched on.
- appears on the display.
- Press (D) again to turn the demister off.

Rear window demister

- Press (B) to turn the rear demister on or off.
- appears on the display.
- The rear demister switches off automatically.

Outside temperature

- Press **TEMP EXT** (N) to display the outside temperature on the display bar (A).

  Pressing **TEMP EXT** does not stop the system operating automatically.
- Press **TEMP EXT** (N) again to return to the normal display.

Off

- Press ⏻ (H) to switch the system off.
- Press any button to switch it back on.
- When the system is off, the rear window demister can still be switched on.

Adjust display bar size

- To minimise, touch to the right of |▶ within the display bar (A).

  Temperature and zone remain.
- To maximise, touch to the right of |◀ within the display bar (A).

Regular operation

Automatic

It is not necessary to set a cooler or hotter temperature than required to ensure fast cooling or heating.

Leave the system in automatic operation to:

- Turn the air conditioning on and off.
- Vary the temperature of the air entering the cabin.
- Switch between recirculate or fresh air.
- Vary the fan speed.
- Alter vent selection.

Starting

1. When cold, the system starts in 🚗 mode with the fan off.
2. Warm air is then directed to the floor outlets.
3. Air is directed through selected vents.
4. Adjust vents manually.

Engine performance/ fuel economy

A small decrease in engine power and a slight increase in fuel consumption will be noticed when the air conditioning is in use.

At high speeds or during heavy acceleration the air conditioning may switch off momentarily.

Adjusting the temperature

When the climate control system has stabilised, adjust settings one degree at a time.

Quick cool down

When entering the vehicle on a hot day, open the windows for a short time to allow the hot air to escape before operating the air conditioning.

Ignition keys

For vehicles equipped with personal identity keys, pressing 🔒 sets the climate control to the last adjustments used for that key. See “Personal identity keys” under *Keys on page 2-1*.

Automatic transmission

If the vehicle is stopped for a long time in hot weather with the engine running and the air conditioning operating, move the gear lever to **N** or **P**.

Hissing

A slight hissing sound when the air conditioning switches off is normal.

Water

Water condensation can leave traces of clear water on the ground underneath the vehicle.

Unsealed roads (prevention of dust entry)

- When following another vehicle on unsealed roads where there is airborne dust, select recirculation 🚗 (L).
- If the dust is not airborne, select outside air and set the fan to high speed to help prevent dust entry.
- Ensure in both cases that all windows are closed.
- Do not use recirculation for long periods of time.

Sensors

The climate control uses three sensors to maintain temperatures:

- The sunlight sensor is located on top of the dashboard. See *Instrument Panel Overview on page 5-2*.

  It monitors solar radiation when operating in AUTO mode, adjusting temperature, fan speed and air delivery.

  Cooler air may be supplied to the side of the vehicle facing the sun.

  Recirculation mode will be activated as necessary.

  Do not cover the sensor.

- The outside temperature sensor is located in front of the radiator and relies on air moving across it.

  It can be affected by radiant heat when the vehicle is stationary.

  To prevent false temperature readings, the displayed temperature will not change until the vehicle speed is above 16 km/h for 5 minutes or vehicle speed is above 40 km/h for 2½ minutes.

  If the vehicle has been switched off for less than 3 hours, the temperature at start up will be recalled from previous operation.
- The in-car temperature sensor is located in the dashboard. See *Instrument Panel Overview on page 5-2*. It measures the temperature inside the vehicle.

  Do not cover the sensor.

Switching climate control off

If climate control is switched off:

- Background noises may still be heard.
- Recirculation and the rear window demister can still be switched on.

Cigarette smoke

Do not use recirculation if occupants are smoking.

Regular running

Switch air conditioning on for at least 5 to 10 minutes once every 2 weeks to lubricate the system, even in winter.

Pollen/dust filter

A passenger compartment air filter may be fitted to filter contaminants such as pollen and dust from entering the vehicle. This can be fitted by a Holden Dealer.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information

Driving Environment 9-1

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Running-in 9-2
Ignition Positions 9-3
Starting the Engine 9-4
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 9-5
Parking 9-5

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission 9-6
Transmission Display 9-6
Selector Lever 9-6

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission 9-11

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS) 9-12
Parking Brake 9-13

Ride Control Systems

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 9-14

Cruise Control

Cruise Control 9-17

Object Detection Systems

Parking Assist 9-19
Rear View Camera (RVC) . . . 9-23

Fuel

Fuel 9-26
Recommended Fuel 9-29
Filling the Tank 9-31

Towing

Trailer Towing 9-33

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-39

Driving Information

Driving Environment

Before entering the vehicle

Check that windows, mirrors and lights are clean.

Visually check tyre inflation. Check tyre pressures weekly.

Before driving off

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.
3. Adjust rear view mirrors.
4. Fasten seatbelts.
5. Check that warning indicators illuminate when the ignition is switched on. See *Instrument Cluster on page 5-9*.

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Running-in

Observe the following precautions to improve performance:

- For the first 1,000 km:

  Do not make full-throttle starts.

  Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.

  Do not drive at any one constant speed.

  Use moderate acceleration in lower gears.

  Avoid vehicle speeds above 110 km/h.
- Between the first 1,000 km and 5,000 km, heavy acceleration in lower gears may be used.

  Vehicle speeds above 110 km/h should be limited to five minutes at a time.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 350 km to avoid premature wear and early replacement of brakes.
- It is recommended that the new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing. See “Running-in when towing” under *Trailer Towing on page 9-33*.

Brakes

Do not let the vehicle run down hills or coast with the engine off as the power assistance does not operate.

Ensure that nothing is under the brake pedal which could limit its use, such as poorly fitting floor mats.

Continuous or heavy use of brakes will shorten the life of the brake pads.

Power steering

The power steering fitted to the vehicle is designed to reduce steering effort.

Do not turn and hold the steering wheel in the fully turned position when stationary.

If power steering is not working, due to the engine stalling for example, the vehicle can still be steered. Have the steering repaired as soon as possible by a Holden Dealer.

Mobile phones and CB radios

Use mobile phones and CB equipment that utilise an antenna fitted to the outside of the vehicle whenever possible.

If using mobile phones or CBs with an integrated antenna inside the vehicle, avoid using near the dashboard area, as some functions may be affected.

Loading the vehicle

Loading the vehicle changes handling when driving. See *Vehicle Weight on page 12-5*.

Loose articles

Do not leave loose articles or luggage in the passenger compartment. Secure them in the boot (Sedan)/cargo area (Sportwagon).

⚠ WARNING

Portable gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion. As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders. They must be restrained from rolling around and, when possible, placed in the boot (Sedan) or cargo area (Sportwagon) of the vehicle.
If gas cylinders are frequently transported, it is recommended that a purpose-built carrying compartment is used. Ensure that any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

Tyre grip

Tyre grip decreases when there is water, snow, ice, gravel or other materials on the road. Adjust your driving to the road conditions:

- Reduce speed in wet conditions.
- Replace tyres when tread wear indicators are visible. See *Tread Depth on page 10-47*.
- Regularly check that tyres are properly inflated. See *Wheels and Tyres on page 10-45*.

Water crossing

Before crossing water, switch off the air conditioning.

Crossing deep water can damage the engine:

- Avoid crossing water deeper than 175 mm.
- Limit vehicle speed to a walking pace.

To dry out the brakes:

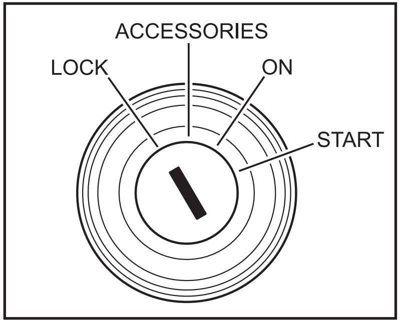
- Ensure there is a clear area ahead.
- Lightly apply the brakes.
- Maintain a slow forward speed until performance returns to normal.

Ignition Positions

⚠ WARNING

Do not switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for brakes or steering.

Never remove the key while the vehicle is moving, as this will lock the steering.



LOCK: When the key is in the LOCK position, some electrical accessories and the engine are off.

The key can only be inserted and removed from the LOCK position.

The engine is automatically disabled shortly after removing the key from the ignition.

The steering wheel is automatically locked when the key is removed.

To release the steering lock, re-insert the key and turn it towards the front of the vehicle. If still locked, turn the steering wheel slightly to the right or left while turning the key towards the front of the vehicle.

ACCESSORIES: With the key in the ACCESSORIES position, the audio system and wipers operate.

ON: When the key is in the ON position, the engine is ready to start and all electrical systems are active.

Warning lights will come on. See *Instrument Cluster on page 5-9*.

Do not leave the switch in the ON position for a long time without the engine running, otherwise the vehicle's battery will discharge.

START: Turn the key to the START position momentarily and then release.

The engine starts automatically.

The key returns to the ON position when released.

Note: If the vehicle stalls after 5 seconds, return the key to the LOCK position. Slowly rotate the key to the START position. If the security warning light flashes, contact a Holden Dealer.

Starting the Engine

1. Apply the parking brake firmly. Release it only when the engine has started and you are ready to drive off.
2. Automatic transmission: Move the gear lever to position **P** or **N**. The engine will not start if the gear lever is in any other position.

   Manual transmission: Push the clutch pedal to the floor, move the gear lever to the neutral position, then start the engine.
3. Turn the key to the START position momentarily and release it. The engine starts automatically. The key automatically returns to the ON position.

Note:

- Manual transmission: The clutch must be pushed to the floor while turning the key, otherwise the vehicle cannot be started.
- Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine.
- Do not subject the engine to full-throttle acceleration or high speeds until it has reached normal operating temperature. Premature engine wear or damage may result.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The power windows will operate when the key is in the ON or ACCESSORIES position.

Once the ignition is turned to the LOCK position, the RAP allows the power windows to continue to operate for up to 10 minutes. If a door is opened during this time, they will be deactivated.

Note: The audio system will be deactivated only if the driver's door is opened.

Parking

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Automatic transmission: Select position **P**.

   Manual transmission: If facing uphill or on flat ground, select 1st gear. If facing downhill, select reverse gear.
3. Shut all windows.
4. Switch off the ignition and remove the key.
5. Press the 🔒 button on the key to lock all doors and to arm the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-11*.

Note: The engine fan may keep running for several minutes after the ignition has been switched off. This is normal.

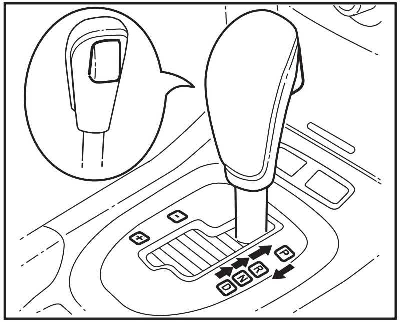
⚠ WARNING

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gases are hazardous, especially if they build up in closed rooms.

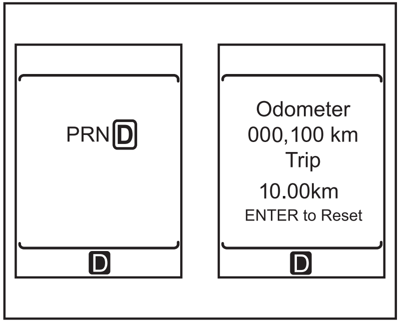
Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space such as a closed garage or underground car park.

Automatic Transmission



Press the select button on the front of the gear lever to move into any position.

Transmission Display



When the gear lever position is changed, an animation appears on the display.

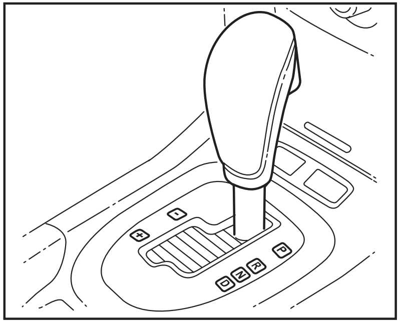
The selected gear is magnified and changes as the gear lever is moved.

The animation appears on the display for 2 seconds after the gear is selected.

The lever position indicated at the bottom of the display remains on, indicating the currently selected gear.

Note: If any warnings are active on the display, the animation will not be shown. Only the indication at the bottom of the display changes when the gear lever is moved. See "Active Select (A/S) mode" under *Selector Lever on page 9-6*.

Selector Lever



The engine will not start unless the gear lever is in position **P** or **N**.

P: In park position the wheels are locked. Apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Selecting position **P** while the vehicle is still moving can damage the transmission.

Do not press the accelerator pedal with the brakes on in any gear except position **P** or **N**. This will overheat the transmission.

R: Place the vehicle in reverse gear only when it is stationary. The reverse lights will switch on.

N: In neutral the vehicle can be moved without the engine running, e.g. to be towed or pushed.

⚠ WARNING

To prevent the vehicle from moving when position **N** is selected, always apply the parking brake, depress the foot brake, or use suitable chocks to block the wheels.

Do not coast the vehicle in position **N** – this decreases your control and ability to accelerate quickly in an emergency.

D: Used for general driving. The transmission automatically selects the appropriate gear depending on the current load and driving conditions.

+/-: For sport shift mode, move the gear lever to position **D**, then push to the left.

While in sport shift mode, move the gear lever to the **+** or **–** position to enable A/S mode.

To shift up a gear, briefly pull the lever rearwards (+) and release it. To shift down a gear, briefly push the lever forwards (–) and release it. See “Active Select (A/S) mode” later in this section.

Note:

- It is recommended that cruise control in normal mode is used for towing.
- A/S mode may also be used under light load conditions.
- A small increase in engine speed may occur during some downshifts.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle stationary on an uphill slope. Use the brakes.

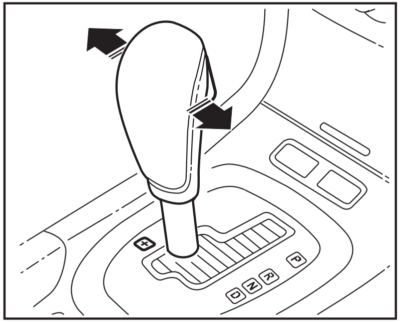
Driving on slopes

When driving on a slope, the transmission may hold the current gear. Upshift or downshift to assist in maintaining vehicle speed and/or reduce brake wear.

If the road levels out and/or the accelerator is pressed, the transmission will shift until the appropriate gear is reached.

A/S mode may be switched to override this feature.

Sport shift mode



Sport shift mode can be selected when maximum responsiveness is required.

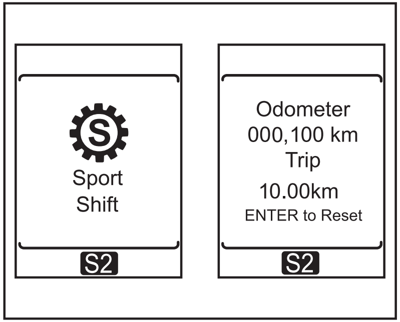
When operating in sport shift mode, the transmission will delay upshifts and allow earlier downshifts.

In addition, the transmission can sense enthusiastic driving, in which case it may delay upshifting and downshift earlier when braking. This is designed to maximise vehicle performance.

To activate sport shift mode:

1. Move the gear lever to position **D**.
2. Push the gear lever to the left.

   Do not move the gear lever to **+** or **–**, otherwise A/S mode will be enabled.
3. To return to normal shift mode, move the gear lever right, to position **D**.



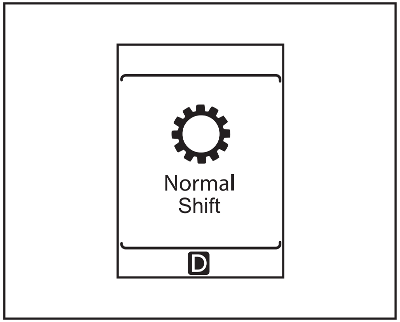
The **Sport Shift** animation appears on the display for 2 seconds.

At the bottom of the display, **S** and the currently selected gear appears as long as sport shift mode is selected.

Normal shift mode

Normal shift mode is recommended for normal or freeway driving, as it provides optimum fuel economy.

When the gear lever is moved to position **D**, normal shift mode is selected.

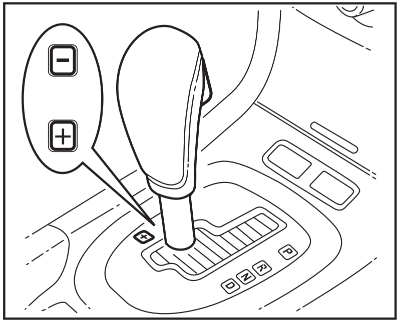


The **Normal Shift** animation appears on the display for 2 seconds.

Active Select (A/S) mode

A/S mode allows gears to be selected manually.

It can also provide engine braking by selecting the appropriate lower gear on a steep downhill grade.



To enable A/S mode:

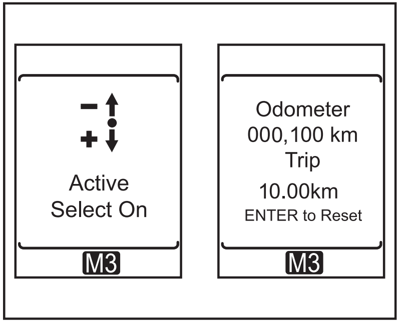
1. Move the gear lever to position **D**.
2. Push the lever to the left.
3. Shift to the required gear:

   To shift up a gear, briefly pull the lever rearwards (**+**) and release it.

   To shift down a gear, briefly push the lever forwards (**–**) and release it.

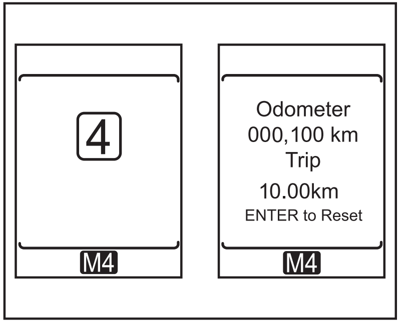
After changing the gear and releasing the gear lever, it returns to the centre position on the left side of the selector.

Do not hold the gear lever in the + or – position.



The **Active Select On** animation appears on the display for 2 seconds.

At the bottom of the display, **M** and the currently selected gear appears as long as A/S mode is selected.


4
M4
Odometer
000,100 km
Trip
10.00km
ENTER to Reset
M4

When shifting up or down, the selected gear (**1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**, or **6**) is also animated on the display.

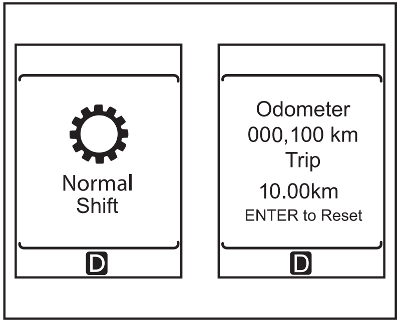
The animation appears on the display for 2 seconds after the gear is selected.

Note:

- The transmission will shift to a selected gear only if the engine speed is within a suitable range.

  If not suitable, **Shift Denied** will be displayed and the transmission will not shift gears.
- If the engine speed becomes too low for the currently selected gear, the transmission will automatically shift down, even though A/S mode is still selected.
- While in A/S mode, 2nd or 3rd gear starts (V8) or 2nd gear starts (V6) can be selected from a standing start. This is useful for gentle acceleration on slippery surfaces.

To disable A/S mode and return to automatic mode, push the gear lever to the right to position **D**.

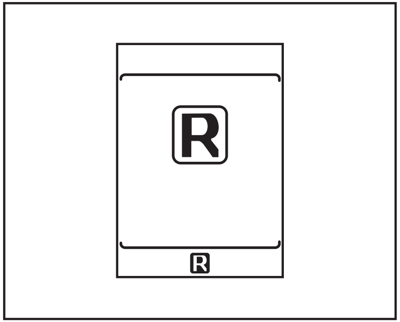

Normal
Shift
D
Odometer
000,100 km
Trip
10.00km
ENTER to Reset
D

The **Normal Shift** animation appears on the display for 2 seconds.

At the bottom of the display, **D** is displayed.

Manual Transmission

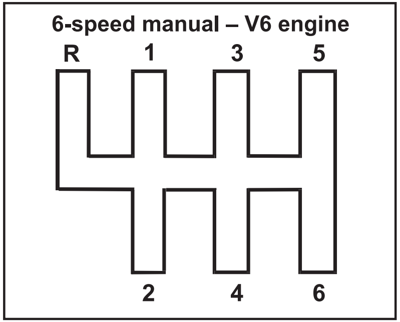
Gear display

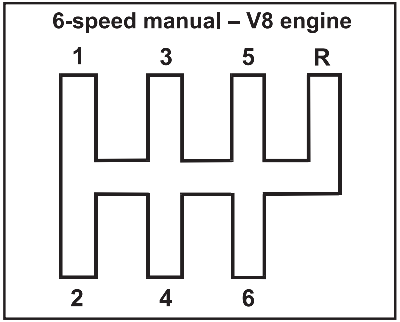


When **R** is selected, an animation appears on the display and a chime sounds.

Note: If Park Assist (PA) is fitted, no chime sounds, but a short single tone sounds from the rear speaker.

Shift pattern





V6 and V8 engines equipped with manual transmissions have six forward gears and a reverse gear, shown on top of the gear lever.

Manual operating notes

- When shifting from one gear to another, push the clutch pedal to the floor.
- Do not engage reverse gear while the vehicle is still moving.
- To select **R**, move the gear lever sideways against spring pressure to engage reverse gear.

Note: On V6 vehicles, moving the lever with momentum will reduce the effort required to select **R**.

- Pause between pressing the clutch pedal and moving into reverse gear.
- Whenever reverse gear is selected with the ignition on, the reverse lights illuminate.

- For vehicles fitted with a manual transmission, when on level roads in an unladen condition it is permissible to drive off in 2nd gear in the interest of fuel economy.
- Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal.
- When stopped on an incline, do not hold the vehicle stationary using the clutch. Use the parking brake or foot brake.
- When climbing steep hills, shift to a lower gear before the engine starts to labour.
- Shift to a lower gear before descending steep hills.
- Do not over-rev the engine when shifting to a lower gear.
- V8, when vehicle speed is 14 km/h or less, engine speed is limited to 5,000 RPM.

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The ABS:

- Continuously monitors the vehicle's braking system preventing the wheels from locking.
- Allows maximum braking effort while retaining full steering control, even in the event of panic braking.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. You should always adjust the vehicle's speed to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Operation

ABS operation is noticeable by pulsing of the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

Keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, without pumping it.

⚠ CAUTION

When the ignition is switched on, the ABS warning light comes on briefly. This self-check may be audible.

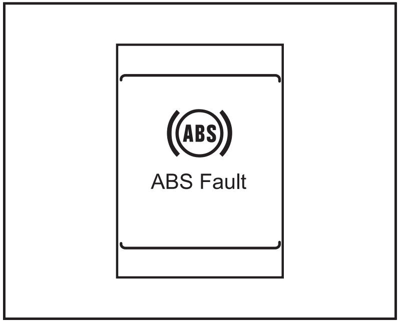
If the ABS warning light (ABS off) on the instrument panel display does not go off, or lights up when

(Continued)

CAUTION (Continued)

driving, a malfunction has occurred. The **ABS Fault** animation will display on the instrument panel.

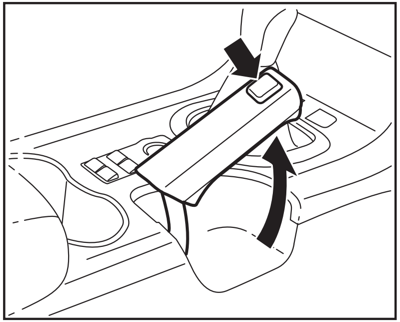
Note: The vehicle's brake system remains operational, but without ABS assistance. Have a Holden Dealer check the system as soon as possible.



The **ABS Fault** animation will be displayed until the **TRIP** or the ENTER button is pressed.

The (ABS) warning light will remain on until the problem is repaired.

Parking Brake



The parking brake lever is located between the front seats.

Applying the parking brake

Pull the lever straight up, without pressing the release button.

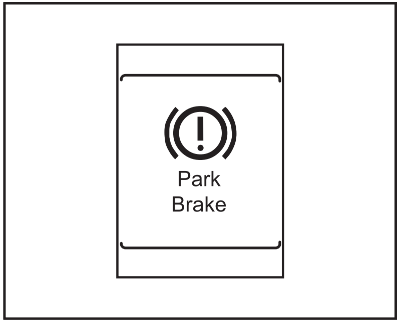
When the ignition is switched on and the parking brake is applied, the parking brake warning light (!) appears on the display.

Releasing the parking brake

1. Pull the lever slightly upwards.
2. Push in the release button on the top of the lever and lower the lever all the way down.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive the vehicle with the parking brake on.



If you attempt to drive off without releasing the parking brake, a warning chime sounds and the **Park Brake** animation appears on the display.

The animation remains displayed until one of the following occurs:

- The parking brake is released.
- The vehicle is stationary.
- **TRIP** is pressed on the steering wheel.

Ride Control Systems

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The ESC:

- Is an advanced feature that works in conjunction with the vehicle's ABS and includes the Traction Control System (TCS).
- Improves driving stability in any driving situation.
- Assists in maintaining vehicle stability when the vehicle's grip level is exceeded, such as during a sudden lane change or in slippery or unexpected road conditions.
- Alters engine power and/or braking on specific wheels, improving the vehicle's steering control and power delivery on wet or slippery roads, particularly on snow and ice.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

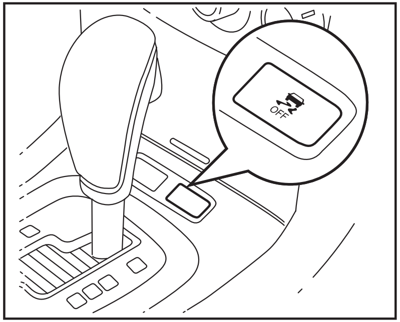
Activation

While the ESC is maintaining vehicle stability, the warning light flashes.

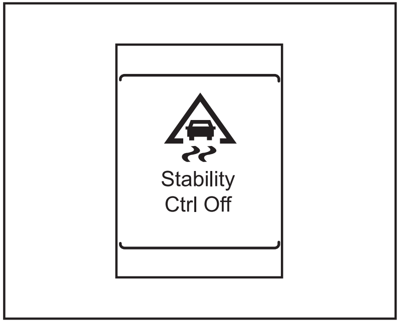
Switching ESC on and off

In certain circumstances it may be helpful to disable the ESC, e.g. on steep gravel inclines, or if the vehicle is bogged. It may be possible to get more traction from a slightly spinning wheel.

Note: Switch the ESC off when snow chains are fitted, to maintain normal driving operation.



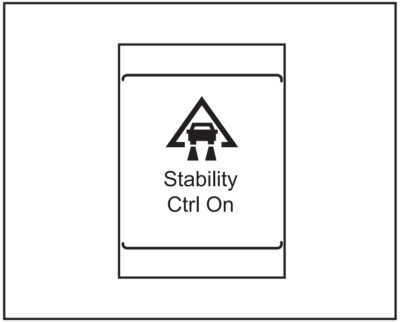
The ESC is automatically switched on each time the engine is started.



To switch off, press OFF:

- The **Stability Ctrl Off** animation appears on the display for 2 seconds.
- OFF warning light is illuminated as long as the ESC is switched off.

Note: On Sportwagon vehicles with LPG, when the temporary spare wheel is fitted, if the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h, ESC will switch back on and remain on until vehicle speed is below 40 km/h and OFF is pressed again.

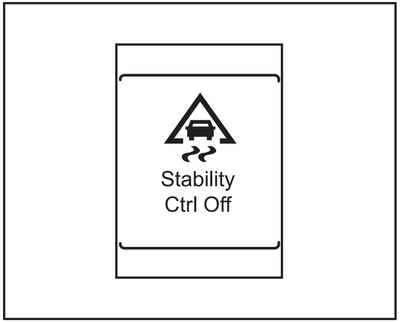


To switch on, press OFF:

- The **Stability Ctrl On** animation appears on the display for 2 seconds.
- The OFF warning light turns off.

Malfunction indication

If OFF is pressed and the animations do not display as described, a malfunction has occurred. The system will not work. Contact a Holden Dealer.



- If the **Stability Ctrl Off** animation is shown, press **TRIP** on the steering wheel.
- The OFF and warning lights remain on until the problem is repaired.

Electronic Brake Assist (EBA)

The EBA:

- Is incorporated into the ESC system and detects rapid braking.
- Provides maximum braking efficiency as long as the brake pedal is depressed.
- Initiates ABS earlier, shortening the stopping distance required.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Brake assist – Power assist

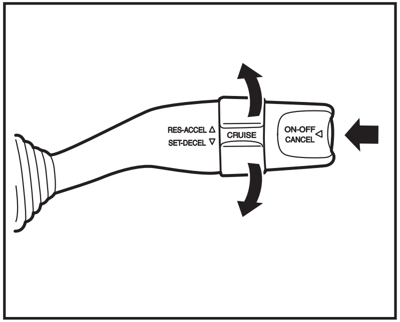
On LPG vehicles only:

- Is incorporated into the ESC system and assists braking by providing additional power assistance.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Cruise Control

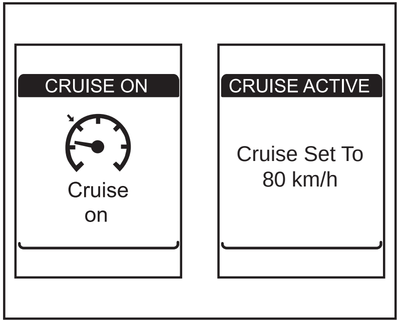


Cruise control:

- Maintains the vehicle's speed without pressure on the accelerator pedal.
- Will only operate at speeds above 40 km/h.
- The lever is located on the right side of the steering column.

Setting a speed

1. Switch on the ignition.



2. Press the **ON-OFF/CANCEL** switch at the end of the lever.

   The **CRUISE ON** animation is displayed.

3. When travelling at the desired speed, rotate the collar down to the **SET-DECEL** position.

   The **Cruise Set To** animation is displayed.

4. Release both the accelerator pedal and the collar.

   After a few seconds, the animation reverts to the original trip computer display.

   CRUISE ON or **CRUISE ACTIVE** appears at the top of the display.

Adjusting the set speed

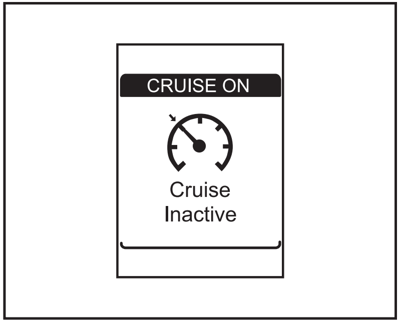
To reduce the set speed, rotate and hold the collar down to the **SET-DECEL** position.

To increase the set speed, rotate and hold the collar up to the **RES-ACCEL** position.

After it is released, the new speed will be maintained.

To change the speed in 1 km/h increments, momentarily rotate the collar.

Pausing cruise control



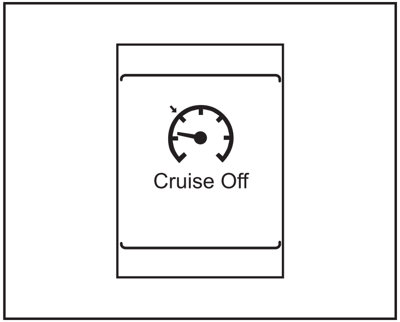
1. Press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or press the **ON-OFF/CANCEL** switch once. Cruise control deactivates.

   The **Cruise Inactive** animation is displayed but the speed is retained in memory.

2. To regain the stored speed, momentarily rotate the collar to the **RES-ACCEL** position.

   Holding the **RES-ACCEL** position will cause the vehicle to accelerate.

Switching cruise control off



Press the **ON-OFF/CANCEL** switch twice.

The **Cruise Off** animation is displayed.

Notes about cruise control

- Pressing the **ON-OFF/CANCEL** switch once pauses cruise control but keeps the speed in memory.
- A second press switches the system off and removes the speed memory.
- A third press switches the system back on to ready, without any speed memory.
- Switching off the ignition deactivates cruise control and clears the memory.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use cruise control when road or driving conditions require varying speeds. A constant speed is not practical in heavy or varying traffic or on winding, slippery or rough roads.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Remember that when **CRUISE ACTIVE** is displayed, cruise control is maintaining the vehicle's speed. Taking your foot off the accelerator pedal does not reduce the speed. To deactivate cruise control, either press the brake pedal, press the clutch pedal (manual transmission), or push the **ON-OFF/CANCEL** switch.

The cruise control does not apply the vehicle's brakes. The vehicle may gain speed when going down steep hills.

When climbing steep hills (particularly when towing), the vehicle may lose speed. In this case, use the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal when the speed returns to the set speed.

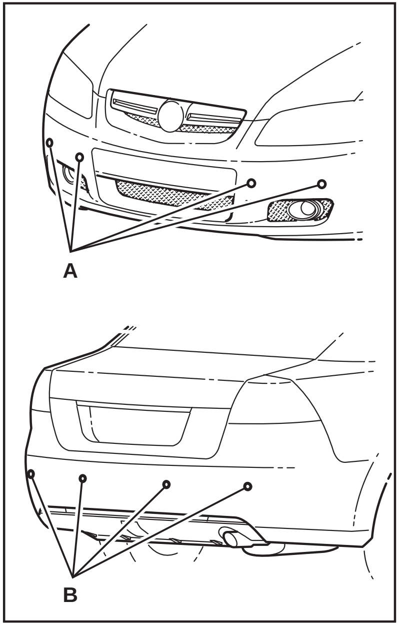
(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Cruise control is cancelled if the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) becomes active, indicated by flashing on the instrument panel display.

Object Detection Systems

Parking Assist



The vehicle may have one of the following two systems:

Rear Park Assist (RPA)

This system is able to detect obstacles at the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

The RPA consists of sensors on the rear (B) bumper, a control unit and a speaker in the rear of the vehicle's interior.

Dual Park Assist (DPA)

This system is able to detect obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle when moving forward and reversing.

The DPA consists of sensors on the front (A) and rear (B) bumpers, a control unit and speakers in the front and rear of the vehicle's interior.

⚠ WARNING

The driver is always responsible for using care and attention while manoeuvring the vehicle. The PA is only an aid and is neither intended nor able to take over any responsibility.

The park sensors may not be able to detect all objects under all conditions, e.g. objects too close to the vehicle, objects above or below the sensors, or objects with a surface that absorbs ultrasonic waves. Additionally, some ambient conditions like ultrasonic waves or heavy rain can cause disruptive reflections from an object's surface. Such objects may not be detected.

Always manoeuvre the vehicle slowly to allow yourself sufficient time to react. The warning tones will sound only while the vehicle's speed is below 15 km/h.

⚠ CAUTION

Sensors are not working when:

- A confirmation tone does not sound.
- The **Park Aid Assist Fault** animation appears on the display.

Check and clean the sensors.

If the problem persists, contact a Holden Dealer.

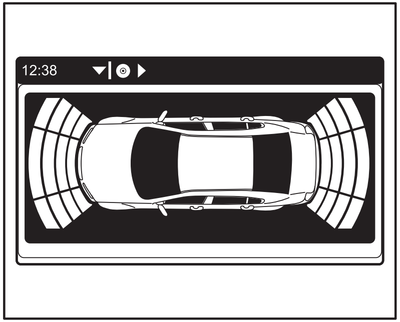
Note:

- The range of the rear sensors is approximately 240 cm.
- The range of the front sensors is approximately 150 cm.

When an object is detected:

- A warning tone sounds.
- As the distance decreases, the repetition rate of the tone increases.

- At a distance of about 30 cm, the warning tone sounds continuously.
- If the distance remains constant, the tone will stop after about 5 seconds.
- If the distance to the object increases, the tone will stop.
- When reverse gear is selected and the rear and front sensors both detect objects, only the closest object will be indicated.
- If two objects at the same distance are detected, the object at the rear of the vehicle will be given priority.



- When reverse is selected, the animation is displayed on the infotainment screen.
- If the sensors are activated, an animation will display the detection range.
- If an object enters the range, the sector will illuminate green. As the distance decreases, additional sectors will illuminate and the colour will change to yellow, orange and finally red.
- When drive is selected, the animation is shown only when the sensors detect an object and the vehicle's speed is below 15 km/h.
- If a short tone is heard when there are no objects visible, it may be due to ground reflections, children or animals. Be aware.
- Keep bumper sensors free from dirt, scratches, grime, ice, frost and snow with a soft cloth.

Operation

Rear Park Assist (RPA)

The RPA is activated automatically when the following occur:

- The ignition is switched on.
- The reverse gear is selected.
- The parking brake is released.

A short single tone from the rear speaker sounds to confirm that the rear sensors are operational.

Dual Park Assist (DPA)

The DPA is activated automatically when the following occur:

- The ignition is switched on.
- A gear is selected.
- The parking brake is released.

Once reverse gear is selected, a single short tone sounds from the rear speaker to confirm that both the rear and front sensors are operational.

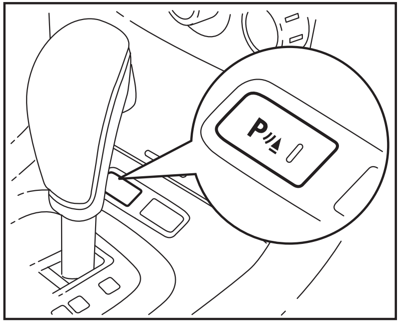
When a forward gear is selected after reversing, the front and rear sensors will remain operational until the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 km/h.

If a forward gear is selected, only the front sensors are activated and the tone will sound from the front speaker.

Note: The DPA:

- Automatically deactivates when the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 km/h.
- Is reactivated if changing from a forward to reverse gear or vice versa, or if the ignition is switched off and then on again.
- When manually deactivated, will not automatically activate until the DPA has been manually reactivated.

Manual adjustment



When the vehicle's speed is below 15 km/h:

- To deactivate the DPA, press P once. The light in the button will go off.
- To reactivate the DPA, press P once. The light in the button will come on and the front sensors will activate.

  Alternatively, select reverse gear.

If the DPA is activated and the light in the P button:

- Does not come on, check that the ignition is switched on, the vehicle is in gear, and the parking brake is not activated.
- Flashes when the button is pressed.

  Contact a Holden Dealer.

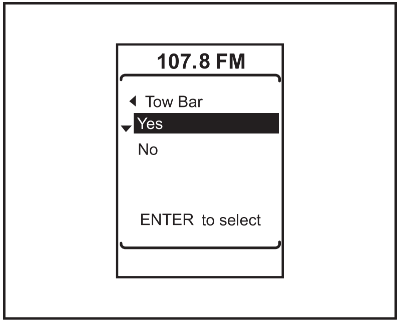
Objects attached to the vehicle

When any device is attached to the rear of the vehicle, such as a trailer or a bicycle rack, the PA will:

- Detect this as an attached object.
- Deactivate automatically about 10 seconds after the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 15 km/h.

- Reactivate automatically when the object is removed, the ignition is switched off then on again, and the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 15 km/h.

Adjustment for a towbar



When a towbar is fitted, the rear park sensors require adjustment to allow for the tow ball tongue:

- Enter the vehicle personalisation menu and select the feature **Tow Bar**.
- Select **Yes** and press the ENTER button.
- Select **No** and press the ENTER button if the tow ball tongue is removed.

Note:

- This adjustment is for Holden approved towbars fitted by a Holden Dealer.
- If a different towbar is fitted, the system may detect it as an attached object and will be deactivated.
- The Holden Dealer fitted accessory, RPA, does not require adjustment for towbar tongue removal.

Rear View Camera (RVC)

The vehicle may have an RVC system.

⚠ WARNING

Never rely solely on the reverse camera when reversing the vehicle.

There is a blind spot that cannot be sensed by the rear view camera.

The reverse camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention to the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle, always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the reverse camera (rear number plate surround), the camera may become misaligned. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

A view of the area behind the vehicle is displayed on the infotainment screen when reverse gear is selected.

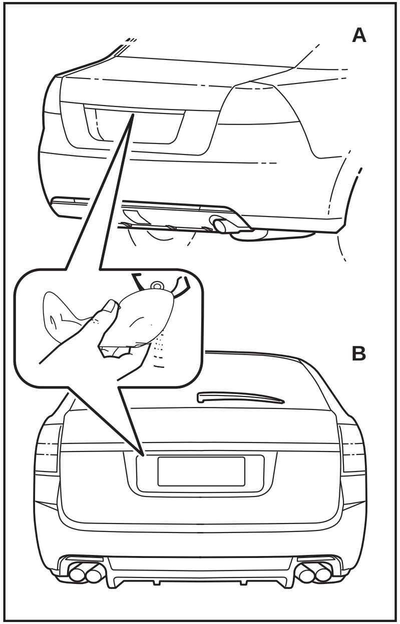
The RVC cannot display objects:

- Close to the corners of the bumper.
- Forward of the camera.
- Higher than the camera.

Note:

- The distance of the objects seen on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- The area displayed depends on the road conditions and the vehicle orientation.

Cleaning



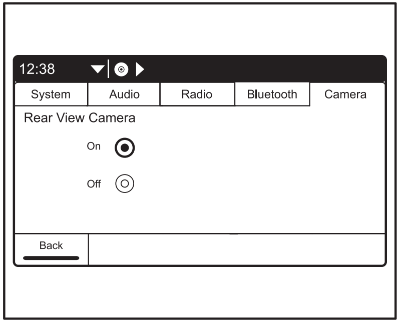
- The camera is located at the top of the rear number plate surround on a Sedan (A) and Sportwagon (B).
- The lens requires regular cleaning to ensure optimum performance.
- Use only a soft cloth, mild soap and water.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use abrasive cleaners or scouring pads as they could scratch the lens, impairing the system's performance.

Operation

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press ⏻ to switch on the infotainment system.



12:38

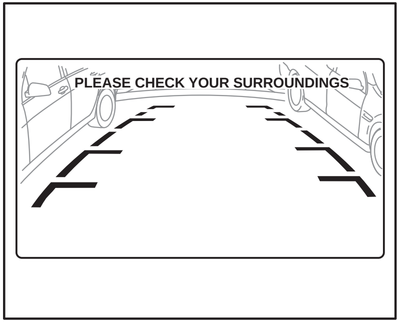
Rear View Camera

On ●

Off ○

3. Press **CONFIG**.
4. Touch **Camera**.
5. Touch **Rear View Camera**.
6. Touch **On** or **Off**.

   The option selected is indicated by ⦿.
7. Touch **Back** to exit.
8. Select reverse gear.



PLEASE CHECK YOUR SURROUNDINGS

9. The camera display appears on the infotainment screen.

Note:

- Objects of different heights will appear to be different distances from the vehicle.
- The grid on the display is to be used as a guide only. It does not represent a set distance from the vehicle.
- The RVC display will override all other operating displays.

- The RVC display may be temporarily interrupted when some audio system or climate control settings are changed.
- The PA animation on the infotainment screen will not be seen when the reverse camera is enabled. See *Parking Assist on page 9-19*.
- The PA warning tones will still be heard when the reverse camera is enabled. See *Parking Assist on page 9-19*.

The reverse camera system may be affected by the following:

- If sun or headlight beams are shining directly into the camera lens.
- If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the camera lens. Contact a Holden Dealer.
- If dirt, snow or ice has built up, clean the lens. See “Cleaning” earlier in this section.

Fuel

⚠ DANGER

EXHAUST WARNING – CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING

Exhaust gases can contain carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas which can cause unconsciousness and even death to both humans and animals.

Gases could be inhaled if the exhaust system on your vehicle is faulty.

To protect against exhaust gases entering the vehicle, the exhaust system and body should be inspected:

- Each time the vehicle is serviced.

(Continued)

DANGER (Continued)

- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system.
- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or rear of the vehicle is damaged.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer if you think the vehicle needs inspecting for any of the above reasons.

Do not sit, or leave children or pets, in a parked vehicle for any extended period of time with the engine running. Do not run the engine in an enclosed space (such as the garage) for any longer than is needed to move the vehicle.

Driving with the boot (Sedan) or tailgate (Sportwagon) open is not recommended. If you must travel with the boot (Sedan) or tailgate

(Continued)

DANGER (Continued)

(Sportwagon) open, close all windows and ensure that the heater controls are set to outside (rather than recirculate), with air directed to the face and the fan on the highest speed. Do not exceed 50 km/h.

⚠ DANGER

FUEL

Fuel is extremely flammable and highly explosive.

Always switch off the vehicle engine and any mobile phones when refuelling.

Do not smoke or allow open flames or sparks near the vehicle when refuelling.

(Continued)

DANGER (Continued)

If fuel fumes are smelt while driving, the cause should be found and corrected without delay by a Holden Dealer.

⚠ WARNING

LPG

LPG is heavier than air and if not dispersed tends to collect in low-lying areas.

Accident or fire

Call the emergency fire services to the scene and keep people away from the vehicle.

While filling

Ensure that there is no gas leakage. If a leak is detected while filling the vehicle, stop filling the vehicle and notify the filling station operator of a potential problem with the pump. If the odour still persists when disconnected, carry out the emergency procedure steps. See “LPG emergency procedures” later in this section.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Take the vehicle to the nearest Holden Dealer for advice.

Note: If frost is present, do not touch the area until the frost has dissipated.

Suspected gas leak

Carry out the emergency procedure steps. See “LPG emergency procedures” later in this section. Once the steps have been followed and the odour is no longer present, take the vehicle to the nearest Holden Dealer for advice.

⚠ CAUTION

FUEL ADDITIVES – Petrol

Various additives are used in the formulation of good quality fuel, and the use of supplementary additives in fuel is not required unless specified by Holden. Under no circumstances should fuel containing the manganese additive known as MMT (methyl cyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl) be used, as this additive is known to cause contamination of catalytic converters and spark plugs and malfunctioning of On-Board-Diagnostic (OBD) systems. The use of fuel additives that are not recommended by Holden may affect your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers that the additives affect the specifications and quality of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL – Petrol

When purchasing such fuel, we recommend that the vehicle be operated on fuel containing no more than 85% ethanol.

Under no circumstances should fuel containing more than these percentages of ethanol be used. Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties, and materials degradation. These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to the vehicle and personal injury. It is also important to note that when ethanol blends are used, fuel consumption can be expected to increase due to the lower energy content of ethanol.

(Continued)

CAUTION (Continued)

The use of fuel containing more than these percentages of ethanol may also affect your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers that the fuel affects the specifications and quality of your vehicle.

The vehicle may be refuelled with E10, E85, and unleaded fuel containing no ethanol. It is acceptable to mix these fuels in any combination.

The starting characteristics of E85 fuel make it unsuitable for use when ambient temperatures fall below −18ºC. In the range of −18ºC to 0ºC you may experience an increase in the time it takes for the engine to start.

The use of any fuel other than the fuel specified may seriously damage the vehicle and may void

(Continued)

CAUTION (Continued)

the warranty. See *Recommended Fuel on page 9-29*. Only clean fuel of good quality should be used.

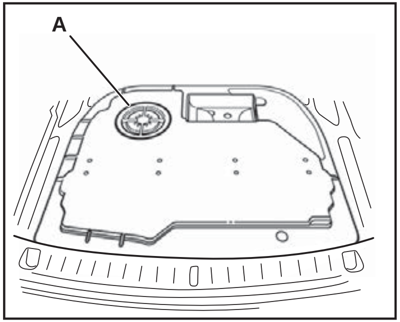
LPG emergency procedures

Manual service valve

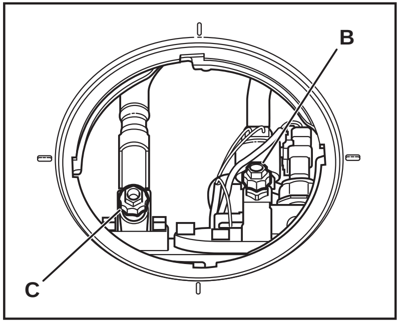
LPG has an odour that enables any leaks in the vehicle's LPG system to be detected.

If this odour is detected in or around the vehicle, or in the event of an accident, fire or other abnormal circumstance:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the boot.
3. Lift the carpet.



4. Remove the service valve access cover (A) by rotating anticlockwise.



5. Rotate the outlet service valve (B) on the LPG tank clockwise to close.

Your vehicle may have an inlet service valve.

1. Rotate the inlet service valve (C) on the LPG tank clockwise to close.
2. Replace the service valve access cover (A).

Note: When the service valves are closed, the LPG tank is isolated from the rest of the LPG system and the vehicle cannot be started.

3. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Recommended Fuel

Unleaded petrol

Use unleaded petrol of regular 91 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher.

Use of Premium unleaded petrol (95 RON or higher) may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

E85/ethanol

E85 should meet the requirements of the Fuel Quality Standards Act 2000. Filling the fuel tank with fuel mixtures that do not meet these requirements can affect driveability and could cause to light up.

For more information on E85 and availability, visit:
www.holden.com.au

LPG

LPG should meet the LPG Australia Specification for Liquefied Petroleum Gas for Automotive use 2004. LPG blends may vary from time to time and may affect vehicle performance and range.

LPG fuel system

Introduction

The Holden LPG fuel system has been designed to comply with the relevant Australian Standard.

It is recommended that you advise your insurance company that your new vehicle operates on LPG as failure to do so may invalidate your insurance policy.

Your vehicle is required to display the LPG decal on both the front and rear number plates.

When switching on the ignition, the opening of the solenoid valves at the front and rear of the vehicle may be heard. This is normal.

LPG warm-up mode

When starting the vehicle from cold, LPG warm-up mode may activate. During warm-up mode, reduced engine power may be noticeable. A message will display on the instrument panel. See “LPG cold start animations” under *Fuel System Messages on page 5-20*. Once warm-up mode is complete, a message is also displayed.

Cold conditions

- Water vapour, visible as steam from the exhaust, may be more noticeable in cold conditions.
- When the vehicle is switched off, shortly after starting in cold temperatures, a small quantity of LPG may be released from the vaporiser, located behind the right front wheel. An odour may be detected. This is normal and does not indicate a leak unless it persists.

Suspected gas leak

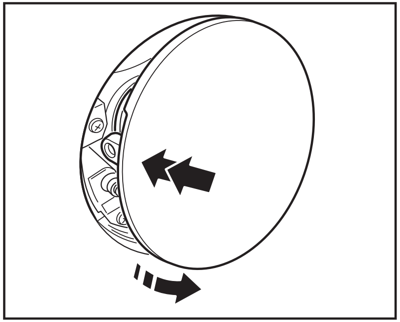
Carry out the emergency procedure. See “LPG emergency procedures” under *Fuel on page 9-26*.

Vehicle storage

If the vehicle is to be stored for a long time, rotate the outlet service valve (B) to the closed position. See “LPG emergency procedures” under *Fuel on page 9-26*.

Filling the Tank

Fuel filler flap



To open the fuel filler flap:

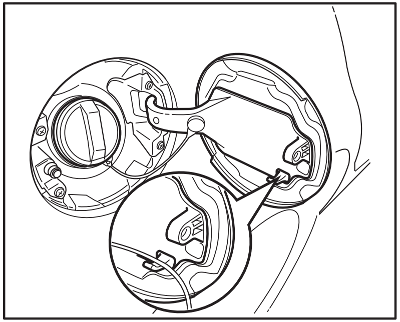
1. Unlock the vehicle.
2. Push on the rear edge of the fuel filler flap located on the right side of the vehicle.
3. To close, push on the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Petrol

Always fill the fuel tank at the intermediate or fast fill rate. Do not add any more fuel after the fuel filler first clicks off or fuel blows back. This allows room for the fuel to expand inside the tank.

Only trickle-fill fuel tanks when the vehicle is to be driven for more than 50 km immediately after the tank is filled. However, this is not recommended on days over 30°C.

Wipe any overflowing fuel off the vehicle immediately. Replace the fuel cap and close the fuel opening, then spray or splash with water.



The fuel cap, under the fuel filler flap, is a ratchet type cap that is tethered to the vehicle.

1. To open, rotate the cap anticlockwise.
2. Hang the tether over the hook on the fuel filler flap.
3. After refilling, tighten the cap by rotating clockwise until a clicking noise is heard.
4. Close the fuel filler flap.

Tank capacity

See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-9*.

LPG

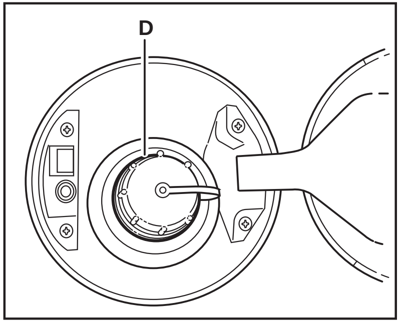
⚠ WARNING

Observe the filling instructions and warnings displayed at the filling station.

Ensure there are no flames or sparks in the vicinity of the vehicle.

Note: Before filling with LPG, ensure the vehicle is on level ground.

1. Switch off the engine.



2. Remove the LPG filler dust cap (D) by rotating anticlockwise.
3. Connect the LPG filler nozzle, then squeeze and hold the trigger.
4. Release the trigger when the bowser automatically shuts off.

⚠ WARNING

Do not continue trying to add more LPG once the bowser automatically shuts off.

Note:

- A small discharge of gas from the nozzle is normal.
- The AFL (Automatic Fill Limiter) shuts off the LPG flow when the LPG cylinder is 80% full. This is to allow for liquid expansion.
- LPG bowser pressure can vary and may result in bowser shut-off when the LPG cylinder is less than 80% full.
- The volume of LPG required to fill the LPG tank (as indicated on the LPG bowser) can vary from fill to fill, depending on conditions such as temperature and fuel composition.

5. Disconnect the LPG filler nozzle.
6. Screw the LPG filler dust cap back on.

Note: Do not overtighten the LPG filler dust cap.

Tank capacity

See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-9*.

Towing

Trailer Towing

Trailer towing

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as caravans, boat trailers or any other special-purpose trailer.

Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

For recommended and mandatory towing equipment, see “Towing and loading equipment” later in this section.

A Holden Dealer will assist with the supply and installation of towing equipment.

Maximum towing capacities (kg) – braked trailer

Engine	**3.0L V6**	**3.6L V6**		**6.0L V8**	
Transmission	**Automatic**	**Manual**	**Automatic**	**Manual**	**Automatic**
Sedan	1200 (*1600)	1600	2100	1600	2100
Sedan with LPG	-	-	2100	-	-
Sportwagon	1200 (*1600)	-	2100	1600	2100
Sportwagon with LPG	-	-	2100	-	-

Note:

- *1600 kg towing capacity is standard on Omega Z-Series and optional on Omega and Berlina models with the installation of the accessory auxiliary cooling package.
- The maximum unbraked towing capacity for all vehicles is 750 kg.

Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may void the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle. See “Towing and loading equipment” later in this section.

⚠ **WARNING**

Holden towing equipment is recommended where it is available. Where it is not available, no recommendation is made as to the make of equipment which should be used. Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or injury caused by use of such equipment. The use of such equipment may void your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

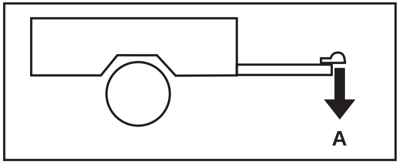
Manual transmission

When towing, do not exceed 100 km/h. Local laws may require a lower maximum speed.

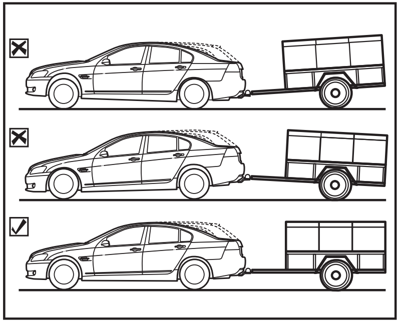
Automatic transmission

For the recommended automatic shift modes to use when towing, see *Selector Lever on page 9-6*.

Trailer recommendations



A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the towbar. This weight is called the towbar ball weight or tow ball load (A).



The tow ball load should be between 5% and 10% of the loaded trailer weight. Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards inside the trailer to change the balance.

If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.

Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow ball load is included. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight on page 12-5*.

If maximum axle loads are exceeded, weight should be removed from the rear of the vehicle and transferred onto the trailer.

Ensure the weight of the packed trailer is not greater than the towing capacity of the Holden-approved towbar package fitted to the vehicle.

Towing and loading equipment

Tow load	Mandatory equipment	Recommended equipment
Up to 1,200 kg	Holden 1,200 kg rated tow bar	
	Holden trailer wiring harness	
	Brakes on the trailer if the aggregate trailer mass (ATM) is more than 750 kg	
Between 1,201 kg and 1,600 kg	Holden 2,100 kg rated towbar	Load distribution hitch
	Holden trailer wiring harness	Superlift shock absorbers (Sedan) Adjust pressure per Note 1 on the following page up to a maximum pressure of 650 kPa.
	Brakes on the trailer	
	Auxiliary cooling package. See “Maximum towing capacities” earlier in this section.	
Between 1,601 kg and 2,100 kg	Holden 2,100 kg rated towbar	Superlift shock absorbers (Sedan) Adjust pressure per Note 1 on the following page up to a maximum pressure of 650 kPa.
	Holden trailer wiring harness	
	Brakes on the trailer	
		Load distribution hitch

Recommended trailer wiring harness maximum loads

Output Circuit	Maximum circuit rating at 12 V
Trailer brakes	3.5 A
Trailer left indicator	1.8 A
Trailer right indicator	1.8 A
Trailer reverse indicator	3.5 A
Trailer tail lights	5.7 A

Load distribution hitch

The vehicle may have a load distribution hitch.

The load distribution hitch must be removed when not in use. Do not leave the hitch assembly in the receiver unless a trailer is attached.

A load distribution hitch transfers load to the vehicle’s front wheels, aiding brake performance. This also enables more load to be carried in the vehicle without exceeding the rear axle load limit.

Superlift shock absorbers (Sedan)

The vehicle may have superlift shock absorbers.

They do not increase the carrying capacity of the vehicle. Do not exceed maximum loads for the vehicle. Overloading of axle parts may shorten the life of the vehicle.

Note:

1. Superlift shock absorbers help to raise the rear of the vehicle and improve ground clearance. However, as superlift pressure is increased, the weight distribution changes, i.e. the proportion of load on the rear axle increases. This means that very high superlift pressures combined with a fully laden vehicle may exceed the rear axle load limit. Do not exceed the maximum pressure of 650 kPa.
2. Adjust superlift inflation pressure so that the bottom edges of the vehicle doors are horizontal. Do not exceed the maximum pressure of 650 kPa.
3. Superlift air pressure must never be less than 100 kPa or the airbags will be torn, even when no trailer is attached to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

At no time may the total front or rear axle load exceed the maximum values specified. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight on page 12-5*.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Superlift shock absorber (Sedan) inflation pressure should never operate below the minimum or above the maximum values shown on the tag attached to the inflation valve.

Towing precautions

- When heavily loading the vehicle or when towing, inflate tyres to the maximum recommended pressure. See “Tyre placard” under *Wheels and Tyres on page 10-45*.
- Ensure that a load distribution hitch is correctly distributing the tow ball load. See “Towing and loading equipment” earlier in this section.
- Ensure that superlift shock absorbers are adjusted correctly. See “Superlift shock absorbers” earlier in this section.
- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 N•m (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short-distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling, and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.
- Headlights may need re-aiming after the loaded trailer has been hitched, particularly if a load distribution hitch is not used.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes when descending steep hills.
- Automatic transmission: At highway speeds it is recommended that cruise control is used. Cruise control prevents the transmission from unnecessarily changing gears, particularly on slopes. See *Selector Lever on page 9-6* for further recommendations when towing.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches.
- The M10 anti-rattle bolt and nut, should be removed when towing to prevent damage to the bolt or tow bar tongue.
- If a towbar is removed, have any mounting holes in the underbody sealed to prevent entry of exhaust fumes, dust and water.

- Parking Assist (PA) will require adjustment to allow for the installation or removal of the towbar tongue. See “Adjustment for a towbar” under *Parking Assist on page 9-19*.

  The Holden Dealer fitted accessory, Rear Park Assist (RPA), does not require adjustment for towbar tongue removal.

Trailer brakes

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with an aggregate trailer mass (ATM) of more than 750 kg.
- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

Running-in when towing

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.

If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission, or rear axle.

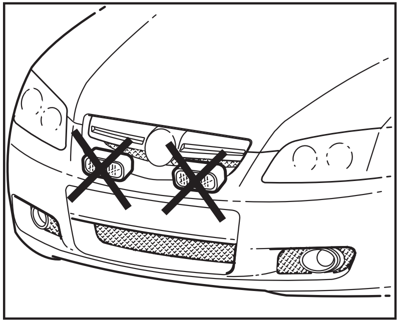
Vehicle maintenance

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service/ Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glovebox.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Fitting driving lights or insect screens



Do not fit any accessory over the upper or lower air intakes at the front of the vehicle, as this may affect engine cooling.

⚠ CAUTION

In high load and high temperature applications (e.g. towing), no objects should be fitted over the upper or lower air intake at the front of the vehicle, as this could affect cooling.

Fitting roo/nudge bars

If a roo/nudge bar is to be fitted, it is critical that the Holden approved roo/nudge bar is used. Other types must not be fitted.

The Holden roo/nudge bar is available from a Holden Dealer and has been compatibility tested with the vehicle's design, including the Holden airbag system.

⚠ WARNING

Fitting other types of roo/nudge bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance, and engine cooling.

Roo/nudge bars:

- Should not be fitted to vehicles operating in suburban areas, as they increase the risk of injury to a pedestrian in the event of a collision.
- Are only recommended for country/outback areas, where additional protection from straying animals is required.

Vehicle Care

General Information

General Information 10-2
Emission Information 10-2
Emission Control System 10-2

Vehicle Checks

Bonnet 10-3
Engine Compartment Overview 10-5
Engine Cover 10-6
Engine Oil 10-7
Engine Coolant 10-8
Engine Overheating 10-10
Power Steering Fluid 10-14
Washer Fluid 10-15
Brake Fluid 10-16
Battery 10-17

Bulb Replacement

Bulb Replacement 10-19
Headlights 10-21
Front Turn Signal Lights 10-24
Side Marker Lights 10-25
Tail lights 10-25
Tail Lights, Turn Signals, Stoplights and Reverse Lights 10-30
Number Plate Light 10-31
Interior Lights 10-32

Electrical System

Fuses 10-34

Vehicle Tools

Tools 10-42

Wheels and Tyres

Wheels and Tyres 10-45
Tyre Pressure 10-46
Tread Depth 10-47
Tyre Rotation 10-47
Buying New Tyres 10-48
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance 10-48
Tyre Chains 10-48
Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit 10-49
Tyre Changing 10-55

Jump Starting

Jump Starting 10-76

Towing

Towing the Vehicle 10-79

Appearance Care

Exterior Care 10-80
Interior Care 10-83
Floor Mats 10-84

General Information

Where specified, use only Holden genuine parts and accessories.

Emission Information

The emission control systems are designed to reduce the amount of hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) emitted from the engine and fuel system into the atmosphere. HC and NOx, when exposed to sunlight under certain conditions, contribute to photochemical smog. In addition, CO is toxic to inhale.

Emission Control System

Major emission control systems that the vehicle may have are:

- Evaporative emission control system This system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapour from the fuel system and recycle the vapours through the normal combustion process.
- Crankcase emission control system This system is designed to prevent blow-by gases from escaping into the atmosphere and recycle them through the combustion process.
- Exhaust emission control system The various components of this system operate collectively to limit HC, CO and NOx emissions in the exhaust gas. The exhaust emission control system consists of components including electronic control of spark, fuel and idle speed. In addition, vehicles have a catalytic converter and a closed loop mixture control system.

It is recommended that servicing and repairs of fuel or emission systems be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer.

Owner responsibility

The vehicle's engine, engine control system, and exhaust system must NOT be modified in any way.

⚠ WARNING

Any person who removes, modifies or defeats any part of the emission control system may be contravening Australian Design Rules. It is also illegal to drive a vehicle modified in this way.

Maintenance requirements

Have the vehicle serviced at the frequency shown in the Maintenance schedule in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that servicing be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer, who will maintain the vehicle's emission control system as per the Service/Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that all fluid levels are checked weekly.

Reducing fuel consumption

Engine

Have the vehicle serviced regularly in accordance with the maintenance schedule in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Transmission

For vehicles fitted with a manual transmission, on level roads with an unladen vehicle it is permissible to drive off in 2nd gear in the interests of fuel economy.

Tyre pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures.

Wheel alignment

Maintain correct front and rear wheel alignment.

Warm-ups and idling

Avoid long engine warm-ups. They are unnecessary and waste fuel.

Avoid long engine idling.

Accelerating, driving and braking

Accelerate gently and avoid rapid starts.

Drive the vehicle at steady speeds where possible (after running-in).

Manual transmission: It is desirable to reach top gear as soon as possible, but do not force the engine to labour in top gear.

Riding the brake

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal when you do not intend to brake.

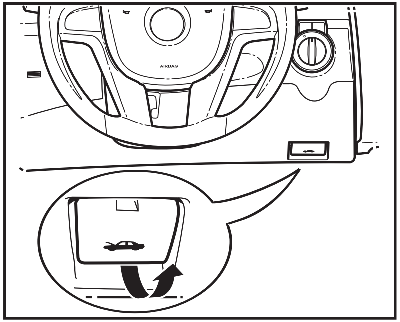
Air conditioning

Switch off the air conditioning when not required. However, once every 2 weeks, with the engine running, switch the air conditioning on for 5 to 10 minutes to lubricate the seals (even in winter).

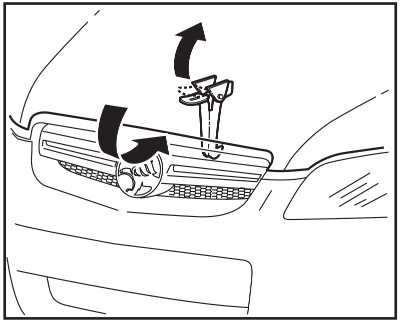
Vehicle Checks

Bonnet

Opening



Pull the lever towards you.



Push up on the front edge of the release catch and lift. Gas struts automatically take over to lift and hold the bonnet in the open position.

Closing

> **⚠ WARNING**
>
> To avoid injury and/or damage to the vehicle, check each time, before the bonnet is closed, that the contact area is unobstructed.

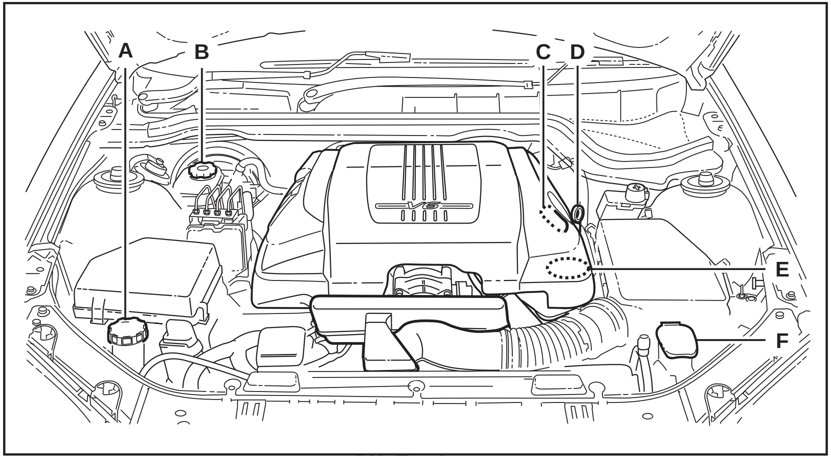
Lower the bonnet and allow it to drop into the catch. Check that the bonnet is engaged.

> **⚠ WARNING**
>
> If while driving you notice that the bonnet is not properly closed, pull the vehicle over to the side of the road at the earliest possible moment and close the bonnet correctly.

Note:

- If the wiring of the bonnet switch is damaged or tampered with, it will be detected by the vehicle control system. The alarm will sound when the alarm system is armed.
- If the bonnet is not engaged when the vehicle is locked, 🔒 will flash immediately. Unlock the vehicle, close the bonnet securely, and relock.

Engine Compartment Overview



V6 Engine

A. Engine coolant reservoir, see *Engine Coolant on page 10-8*

B. Clutch/brake fluid reservoir, see *Brake Fluid on page 10-16*

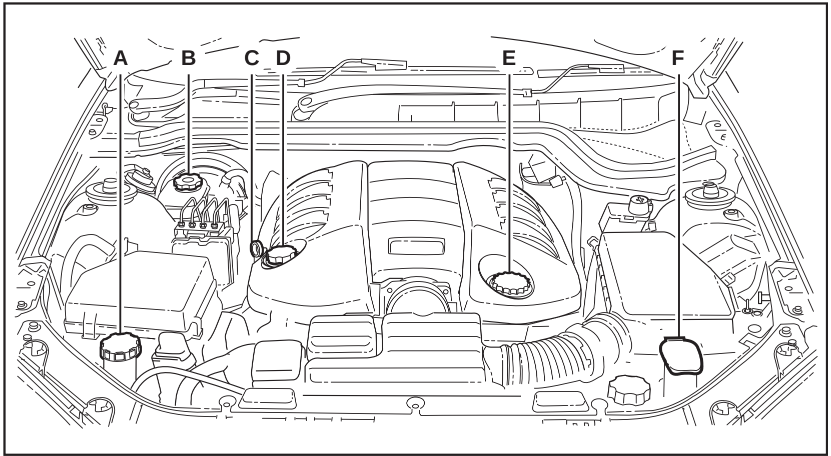
C. Engine oil filler cap, see *Engine Oil on page 10-7*

D. Dipstick for engine oil, see *Engine Oil on page 10-7*

E. Power steering fluid reservoir, see *Power Steering Fluid on page 10-14*

For access to the cap, see *Engine Cover on page 10-6*

F. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir, see *Washer Fluid on page 10-15*



V8 Engine

A. Engine coolant reservoir, see *Engine Coolant on page 10-8*

B. Clutch/brake fluid reservoir, see *Brake Fluid on page 10-16*

C. Dipstick for engine oil, see *Engine Oil on page 10-7*

D. Engine oil filler cap, see *Engine Oil on page 10-7*

E. Power steering fluid reservoir, see *Power Steering Fluid on page 10-14*

F. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir, see *Washer Fluid on page 10-15*

Engine Cover

⚠ WARNING

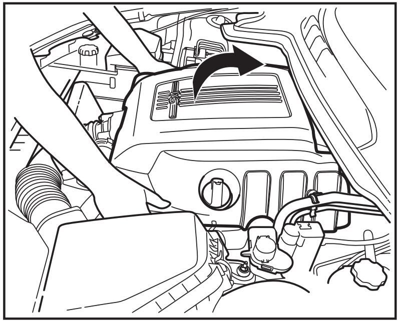
Do not place hands on any under-bonnet components when the engine is HOT or RUNNING.

Before removing the engine cover, allow the engine to cool sufficiently.

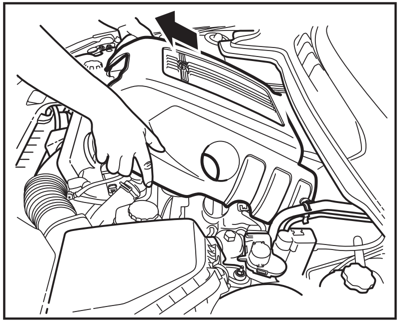
Removal

Remove the engine cover to access the power steering and radiator caps.

1. Switch off the ignition and remove the key.
2. Place the gear lever in **P** position and apply the parking brake firmly.

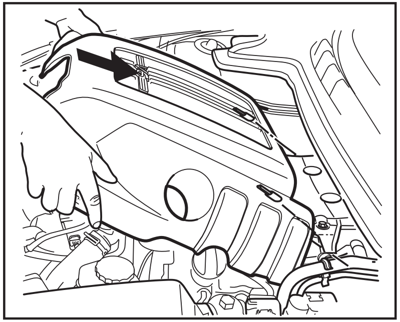


3. Open the bonnet. Lift the cover upwards approximately 15 cm.



4. Pull the cover towards the front of the vehicle.

Replacement



1. Place the cover over the rear guide tabs.
2. Lower the front of the cover so that the hole on the left side slides over the oil filler cap.
3. Press down on both front corners to engage the fasteners. Pull upwards on the cover to ensure it is secure.

Engine Oil

Checking oil level

The engine must be at operating temperature and the ignition switched off for at least 10 minutes.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Remove the dipstick and wipe clean.
3. Insert the dipstick firmly.
4. Remove and read the oil level. The level should be between the area/marks (A) and (B). Add oil if the level is at area/mark (A).

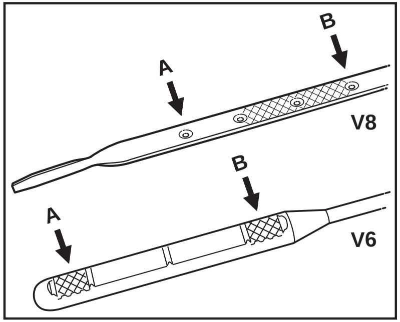
Dilution

When a vehicle is frequently driven on short trips, the engine often fails to reach normal operating temperatures.

- The oil becomes diluted by fuel and moisture that settles in the oil pan.

- This may raise the oil level creating a false reading on the engine oil dipstick.

For example, in a vehicle that has accumulated 1,500 km of short distance or intermittent city operation and has consumed a normal amount of oil, the level may not have dropped from the area/mark (B), due to dilution. If this vehicle is driven for some distance at highway speeds the dilution elements evaporate, resulting in a sudden drop in oil level.



Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.

A. Add mark

B. Upper mark

Adding engine oil

See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2* and *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-9*.

1. Rotate the engine oil filler cap anticlockwise and remove.
2. Add enough oil to reach within the area/mark (B).
3. Check the level on the dipstick and add further oil if necessary.

   The engine oil must not exceed the area/mark (B).

⚠ CAUTION

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

4. Replace the engine oil filler cap tightly by rotating clockwise.

Note: The use of non-detergent and other low quality oils, run-in oil, tune up compounds, friction reducing compounds and other supplemental additives is not recommended. Their use increases costs, may be detrimental to the operation of the vehicle, and may void the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended fluid to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

Engine oil change intervals

Refer to the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Engine Coolant

Note: For all engine variants, the coolant reservoir is in the same position within the engine compartment.

Engine coolant level

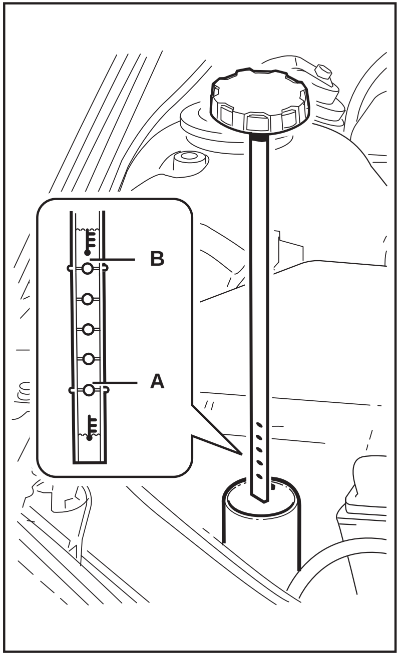
Check the coolant level at least once a week. The cap is yellow with the word **DEXCOOL**.

Checking coolant level

⚠ WARNING

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious burns.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Rotate the coolant cap one-eighth of a turn anticlockwise and slowly pull out the dipstick.
3. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be at or above the minimum mark (A). When the engine is warm, the level should be between half-full and the maximum mark (B).



Adding coolant

⚠ CAUTION

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

For engine coolant specifications and water-to-coolant ratio, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2*. Always use the specified ratio.

1. Mix a solution of Holden coolant and clean fresh water.
2. Add coolant into the coolant dipstick tube (where the dipstick is stored).
3. Check the level on the dipstick and add further coolant if necessary.

   The fluid level must not exceed the maximum mark (B).
4. Replace the dipstick.

5. Rotate the cap one-eighth of a turn clockwise until secure and the word DEXCOOL can be read from the front of the vehicle.

In emergency situations, plain clean fresh water may be used temporarily until the correct Holden coolant is obtained. Replace as soon as possible from the nearest Holden Dealer.

If the coolant requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer.

How the engine coolant works

- The coolant contains special corrosion inhibitors.
- Coolant helps the cooling system in hot weather by increasing the boiling point.
- Coolant protects against freezing down to –37°C, provided the specified concentration is maintained.

⚠ WARNING

Corrosion inhibitors and antifreeze fluids are poisonous. Use extreme care when handling. If swallowed, seek medical attention. Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious burns.

If the engine overheats or loses coolant, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-10*.

Engine Overheating

⚠ CAUTION

Immediate action is required if the engine overheats. This is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The engine temperature gauge needle moving over to the **H**
- The animated warning **Engine Temp Hot** appearing on the central display, see *Engine Cooling System Messages on page 5-17*
- Steam escaping from under the bonnet
- A loss of power
- A loud knocking or pinging noise

Continued driving EVEN FOR A SHORT TIME could cause engine damage. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and perform the cooling system checks.

⚠ DANGER

Do not open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious burns. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before opening the bonnet.

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious burns.

Do not place hands near under-bonnet components, as the cooling fan may start working unexpectedly even when the engine is not running and the ignition is switched off.

Cooling system checks

1. Leave the engine idling.
2. Ensure that the gear lever is in **P** or neutral and apply the parking brake.
3. Exit the vehicle and check that the cooling fan is audibly working.

If the fan is working and the engine temperature gauge needle has not returned to its normal position within a few minutes:

1. Switch off the ignition and remove the key.
2. Look for leaks at the radiator hoses and connections, heater hoses and connections, radiator and water pump.

⚠ WARNING

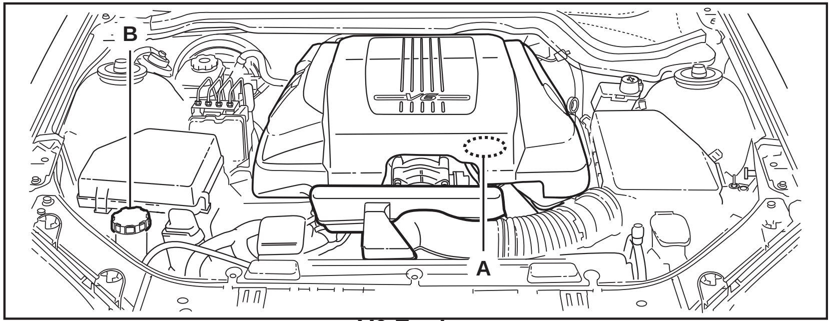
Take care when checking these areas as they may still be hot.

3. Check the air intake area in the front bumper to ensure that it is clear. See Air intake under *Exterior Care on page 10-80*.
4. If you do not find anything wrong, check the engine coolant level. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-8*.
5. DO NOT run the engine until any problems have been corrected.

Low coolant level

⚠ DANGER

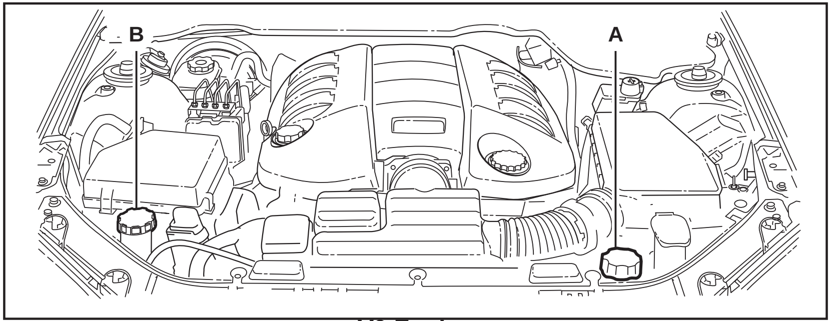
Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious burns.



V6 Engine

When the engine is cool, check the coolant reservoir level and radiator level and fill as follows:

Note: For all engine variants, the coolant reservoir is in the same position within the engine compartment.



V8 Engine

1. Check the coolant reservoir level (B). Add coolant if low. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-8*.

⚠ DANGER

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious burns.

(Continued)

DANGER (Continued)

Remove the engine cover if required. See *Engine Cover on page 10-6*.

2. Locate the radiator cap (A).
3. Cover the cap with a thick cloth and rotate slowly anticlockwise to remove.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

4. As well as adding coolant to the coolant reservoir, add coolant directly through the radiator cap opening until full.
5. Wait 30 seconds for the coolant to settle.
6. Add more coolant if the level drops.

⚠ CAUTION

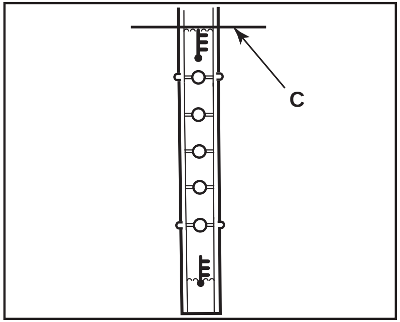
Take care not to spill coolant on the accessory drive belts.

If a spill occurs, rinse the belts immediately with fresh water.

7. Start the engine.

8. Add coolant through the radiator cap opening until full.

   Wait 30 seconds and top up if the level drops.
9. Replace the radiator cap.
10. Switch off the ignition.



11. Check the coolant reservoir dipstick and add further coolant if necessary, up to level (C).

Note: Filling to this level provides additional coolant to allow for any air that may remain in the cooling system.

Check the coolant reservoir level for the next two days.

If the coolant requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer.

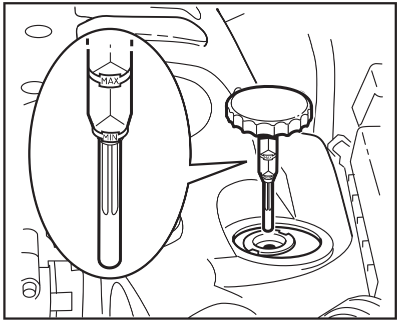
Note: The following may cause the engine to temporarily operate at high temperatures, especially on hot days:

- Climbing a long hill.
- Stopping immediately after high-speed driving.
- Idling for long periods in traffic.
- Towing a heavily laden trailer or caravan.

If the engine temperature gauge shows H, switch off the air conditioning.

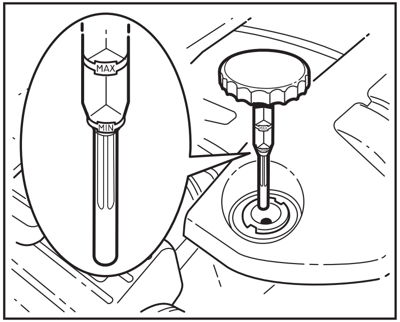
Power Steering Fluid

Checking fluid level



V6 engine shown

Drive the vehicle for at least 20 minutes to ensure the fluid is warm. Checking the level when cold is not recommended.



V8 engine shown

1. Wipe the sides of the cap clean.

⚠ CAUTION

Extremely small amounts of contamination can cause steering system damage and cause it to not work properly.

Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluid side of the reservoir cap/dipstick or enter the reservoir.

2. Rotate the cap anticlockwise.
3. Remove and read the fluid level. When the engine is hot, the level should be at **MAX**.

   When the engine is cold, the fluid level must be between **MIN** and **MAX**.

Adding power steering fluid

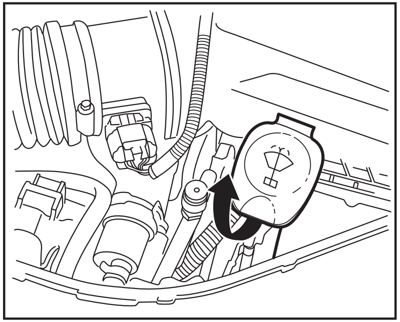
Use only Holden specified power steering fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2*.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Add power steering fluid.

   Do not overfill the reservoir.
3. Secure the cap and clean up any spilt fluid.

If the power steering fluid requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer.

Washer Fluid



The washer fluid reservoir supplies water to the front windscreen washer and rear window washer (Sportwagon).

Check the fluid level weekly.

Adding washer fluid

1. Use the correct amount of washer fluid additive. Refer to a Holden Dealer.

   Do not use ordinary soap or detergent as they froth up and damage the wiper blades.

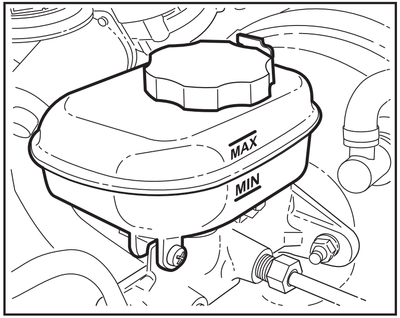
2. Secure the cap.

Brake Fluid

(Automatic transmission)

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilt.

Checking the brake fluid level



Check the brake fluid level weekly.

The level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If the fluid level is correct, do not remove the reservoir cap, as brake fluid exposed to the atmosphere will quickly absorb moisture.

Adding brake fluid

Use heavy duty brake fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2*.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Wipe the sides of the cap clean.
3. Rotate anticlockwise to remove.
4. Top up with heavy duty brake fluid.

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> Use only new brake fluid. Use of old, used or inferior brake fluid may endanger the functioning of the brake system.

5. Secure the cap and clean up any spilt fluid.

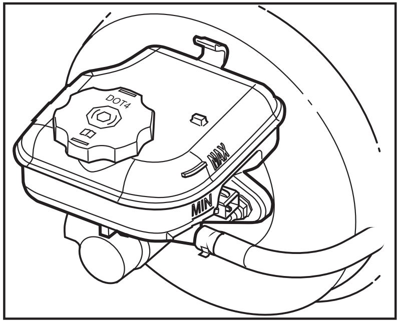
If the brake fluid requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

Clutch/brake fluid

(Manual transmission)

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> Clutch/brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilt.

Checking the clutch/brake fluid level



Check the clutch/brake fluid reservoir weekly.

The level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If the fluid level is correct, do not remove the reservoir cap, as brake fluid exposed to the atmosphere will quickly absorb moisture.

Adding clutch/brake fluid

Use heavy duty brake fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2*.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Wipe the sides of the cap clean.
3. Rotate anticlockwise to remove.
4. Top up with heavy duty brake fluid.

⚠ WARNING

Use only new brake fluid. Use of old, used or inferior brake fluid may endanger the functioning of the brake system.

5. Secure the cap and clean up any spilt fluid.

If the clutch/brake fluid requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

Battery

⚠ WARNING

Batteries emit an explosive gas mixture which may ignite. Therefore you should keep sparks and flames away from the battery at all times. Never smoke near a battery.

Batteries contain sulphuric acid. If acid contacts skin or clothing, flush immediately with plenty of water. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water and contact a doctor immediately. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash off immediately.

Take care with all metal objects and tools including items you may wear (for example jewellery, rings and metal watch bands) near battery terminals.

Battery replacement

> **⚠ WARNING**
>
> A specifically developed battery with a ventilation system is required for this vehicle. Any other standard battery may cause explosive gases to enter the boot or passenger cabin.
>
> Do not remove the caps on the top of the battery. The battery supplied in the vehicle is maintenance free and does not require checking or filling.
>
> The battery vent tube must be installed correctly to ensure that the explosive gases are vented outside the vehicle.
>
> Only use a manufacturer recommended battery as a replacement, otherwise the electric power management (EPM) system may not operate correctly.

For replacement, refer to a Holden Dealer or authorised repairer.

The battery is located inside the boot (Sedan) or in the cargo area (Sportwagon), on the left, behind an access panel. For removal (Sportwagon), see “Sportwagon taillight access” under *Tail lights on page 10-25*.

Battery disconnection

The battery may discharge if the vehicle is not used for approximately six weeks.

If the battery is disconnected it may discharge after approximately 12 weeks. Trickle feed on a battery charger overnight before installing back into the vehicle.

If the battery is disconnected or flat, the tailgate (Sportwagon) will not open normally. See “Manual tailgate release” under *Tailgate (Sportwagon) on page 2-9*.

If the battery is disconnected:

- Some trip computer displays will be reset.
- Some personal identity key settings may be forgotten. The driver’s settings will be remembered the next time the features are adjusted. See “Personal identity keys” under *Keys on page 2-1*.

For emergency starting when the battery is flat, see *Jump Starting on page 10-76*.

Bulb Replacement

Contact a trained service technician if unsure about the bulb replacement process.

When replacing bulbs:

- Switch off the ignition and remove the key.
- Turn off related switches.
- Fit bulbs of the specified wattage only.
- Do not touch bulbs or reflectors with bare hands.
- Clean stained bulbs with methylated spirits.

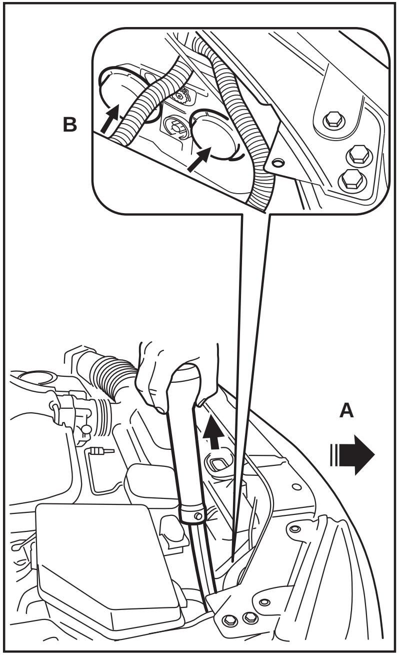
Bulbs to be changed by a Holden Dealer

- Fog lights
- Instrument panel lights
- Rear high level stop lights
- Boot lights (Sedan)
- Sun visor lights
- Footwell lights
- Exterior mirror lights
- Front interior dome/reading lights

⚠ CAUTION

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior light lenses after rain or after washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the light, allowing a fine mist to form on the inside surface of the lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the light is on. If water does collect inside the light, contact a Holden Dealer.

Front lights

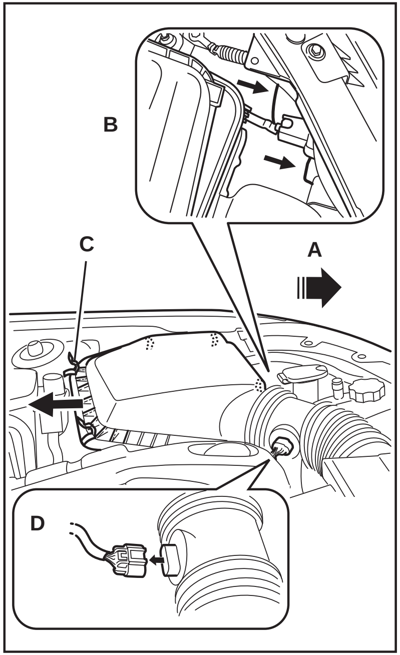


A. Front of vehicle

B. Location of headlight bulbs, driver side

1. Open the bonnet and locate the coolant reservoir to access:
   - Front parking bulbs
   - Front turn signal bulbs
   - High and low beam bulbs
2. Pull up on the coolant reservoir filler neck (including the cap).
3. Drain the filler neck before pulling out.

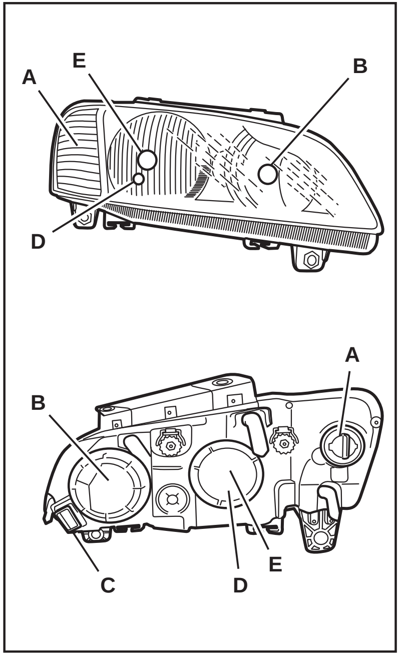
   Place a clean rag over the opening of the coolant reservoir.
4. Unclip the air filter box cover (C) and move rearward.
5. Disconnect the air flow meter connector (D) (V8 only).



A. Front of vehicle

B. Location of headlight bulbs, passenger side

Front light assembly



Driver side shown

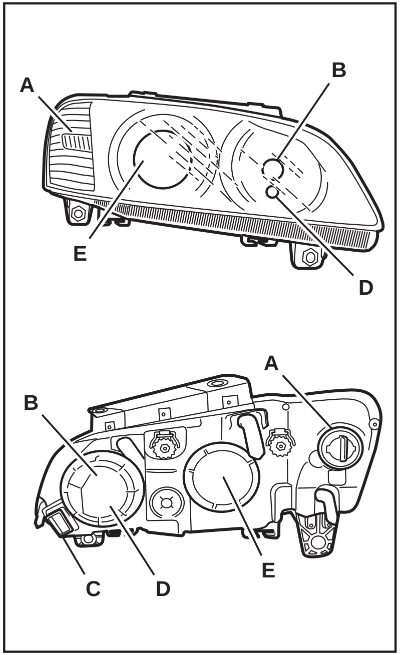
A. Front turn signal (PY21W amber bulb)

B. Headlight inboard high beam (H9 bulb, 65W)

C. Headlight wiring connector

D. Parking lights (W5W bulb)

E. Headlight outboard low beam (H7 bulb, 55W)



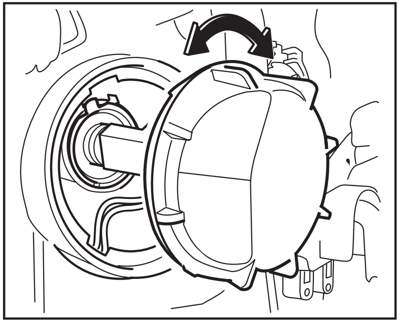
Driver side shown

Depending on the model variant, the parking light bulb (D) may be in either of two positions.

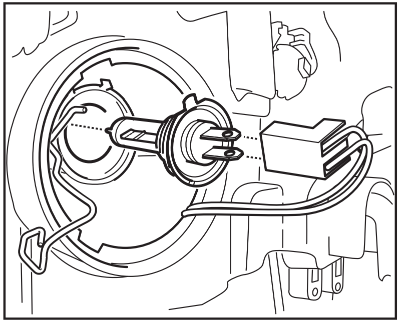
Headlights

Outboard low beam

1. To access the headlights, see “Front lights” under *Bulb Replacement on page 10-19* and follow the steps.



2. Rotate the outboard dust cap anticlockwise and remove.



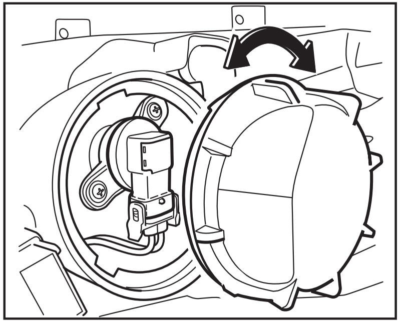
3. Pull to remove the wiring harness connector from the rear of the bulb.
4. Press and unclip the bulb spring retainer and pivot clear of the bulb.

Note: Check the orientation of the bulb tang for replacement.

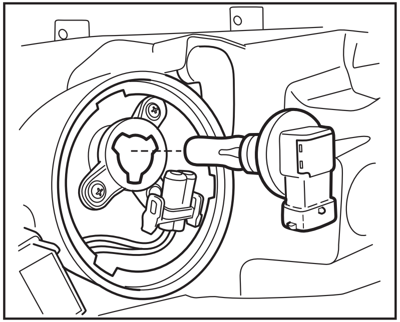
5. Remove the bulb from the headlight.
6. Fit the new bulb into the headlight, ensuring the location tang is located correctly.
7. Refit the bulb spring retainer into its original position.
8. Install the wiring harness connector and dust cap (ensuring the rubber seal is in place).
9. Install components removed in Step 1.
10. Check light operation.

Inboard high beam

1. To access the headlights, see “Front lights” under *Bulb Replacement on page 10-19* and follow the steps.



2. Rotate the inboard dust cap anticlockwise and remove.
3. Remove the wiring harness connector by squeezing the two tangs on the harness connector and pulling the connector downwards.



4. Twist the bulb anticlockwise to remove.

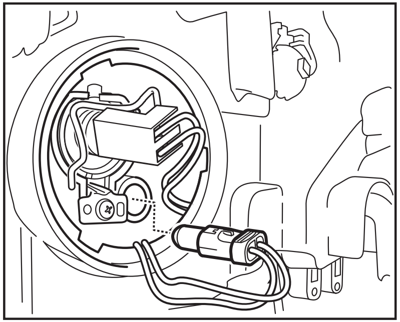
Note: The different sized locating tangs on the bulb base allow the bulb to sit correctly in the headlight in one position only.

5. Twist the bulb clockwise to install.
6. Install the wiring harness connector and dust cap (ensuring the rubber seal is in place).
7. Install components removed in Step 1.
8. Check light operation.

Parking lights

Front parking lights (Type A)

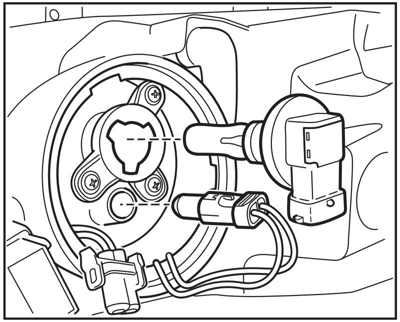
1. To access the headlights, see “Front lights” under *Bulb Replacement on page 10-19* and follow the steps.



2. Remove the outboard low beam dust cover to access the bulb.
3. Remove the parking light bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
4. Remove the parking light bulb by pulling it straight out of the holder.
5. Insert the new bulb into the holder.
6. Install the holder.
7. Replace the low beam bulb dust cap (ensuring the rubber seal is in place).
8. Install components removed in Step 1.
9. Check light operation.

Front parking lights (Type B)

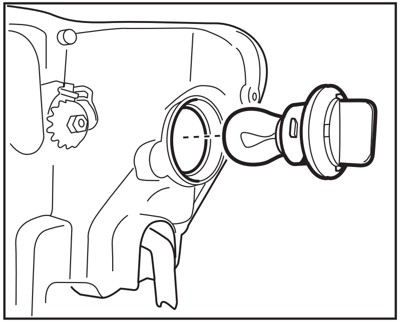
1. To access the headlights, see “Front lights” under *Bulb Replacement on page 10-19* and follow the steps.



2. Remove the inboard high beam dust cover to access the bulb.
3. Remove the high beam bulb to access the parking light bulb. See "Inboard high beam" earlier in this section.
4. Remove the parking light bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
5. Remove the parking light bulb by pulling it straight out of the holder.
6. Insert the new bulb into the holder, then install the holder. Install the high beam bulb and dust cap (ensuring the rubber seal is in place).
7. Install components removed in Step 1.
8. Check light operation.

Front Turn Signal Lights

1. To access the headlights, see "Front lights" under *Bulb Replacement on page 10-19* and follow the steps.
2. Remove the outboard dust cap.

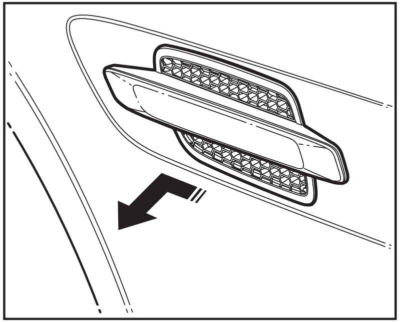


3. Rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove.
4. Lightly press the bulb and twist anticlockwise out of the holder.
5. Insert the new bulb and install the bulb holder.

   Ensure that the same colour bulb is used.
6. Install components removed in Steps 1 and 2.
7. Check light operation.

Side Marker Lights

(W5W bulb)

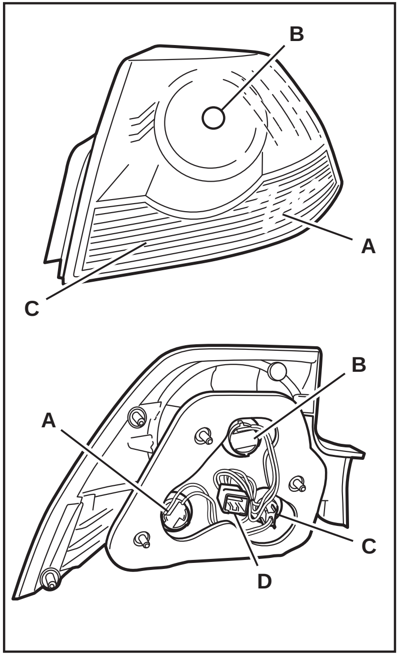


1. Grasp the lens at the rear, push forwards, and pull away from the body of the vehicle.
2. Separate the bulb holder from the lens assembly by rotating the bulb holder anticlockwise.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of the holder.
4. Insert the new bulb into the bulb holder.
5. Install the bulb holder into the lens housing.

   The bulb holder only fits into the lens housing one way. Keep rotating the bulb holder clockwise until it fits into place and can be tightened.
6. When inserting the lamp, first insert the rear of the housing into the body panel before pushing the front inwards.
7. Check light operation.

Tail lights

Sedan tail light assembly



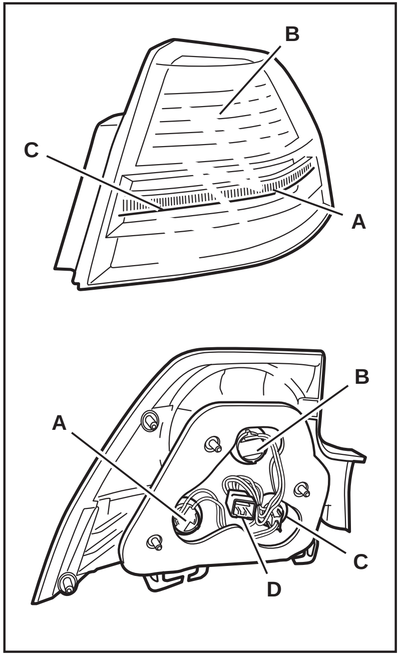
Driver side shown

A. Turn signal light (PY21W amber bulb)

B. Stop/tail light (P21/5W bulb)

C. Reverse light (P21W bulb)

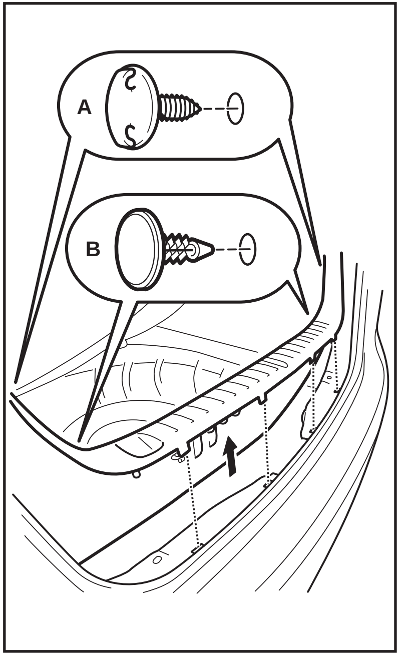
D. Rear light wiring connector



Driver side shown

The outside appearance of the light will differ depending on the model variant.

Sedan tail light access

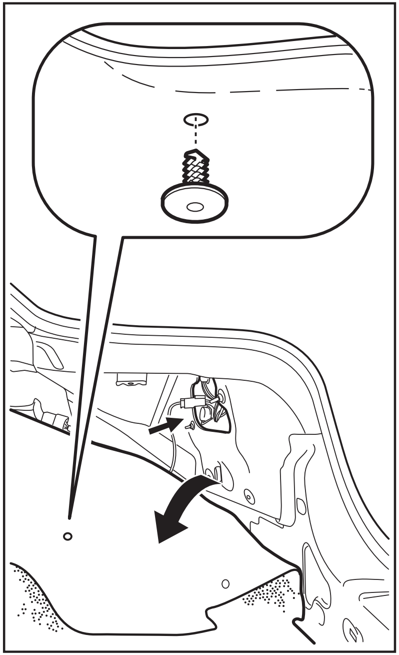


To access the tail light turn signal, stop/tail and reverse bulbs:

1. Open the boot.
2. Raise the spare wheel cover and attach the T-piece to the boot lid. See *Tyre Changing on page 10-55*.
3. There are two types of fastening systems for the plastic boot trim:
    - Using a flat-blade screwdriver, remove the two retaining pins (B).

      When replacing the retaining pins, push them directly into the holes.
    - Rotate anticlockwise and remove the two T-shaped retaining screws (A).

      If the vehicle has a convenience net, there will be four T-shaped retaining screws (A).
4. Grasp the plastic boot trim and pull directly upwards to remove.

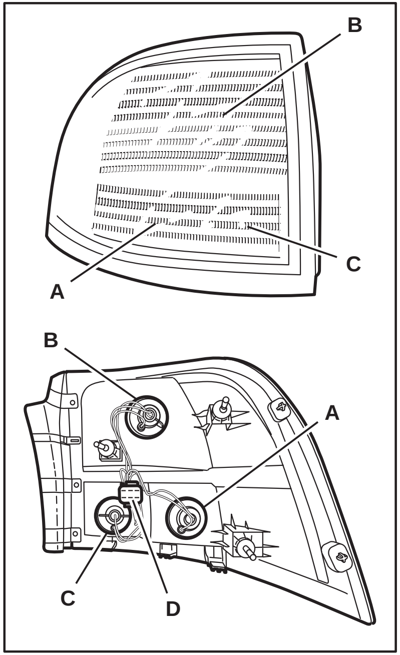


5. Remove the boot lining securing pin(s) by rotating anticlockwise and pulling down at the same time.

6. Lower the spare wheel cover.
7. Pull the boot lining away to reveal the rear of the light.

   When replacing the boot lining securing pin(s), push directly into the hole(s).
8. To replace the trim, align the guide tabs with the holes and push the trim down.
9. When the trim is refitted, ensure the lip of the rubber boot seal is positioned on top of the trim.

Sportwagon tail light assembly



Passenger side shown

A. Turn signal light (PY21W amber bulb)

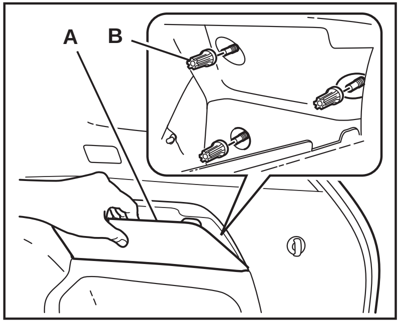
B. Stop/tail light (P21/5W bulb)

C. Reverse light (P21W bulb)

D. Rear light wiring connector

Sportwagon tail light access

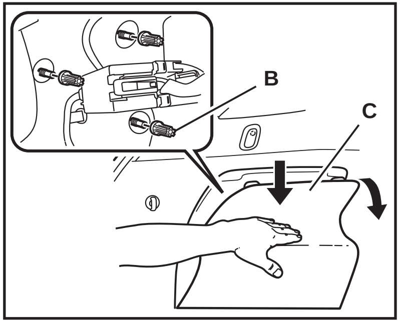
To access the rear turn signal, stop/tail and reverse bulbs:



Driver side shown

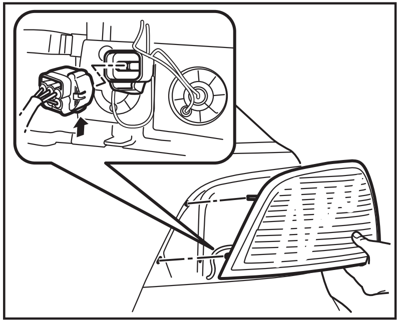
1. Open the tailgate.

2. To access the driver side light, remove the cover (A) from the top and pull away from the cargo area trim.



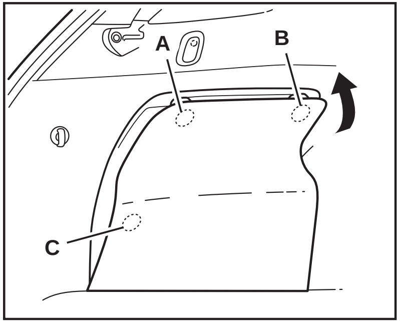
Passenger side shown

3. To access the passenger side light, remove the battery compartment cover (C) by pushing down at the centre.
4. Undo the three light assembly securing nuts (B).

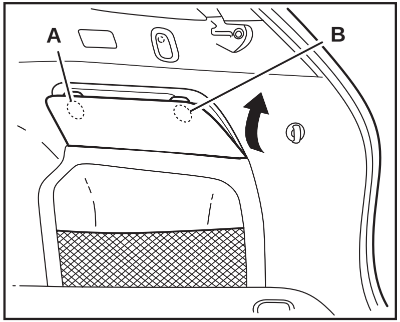


5. Remove the light assembly.

   Disconnect the wiring connector by pushing the tab at the bottom of the connector.



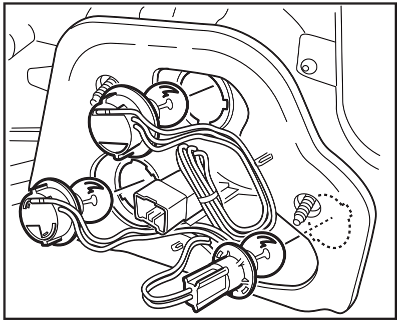
Passenger side shown



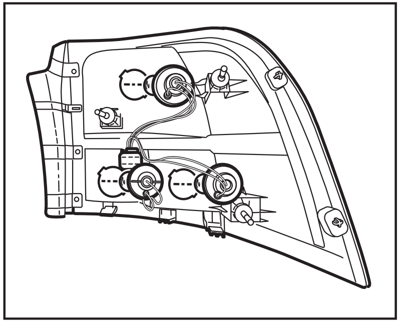
Driver side shown

6. To install the covers, align the locating tabs along the bottom edge of the cover with the slots in the trim.
7. Push the cover in the sequence and positions shown until it engages securely.

Tail Lights, Turn Signals, Stoplights and Reverse Lights



Sedan shown



Sportwagon shown

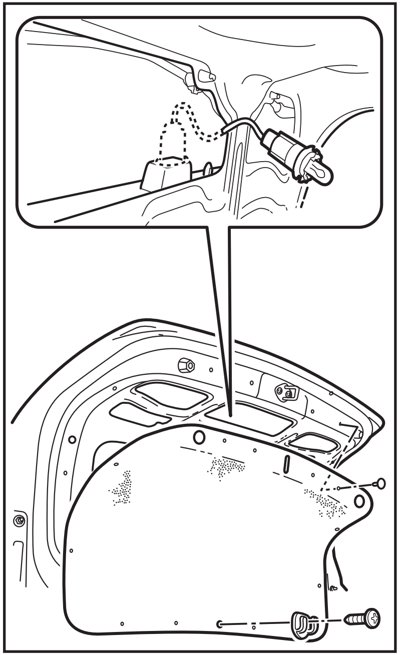
1. To access to the light assembly, see *Tail lights on page 10-25*.
2. From the rear of the assembly, rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to release.
3. Lightly press the bulb and twist anticlockwise out of the holder.
4. Install the new bulb into the bulb holder by pushing it into the holder and rotating it clockwise.

   Ensure that the same colour bulb is used.

5. Install the bulb holder into the lamp.
6. Install the components removed in Step 1.
7. Check light operation.

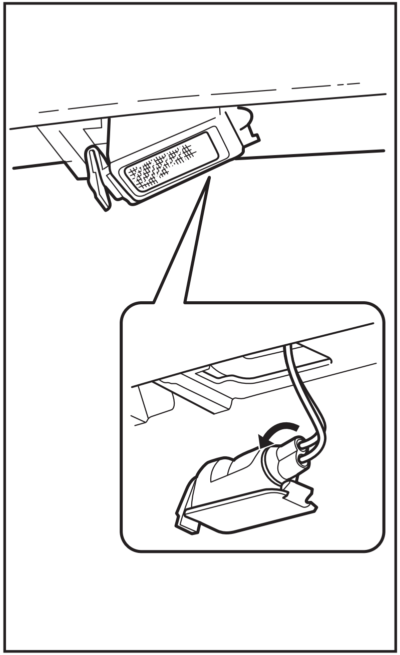
Number Plate Light

Sedan (W5W bulb)



1. Open the boot.
2. Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove the clip at the lower edge of the boot lid.
3. If the vehicle has a boot lid lining, remove the 12 securing pins with a flat-blade screwdriver.
4. Remove the boot lid lining panel without bending.
5. Remove the bulb holder from the light housing by rotating the bulb holder anticlockwise.
6. Pull the bulb out of the bulb holder.
7. Push the new bulb into the bulb holder.
8. Install the bulb holder into the light housing by rotating the bulb holder clockwise.
9. Reinstall the boot lining in the reverse order.
10. Check light operation.

Sportwagon (W5W bulb)

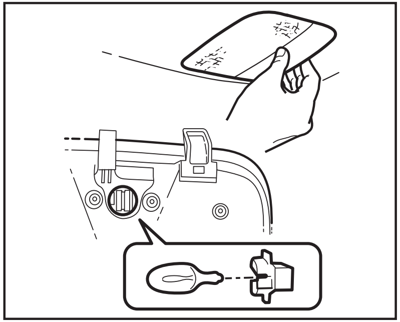


1. Push the locking tang at the end of the light housing towards the lens.
2. Pull the light assembly downwards.
3. Remove the bulb holder from the light housing by rotating the bulb holder anticlockwise.
4. Pull the bulb out of the bulb holder.
5. Push the new bulb into the bulb holder.
6. Install the bulb holder into the light housing by rotating the bulb holder clockwise, ensuring that the seal is undamaged.
7. Place the fixed tang into the number plate surround.
8. Push the light upwards to engage the locking tang.
9. Check light operation.

Interior Lights

Rear dome/reading lights

(W5W bulb)



If the vehicle has rear interior dome/ reading lights:

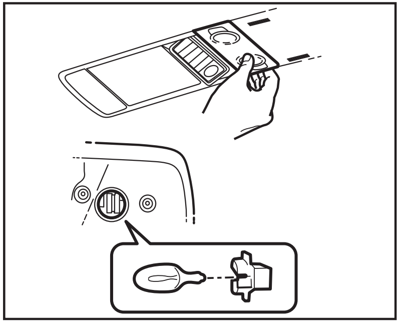
1. Pull the forward edge of the dome light downwards, using only fingers.
2. From the rear side, remove the bulb holder from the light housing by rotating the bulb holder anticlockwise.

Note: Do not remove the lens from the light assembly.

3. Pull the bulb out of the bulb holder.
4. Push the new bulb into the bulb holder.
5. Install the bulb holder into the light housing by rotating the bulb holder clockwise.
6. Refit the light into the rear-facing locating tabs.
7. Push the forward-facing edge upwards into the head lining until firmly in place.
8. Check light operation.

Rear dome/reading lights with Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE)

(W5W bulb)

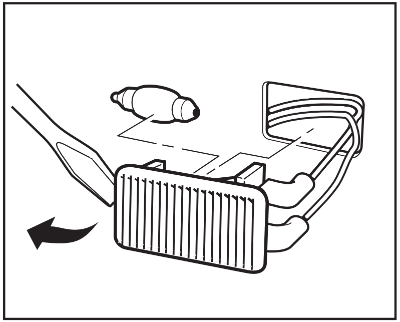


If the vehicle has RSE:

1. Pull down on the left or right edge of the light section using only fingers.
2. From the rear, remove the bulb holder from the light housing by rotating the bulb holder anticlockwise.
3. Pull the bulb out of the bulb holder.
4. Push the new bulb into the bulb holder.
5. Install the bulb holder into the light housing by rotating the bulb holder clockwise.
6. Refit the light section by firmly pushing it directly upward into the console.
7. Check light operation.

Glove box light, Door courtesy lights, Cargo area light (Sportwagon)

(Festoon bulb, 5W)



The vehicle may have a glove box light, door courtesy light and/or a cargo area light:

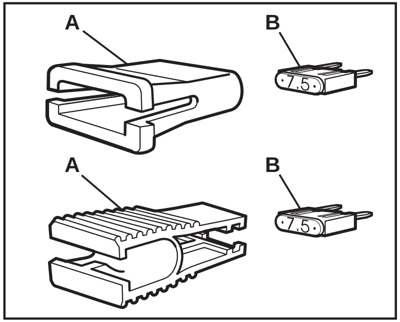
1. Remove the lens housing with a fine flat-blade screwdriver.
2. Pull the tab holding the bulb (opposite end to wiring) backwards and pull the bulb out.
3. To install a new bulb, pull the tab backwards.
4. When the new bulb is in place, feed the wiring back into the cavity and push the lens housing back into place.

Electrical System

Fuses

⚠ WARNING

Switch off the ignition (LOCK position) and any electrical equipment before changing a fuse.



A. Fuse puller

B. Fuse

A fuse puller is provided in the cabin and engine compartment fuse panels, which can be used on each of the three fuse panels.

Spare fuses of various ratings are provided in the cabin and engine compartment fuse/relay boxes.

Replace blown fuses promptly.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same amperage.

The amperage is shown on the head of the fuse:

Colour	Rating (amps)
Grey	2
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
Natural	25
Green	30

Replace the fuse cover securely after use.

⚠ WARNING

When replacing a fuse, be sure to use a fuse of the specified amperage.

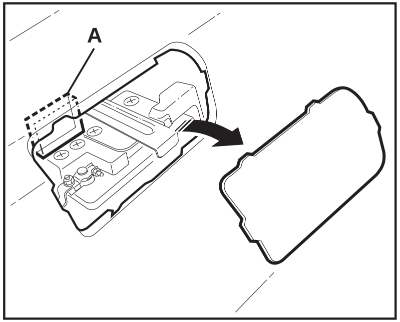
Never install a wire or similar device as it could damage electrical components and cause a fire.

Any improper alterations to the electrical system may cause a fire hazard and engine damage. To maintain your own safety and that of the vehicle, have any work involving the electrical system or the replacement of high current fuses or relays carried out by a Holden Dealer.

Fuses and relays

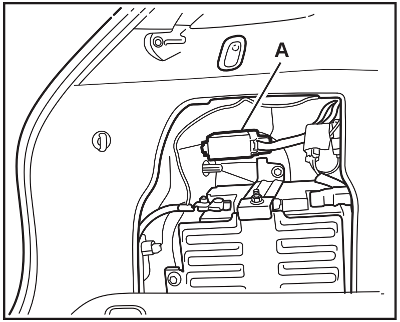
Rear fuse panel

The fuse panel is located on the left side of the boot/cargo area, above the battery.



Sedan shown

A. Fuse panel

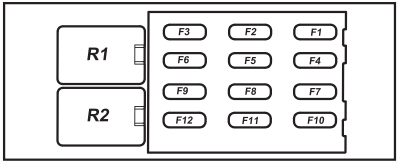


Sportwagon shown

A. Fuse panel

Remove the battery compartment cover to gain access. See “Sportwagon tail light access” under *Tail lights on page 10-25*.

Fuse and relay index



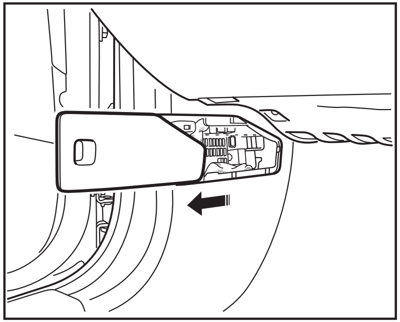
The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays and features shown.

Fuses:		
F1	REAR SEAT ENTERTAINMENT	(10A)
F2	AMPLIFIER	(30A)
F3	DEALER OPTIONS	(10A)
F4	RADIO & INFOTAINMENT	(25A)
F5	IPC/RFA/ DLC/LAMP	(10A)
F6	REAR ACCESSORY POWER OUTLET (APO)	(20A)
F7	TRAILER	(30A)
F8	LIFTGATE MODULE LOGIC	(10A)
F9	FUEL SHUT/OFF SOLENOID	(15A)
F10	RVC SENSOR	(7.5A)
F11	ECM BATT	(15A)

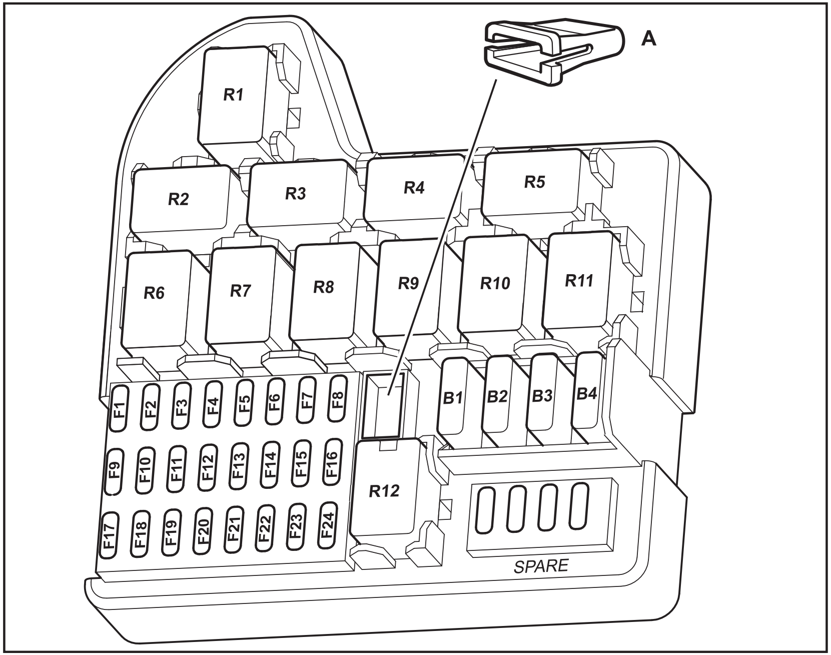
Fuses: (cont'd)		
F12	FUEL SYSTEM CONTROL MODULE	(20A)

Relays:	
R1	SPARE
R2	SPARE

Cabin fuses and relays



Pull on the slot in the fuse panel cover and slide rearwards to access the fuse panel.


A
R1
R2
R3
R4
R5
R6
R7
R8
R9
R10
R11
R12
B1
B2
B3
B4
F1
F2
F3
F4
F5
F6
F7
F8
F9
F10
F11
F12
F13
F14
F15
F16
F17
F18
F19
F20
F21
F22
F23
F24
SPARE

A. Fuse puller

Cabin fuse and relay index

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays and features shown.

Circuit breakers:

B1	POWER WINDOWS BATTERY	(20A)
B2	POWER WINDOWS RAP	(20A)
B3	POWER SEATS	(20A)
B4	SPARE	

Fuses:

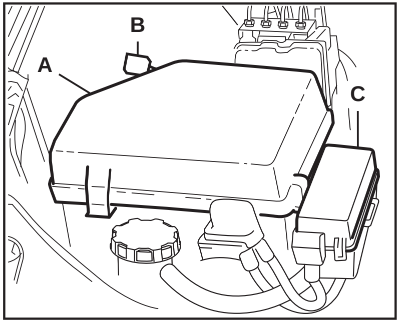
F1	AIRBAGS	(10A)
F2	REAR END RELEASE/SEDAN	(10A)
	WAGON	(30A)
F3	DOOR LOCKS	(25A)
F4	INADVERT POWER/LED DIM	(15A)

Fuses: (cont'd)		
F5	COURTESY LIGHTS/RT FT TURN LIGHT	(15A)
F6	RT RR TURN LIGHT/RT SIDE INDICATOR	(15A)
F7	EDI	(15A)
F8	LT FT TURN LIGHT/LT SIDE INDICATOR	(15A)
F9	BCM LOGIC	(10A)
F10	STOP LIGHTS/ PARKING ASSIST	(15A)
F11	CONSOLE LIGHTING	(15A)
F12	IGN SW/THEFT DETERRENT	(2A)
F13	REAR LIGHTER	(20A)
F14	CONSOLE APO (AUXILIARY POWER OUTLET)	(20A)

Fuses: (cont'd)		
F15	OUTSIDE MIRROR/RPA OPTION	(2A)
F16	PHONE/KEY LK/ ISRVM/RAIN SENSOR	(10A)
F17	SUNROOF	(20A)
F18	REAR WIPER	(20A)
F19	SPARE	
F20	SPARE	
F21	SPARE	
F22	FRONT LIGHTER/ FRONT APO	(20A)
F23	STRG WHEEL ILLUMINATION	(2A)
F24	RAP CONTROL PWR WDO	(2A)

Relays:	
R1	RAP-RETAIN ACCESSORY POWER RELAY
R2	ALL DOOR LOCK RELAY
R3	PASS DOOR UNLOCK RELAY
R4	SPARE
R5	REAR END RELEASE RELAY
R6	DRIVER DOOR UNLOCK RELAY
R7	SPARE
R8	ACCESSORY POWER RELAY
R9	FUEL SHUT/OFF SOLENOID RELAY
R10	FUEL SHUT/OFF SOLENOID RELAY
R11	SPARE
R12	SPARE

Engine compartment fuses and relays

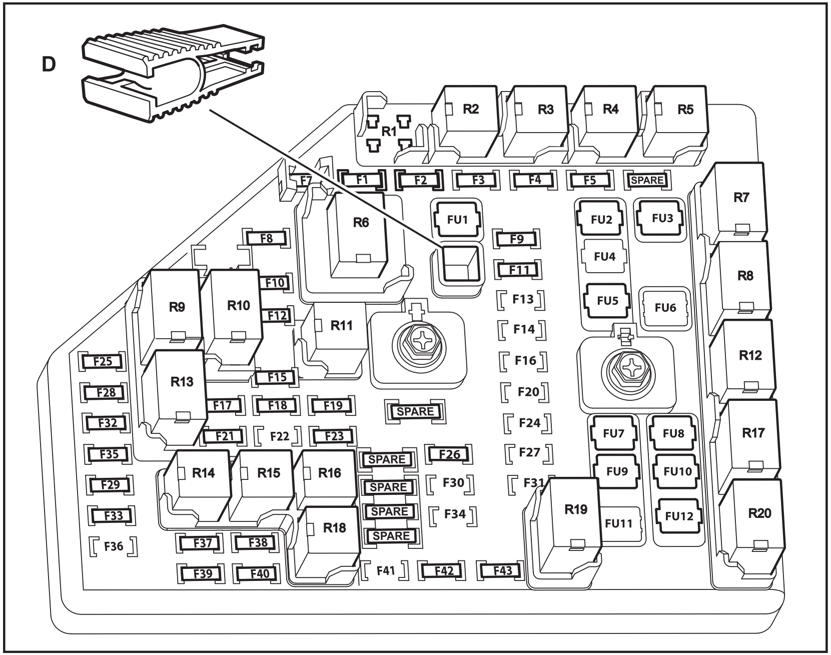


A. Main fuse/relay box

 Remove the clip-on cover to access.

B. Vacuum pump relay (R21)

C. LPG fuse/relay box


D
R2
R3
R4
R5
R1
F7
F1
F2
F3
F4
F5
SPARE
R7
R6
FU1
FU2
FU3
F8
F9
FU4
F11
R8
F10
R9
R10
FU5
FU6
F12
R11
F13
F14
F16
R12
F25
F15
R13
F20
F28
F17
F18
F19
SPARE
F24
F32
F21
F22
F23
FU7
FU8
R17
F35
SPARE
F26
F27
R14
R15
R16
FU9
FU10
F29
SPARE
F30
F31
R19
R20
F33
SPARE
F34
FU11
FU12
R18
F36
F37
F38
SPARE
F39
F40
F41
F42
F43

D. Fuse puller

Engine compartment fuse and relay index

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays and features shown.

FU1	BRAKE VACUUM PUMP	(20A)
FU2	REAR DEFOG	(40A)
FU3	ABS MOTOR	(40A)
FU4	SPARE	
FU5	BATT MAIN 1	(50A)
FU6	SPARE	
FU7	BATT MAIN 2	(50A)
FU8	STARTER	(40A)
FU9	HVAC BLOWER MOTOR	(40A)
FU10	FAN 1 ENGINE COOLING	(30A)
FU11	SPARE	
FU12	FAN 2 ENGINE COOLING	(30A)
F1	COMM ENABLE	(10A)
F2	HVAC BATT	(10A)
F3	REVERSE LIGHT	(10A)
F4	FOG LIGHTS (FRONT)	(15A)
F5	ABS VALVES	(25A)
F6	SPARE	
F7	HEADLIGHT WASH	(30A)
F8	HORN	(15A)
F9	TCM	(15A)
F10	LEFT LOW BEAM (BASE/HID)	(10/20A)
F11	VAPORISER CONTROL MODULE (VCM)	(10A)
F12	RIGHT LOW BEAM (BASE/HID)	(10/20A)
F13	SPARE	
F14	SPARE	
F15	FRONT WIPER	(30A)
F16	SPARE	
F17	THEFT HORN	(10A)
F18	A/C CLUTCH	(10A)
F19	RIGHT HIGH BEAM	(10A)
F20	SPARE	
F21	FRONT WASHER (WSW)	(15A)
F22	SPARE	
F23	LEFT HI BEAM	(10A)
F24	SPARE	
F25	REVERSE LOCKOUT/TOSS/ FLEX FUEL SNSR	(15A)
F26	REAL TIME DAMPING	(25A)
F27	SPARE	
F28	ECM 1-V8/ODD COILS-V6	(15A)
F29	EVEN COILS-V6/ EVEN INJECTORS & COILS-V8	(20A)
F30	SPARE	
F31	SPARE	

F32	EMISSION 2	(15A)
F33	EMISSION 1	(15A)
F34	SPARE	
F35	ECM 1-V6/ODD INJECTORS & COILS-V8	(20A)
F36	SPARE	
F37	HVAC IGN	(10A)
F38	IGNITION IP/BODY	(10A)
F39	IGNITION ENGINE/FSCM	(10A)
F40	AIRBAGS	(10A)
F41	SPARE	
F42	RIGHT PARKING LIGHT	(10A)
F43	LEFT PARKING LIGHT	(10A)

Relays:

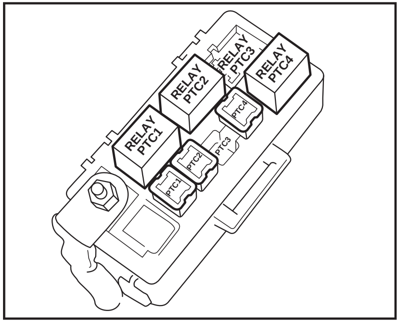
R1	SPARE
R2	COMM ENABLE RELAY

Relays: (cont'd)

R3	A/C CLUTCH COMPRESSOR RELAY
R4	REVERSE LIGHTS RELAY
R5	FOG LIGHT RELAY FRONT
R6	HEADLIGHT LO BEAM RELAY
R7	HEADLIGHT WASH RELAY
R8	RR DEFOG RELAY
R9	FRONT WIPER HIGH RELAY
R10	FRONT WIPER LOW RELAY
R11	HEADLIGHT HI BEAM RELAY
R12	CRANK RELAY
R13	POWER TRAIN RELAY
R14	IGNITION RELAY
R15	FRONT WINDSCREEN WASH RELAY
R16	HORN RELAY

Relays: (cont'd)

R17	ENGINE COOLING FAN 1 RELAY
R18	PARKING LIGHTS RELAY
R19	ENGINE COOLING FAN 2 RELAY
R20	ENGINE COOLING FAN 3 RELAY
R21	VACUUM PUMP RELAY



LPG fuses:

PTC1	VAPORISER HEATER 1	(40A)
PTC2	VAPORISER HEATER 2	(40A)
PTC3	SPARE	
PTC4	VAPORISER HEATER 3	(40A)

LPG relays:

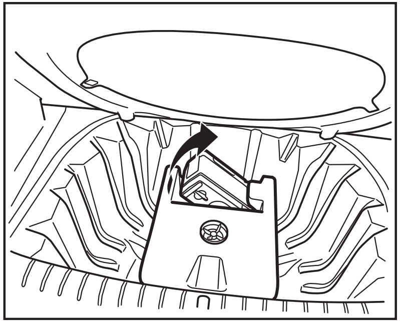
PTC1	VAPORISER HEATER 1 RELAY
PTC2	VAPORISER HEATER 2 RELAY
PTC3	SPARE
PTC4	VAPORISER HEATER 3 RELAY

Vehicle Tools

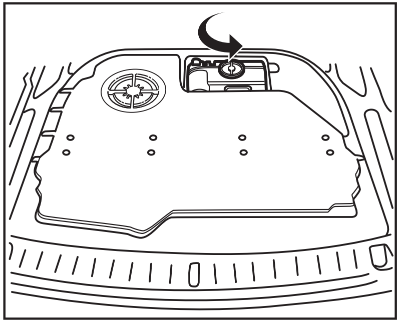
Tools

Tyre repair kit

The vehicle may have an emergency tyre sealant and air compressor kit in place of the jack, tools and spare tyre.



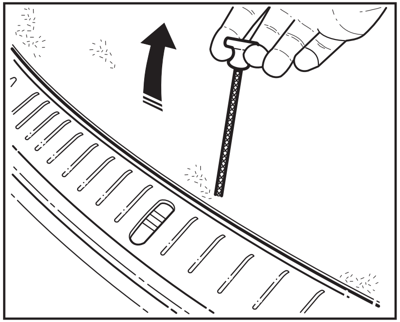
For petrol vehicles, it is located in a foam container in the boot/ cargo area.



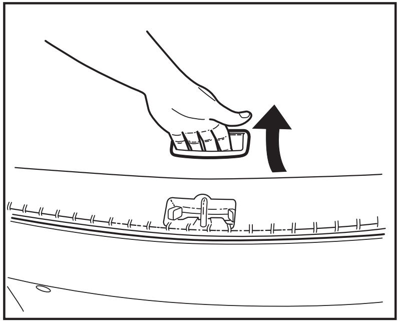
For LPG vehicles, it is located in the boot/cargo area under a carpet cover. See *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-49*.

Spare wheel – petrol

The vehicle may have a spare wheel, located in a compartment in the floor of the boot/cargo area. See *Tyre Changing on page 10-55*.



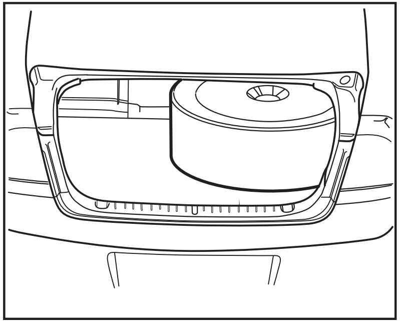
Sedan shown



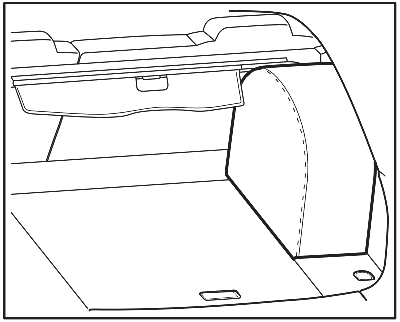
Sportwagon shown

Spare wheel – LPG

The vehicle may have a spare wheel, located on the floor of the boot/cargo area or against the side of the boot/cargo area. See “Procedure – LPG Sedan vehicles” or “Procedure – LPG Sportwagon vehicles” under *Tyre Changing on page 10-55*.



Sedan shown

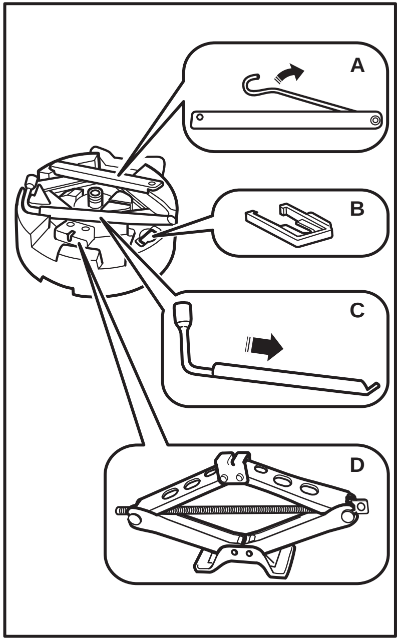


Sportwagon shown

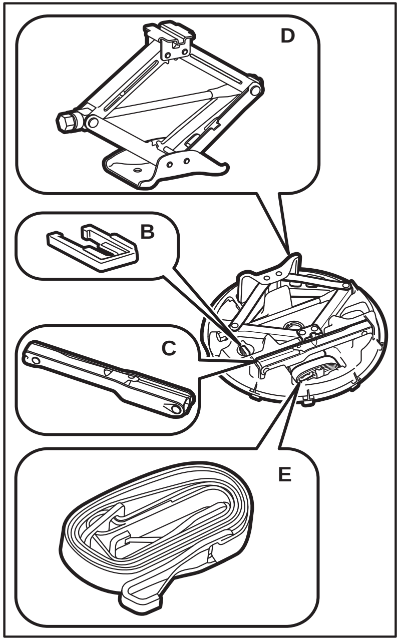
The LPG Sportwagon spare wheel requires inflating before use. See “Procedure – LPG Sportwagon vehicles” under *Tyre Changing on page 10-55*.

Tools

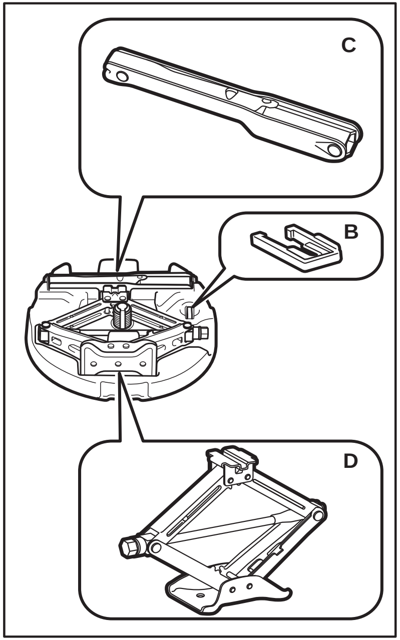
The vehicle may have the following jacks and tools:



Jack with hook type handle (A)



Jack with wheel wrench as handle (C)



Jack with wheel wrench as handle (C)

A. Jack handle

B. Nut cap tool

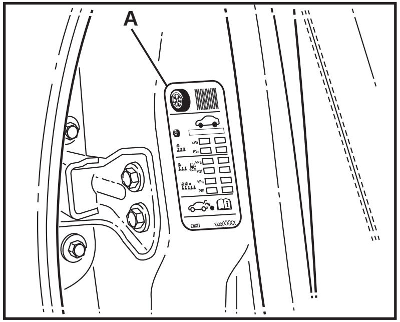
C. Wheel wrench

D. Jack

E. Wheel strap – LPG Sportwagon

Wheels and Tyres

Tyre placard



Correct tyre pressures are shown on the tyre placard (A) in the driver's door opening (B pillar).

The front tyre pressures are shown in the left column and the rear tyre pressures are shown in the right column.

The placard may display the tyre sizes and pressures using the following icons:

🛞: Tyre size, minimum load rating, minimum speed rating

👤👤👤: Tyre pressure at normal load

👤👤👤 ⛽eco: Tyre pressure for fuel economy driving at normal load

👤👤👤👤👤: Tyre pressure at maximum load

🚗📖: Spare tyre pressures, refer to *Tyre Pressure on page 10-46*.

Note: Full size spare: set to 👤👤👤👤👤 tyre pressure.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures to avoid increased fuel consumption and uneven or premature tyre wear.

The correct pressures are shown on the tyre placard and in the tyre pressure table. See *Tyre Pressure on page 12-10*.

- Tyre pressure should be checked when cold as tyre pressure will increase as the tyres warm up.
- Check the air pressure of tyres (including the spare) weekly, to ensure occupant safety, reduce fuel consumption and increase tyre life.
- Check pressures when the vehicle has been stationary for over 3 hours. If tyre pressures must be checked immediately after driving more than 2 km, increase the tyre placard pressure by 10%.
- Use a tyre pressure gauge to check the tyres. Simply looking at the tyres is not sufficient.
- Replace any valve dust caps or extensions.
- Check the condition of the tyre treads and inspect for stones or abnormal wear.
- In the case of constant long distance or rough road driving, daily checking is recommended.
- Tyre pressures may need to be increased depending on the load on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Weight on page 12-5*.
- If the vehicle is loaded to half the maximum payload, the tyres should be inflated to halfway between the minimum and maximum pressures given on the tyre placard.

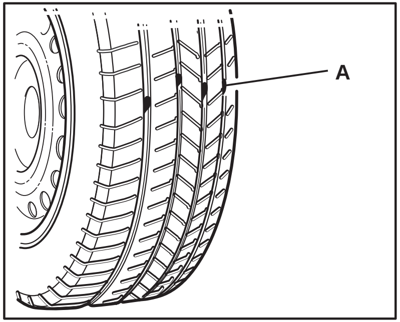
Low profile sports tyres

The vehicle may have low profile tyres.

Low profile tyres are expected to experience greater wear than conventional tyres, depending on driving conditions.

Follow the tyre care and maintenance instructions to maximise the life of the tyres.

Tread Depth



Replace the tyres when:

- They are worn to the point where the tread indicators (A) appear.

  The tyres originally fitted to the vehicle have built-in tread indicators. When only 1.5 mm of tread remains, these indicators show as plain bars across the tread pattern at regular intervals around the tyre.
- The tread or sidewall is cut, split, or cracked deep enough to expose the cord or fabric.
- The tyre has a bump or bulge in it, indicating some kind of internal damage.
- The tyre has a puncture, cut or other damage which cannot be repaired because of the size or location of the damage.
- The cord or fabric is showing.

⚠ WARNING

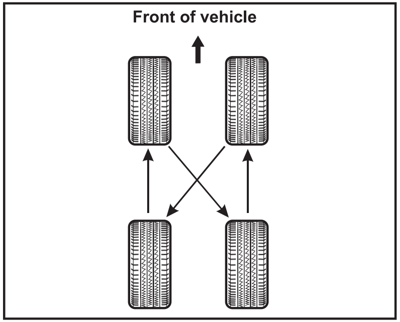
Do not attempt to drive on a flat tyre more than is necessary to stop safely. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre and wheel beyond repair. Tyres which have been repaired or retreaded are not capable of being driven safely at high speeds. Therefore their use is not recommended.

Tyre Rotation

It is recommended that you:

- Rotate tyres approximately every year or 15,000 km, whichever occurs first.

  Driving conditions, driving techniques, vehicle loading and weather may warrant more frequent tyre checks and rotation.



Front and rear tyres can wear differently depending on:

- Types of roads driven on

- Driving habits
- Tyre pressures
- Wheel alignment and balance

New tyres should be fitted in pairs to the front. If replacing only one tyre, pair it on the same axle with the least worn of the other three.

Buying New Tyres

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle for tyre size and load rating.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride
- Handling
- Speedometer accuracy
- Vehicle ground clearance
- Tyre clearance
- Snow chain clearance

Tyres with heavy treads and those made for better grip in the wet should only be operated within the limits recommended by the manufacturer.

Tyres with a higher speed or load rating are acceptable, provided they are fitted to a suitable rim size.

Replacing the factory fitted wheels and tyres with non-genuine wheels and tyres may affect the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty as well as the vehicle's insurance policy.

Contact a Holden Dealer for advice on suitable tyres.

Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

Improper wheel alignment or balance can cause:

- Tyres to wear fast and unevenly
- The vehicle to pull to one side
- Vibration

If any of these problems exists, have the vehicle checked by a Holden Dealer.

Tyre condition is checked when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden Dealer. They are able to diagnose any unusual signs of wear. If tyres are rotated, it is recommended that balance be checked at the same time.

Tyre Chains

Due to lack of clearance, tyre chains cannot be fitted to vehicles equipped with the following wheel and tyre configurations:

- 245/45R18 18 x 8
- 245/40R19 19 x 8
- 245/40R19 19 x 8.5
- 245/35R20 20 x 8 / 20 x 8.5

If these vehicles need to be driven in the snow, consider changing to the following wheel and tyre configurations:

- 225/60R16 16 x 7

  (suitable for V6 vehicles only)
- 225/55R17 17 x 7

  (suitable for V6 and V8 vehicles)

Note: SS V-Series vehicles cannot be fitted with smaller wheels to allow for tyre chain fitting.

Tyre chains should be fitted on the rear wheels only.

Remove large hub caps and valve extensions that contact parts of the chain.

⚠ WARNING

Tyre chains may only be used at speeds up to 50 km/h. Tyre chains should only be used for short distances if the roads are not snow covered. The hard road surface causes rapid wear and the chain may break. Tyre chain links should not be thicker than 13 mm and the clasp should be well away from the bodywork. Thicker chains may damage the vehicle body.

Check the tyre placard for correct tyre pressures. See “Tyre placard” under *Wheels and Tyres on page 10-45*.

Whenever tyre chains are fitted, switch off the ESC. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-14*.

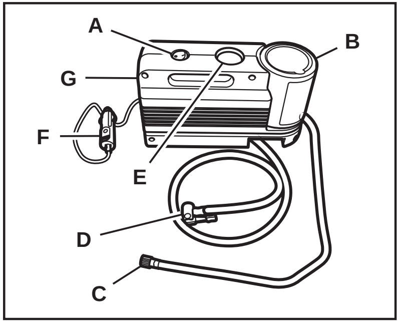
Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

The vehicle may have an emergency tyre sealant and air compressor kit in place of the jack, tools and spare tyre.

The tyre sealant and air compressor kit can be used to temporarily seal a small puncture up to 6 mm in the tread area of the tyre. It can also be used to inflate an underinflated tyre.

The vehicle must be driven for 8 km after the tyre is sealed and inflated to the recommended pressure, to ensure the sealant is distributed evenly.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer to have the tyre repaired or replaced as soon as possible.



The kit includes:

A. On/off switch

B. Tyre sealant canister

C. Sealant-air delivery hose

D. Air-only delivery hose

E. Pressure gauge

F. 12 volt power connection

G. Air compressor

Tyre sealant

The sealant cannot seal sidewall damage, large punctures, or a tyre that has unseated from the wheel.

Follow the safety instructions on the tyre sealant canister.

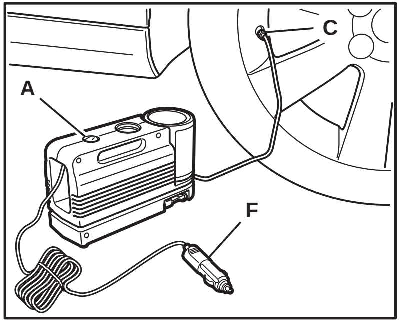
Check the expiry date on the tyre sealant canister before use. The tyre sealant canister must be replaced before its expiry date.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tyre.

After usage, the tyre sealant canister and sealant-air delivery hose must be replaced as an assembly.

Replacement tyre sealant canisters are available from a Holden Dealer.

Temporary puncture repair



1. All passengers must exit the vehicle.
2. Inspect the damaged tyre.

   Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tyre.
3. Unwrap the sealant-air delivery hose (C) from the side of the compressor.
4. Remove the 12 volt power connection (F) from the kit.

   Do not connect to the power socket yet.
5. Unscrew the tyre valve cap anticlockwise and remove.
6. Attach the sealant-air delivery hose (C) onto the tyre valve. Rotate it clockwise until tight.
7. Switch the on/off switch (A) to the **O** position.
8. Plug the 12 volt power connection into the vehicle power socket. See *Power Outlets on page 5-8*.

   Do not jam the 12 volt power connection cable in the door, boot/tailgate or window.
9. Start the engine and let it idle to ensure the battery does not run down.

⚠ WARNING

Do not run the engine in an enclosed area or with passengers in the vehicle. See *Fuel on page 9-26* for exhaust gas warnings.

10. Switch the on/off switch (A) to the **I** position.

    The kit will begin to inject sealant and air into the tyre.

    Sealant may leak from the puncture hole until the vehicle is driven and the hole has sealed.

11. Check the air pressure gauge (E).

    If there is no pressure reading while the compressor is running, check for leaks at the connection between the tyre valve and the sealant-air delivery hose (C).

12. Inflate the tyre to the inflation pressure on the tyre placard. See “Tyre Placard” under *Wheels and Tyres on page 10-45*.

    The pressure gauge (E) will initially read high while the compressor injects the sealant into the tyre. Once the sealant injection is complete, the pressure will quickly drop. It will start to rise again as the tyre inflates with air.

⚠ WARNING

Do not over-inflate tyres due to risk of injury or damage to the tyre. Refer to the tyre placard for recommended inflation pressure.

13. Switch the compressor off to get an accurate reading.

    The pressure gauge (E) reads slightly high while the compressor is on.

    The compressor may be switched on and off until the correct pressure is reached.

14. Switch the on/off switch (A) to the **O** position.

Note: The tyre is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 15 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and air compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Disconnect and stow the tyre

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

sealant and air compressor kit back in its original position. Contact a Holden Dealer.

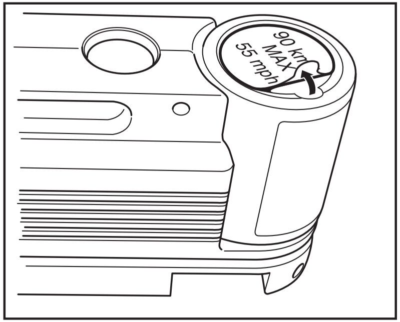
⚠ WARNING

Be careful when handling the tyre sealant and air compressor kit as they may be hot after usage.

15. Unplug the 12 volt power connection (F) from the power socket.
16. Rotate the sealant-air delivery hose (C) anticlockwise and remove.
17. Replace the tyre valve cap.
18. Place the tyre sealant and air compressor kit back in the boot/cargo area.

⚠ WARNING

Always stow the tyre sealant and air compressor kit in its original position. Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury on heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or collision.



19. After inflating the tyre, remove the maximum speed label and place it in a visible location on the instrument panel.

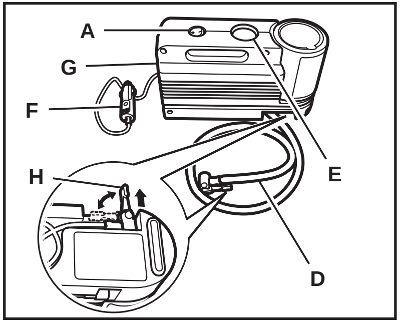
    It reminds you to drive cautiously and not to exceed 90 km/h until the damaged tyre is replaced or repaired.
20. Drive the vehicle immediately for at least 8 km to distribute the sealant evenly within the tyre.
21. Stop at a safe location to check the tyre pressure. To inflate tyres without sealant, see “Inflating tyres without sealant” later in this section.

22. If the tyre pressure has fallen more than 10 psi (68 kPa) below the recommended inflation pressure, do not continue driving. Contact a Holden Dealer.

    If the tyre pressure has dropped less than 10 psi (68 kPa), inflate to the recommended inflation pressure.
23. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tyre or vehicle.
24. Dispose of the used tyre sealant canister at a Holden Dealer or in accordance with local and state codes and practices. Replace with a new canister.

This is a temporary puncture repair. Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer to have the tyre repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

Inflating tyres without sealant



A. On/off switch

D. Air-only delivery hose

E. Pressure gauge

F. 12 volt power connection

G. Air compressor

H. Lever

1. Lift the lever (H) and pull the air-only delivery hose (D) from the bottom of the kit.
2. Remove the tyre valve cap by rotating it anticlockwise.
3. Push the air-only delivery hose (D) onto the tyre valve and push the lever (H) down to secure.
4. Plug the 12 volt power connection (F) into the vehicle's power socket. See *Power Outlets on page 5-8*.

   Do not jam the 12 volt power connection cable in the door, boot/tailgate or window.
5. Start the engine and let it idle to ensure the battery does not run down.

⚠ WARNING

Do not run the engine in an enclosed area or with passengers in the vehicle. See *Fuel on page 9-26* for exhaust gas warnings.

6. Switch the on/off switch (A) to the **I** position.

⚠ WARNING

Do not over-inflate tyres due to risk of injury or damage to the tyre. Refer to the tyre placard for recommended inflation pressure.

7. Check the pressure gauge (E).

   If there is no pressure reading while the compressor is running, check for leaks at the connection between the hose and the tyre valve.

8. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the air pressure gauge (E).

   The pressure gauge (E) reads slightly high while the compressor is on.

9. Switch the compressor off to get an accurate reading.

   The compressor may be switched on and off until the correct pressure is reached.

10. Switch the on/off switch (A) to the **O** position.

⚠ WARNING

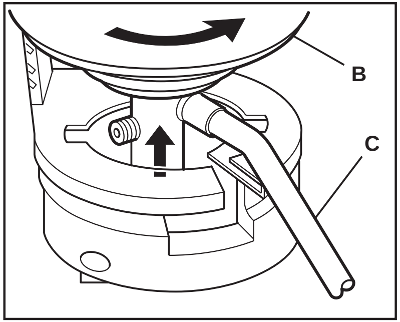
Be careful when handling the tyre sealant and air compressor kit as they may be hot after usage.

11. Disconnect the 12 volt power connection (F) and the air-only delivery hose (D).
12. Replace the tyre valve cap.
13. Place the tyre sealant and air compressor kit back in the boot/cargo area.

⚠ WARNING

Always stow the tyre sealant and air compressor kit in its original position. Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury on heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or collision.

Replacing the tyre sealant canister



After a temporary puncture repair, replace the tyre sealant canister.

To remove the canister:

1. Unlock the air-only delivery hose (D) from the tyre sealant canister by pulling up on the lever (H).
2. Pull the air-only delivery hose (D) from the tyre sealant canister.

3. Unwrap the sealant-air delivery hose (C) from the air compressor (G).
4. Rotate the tyre sealant canister (B) anticlockwise so the sealant-air delivery hose (C) is aligned with the slot in the compressor.
5. Lift the tyre sealant canister (B) from the compressor and replace with a new tyre sealant canister, available from a Holden Dealer.
6. Dispose of the tyre sealant canister at a Holden Dealer or in accordance with local or state codes and practices.

To install a new tyre sealant canister:

1. Align the sealant-air delivery hose (C) with the slot in the compressor.
2. Push the tyre sealant canister (B) down and rotate it clockwise.
3. Wrap the sealant-air delivery hose (C) around the compressor channel.
4. Push the air-only delivery hose (D) onto the tyre sealant canister (B) inlet.
5. Push the lever (H) down.

Tyre Changing

⚠ WARNING

All passengers must be out of the vehicle while it is being jacked.

Do not jack a vehicle with a trailer attached. Remove the trailer first.

Only jack the vehicle on a hard, level surface.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Only use the jack at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack or cause damage to the vehicle.

If using a jack (or hoist) other than the jack supplied with the vehicle, see "Trolley jack or vehicle hoist" under *Tyre Changing on page 10-55*.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Vehicles with alloy wheels may have a steel spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h if the tyre size or tread pattern of the spare tyre is different to the other tyres on the vehicle. Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. If your vehicle is fitted with the deflated spare wheel (LPG Sportwagon), this tyre is stored deflated and requires inflation before use. See "Procedure – LPG Sportwagon vehicles" under *Tyre Changing on page 10-55*.

After fitting the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and fitted back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

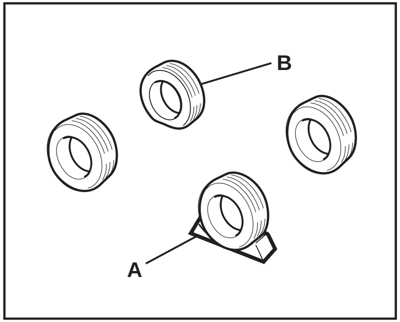
For petrol vehicles, see "Procedure – petrol vehicles" later in this section.

For LPG Sedan vehicles, see "Procedure – LPG Sedan vehicles" later in this section.

For LPG Sportwagon vehicles, see "Procedure – LPG Sportwagon vehicles" later in this section.

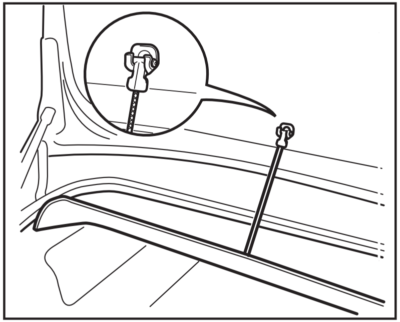
Procedure – petrol vehicles

1. Park on a hard, level surface in a safe location.
2. Apply the parking brake firmly.
3. Switch the hazard warning flashers on.
4. Remove the ignition key.
5. Place manual transmissions in reverse gear and automatic transmissions in position **P**.

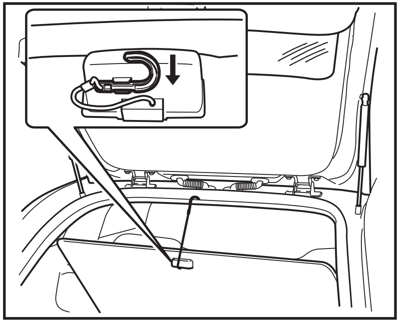


6. Chock the wheel diagonally (A) opposite the flat tyre (B) with a suitable solid object.
7. Open the boot/tailgate.
8. Pull up on the cover strap/handle.

9. Lift the cover by attaching the T-piece/hook to the boot lid/tailgate opening.



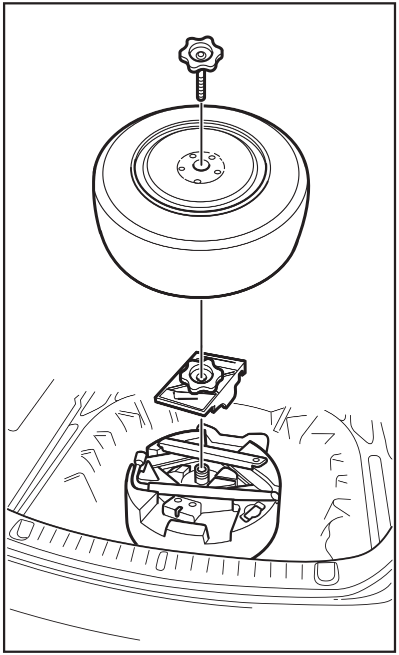
Sedan shown



Sportwagon shown

See “Spare wheel cover removal (Sportwagon)” later in this section.

10. Undo the retainer nut by hand and remove the spare wheel.



11. If the vehicle has a second retaining nut and panel, remove it.

12. Remove the tools. See *Tools on page 10-42*.

    Remove the tool container from the vehicle if required.

13. If a full wheel cover is fitted, lever it off with the wheel wrench.

    If a centre cap is fitted that covers the wheel nuts, remove it using the wheel wrench.

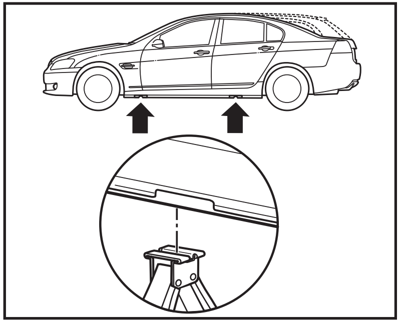
    If the centre cap is secured using the wheel nuts, it will be removed as the wheel nuts are removed in Step 23.

    If individual wheel nut caps are fitted, remove each nut cap individually using the nut cap tool. Insert the nut cap tool into the nut cavity, squeeze the tool to grasp the nut cap, and pull outwards to remove it.

14. Loosen the wheel nuts in an anticlockwise direction, one half to a full turn, but do not remove the wheel nuts.

⚠ CAUTION

Ensure that the wheel wrench is fully extended or unfolded.



15. Position the jack beneath the jack location closest to the wheel being changed.

    The locations are identified by cutouts in the underside of the door sill.

16. Wind the jack up by hand until it engages with the jacking point.

    Ensure that the jack is not tilted and the base is resting squarely on the ground.

⚠ WARNING

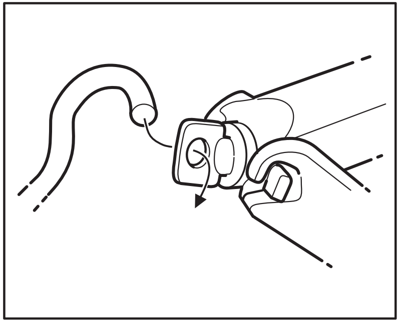
Failure to position the jack as described could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

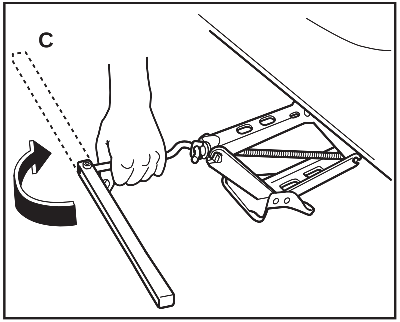
17. If using the hook type jack handle, continue from Step 18. If using the wheel wrench jack handle, continue from Step 25.

Hook type jack handle

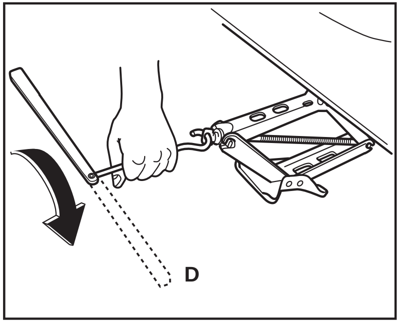
18. Unfold the jack handle so it forms a right angle.



19. Fit the jack handle onto the jack by sliding the hook through the loop on the end of the jack.
20. Grasp the hooked fold-out section with one hand.



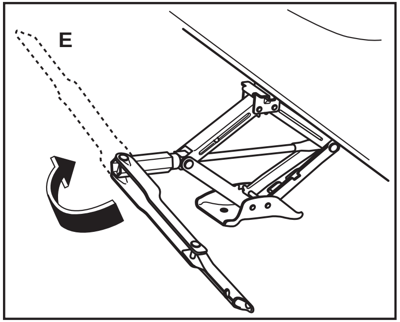
21. With the other hand, turn the handle through 180 degrees until it reaches position (C).



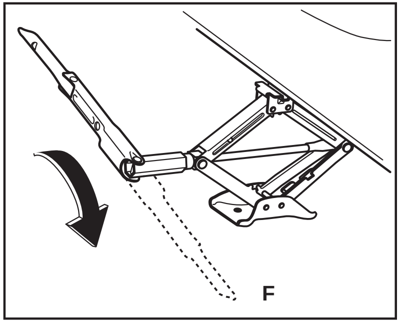
22. Rotate the handle clockwise from position (C) to position (D).
23. Repeat Steps 20 to 22 until the bottom of the flat tyre is about 5 cm above the ground.
24. Go to Step 30.

Wheel wrench jack handle

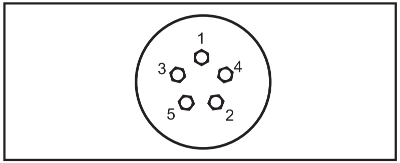
25. Unfold the wheel wrench so it forms a right angle.
26. Slide the wheel wrench onto the drive nut of the jack.



27. Turn the wheel wrench through 180 degrees until it reaches position (E).

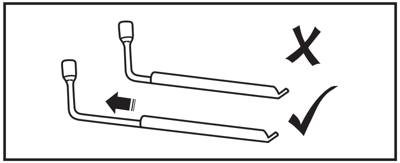


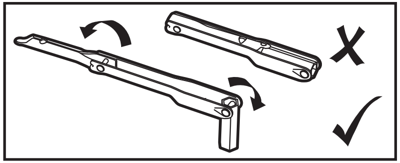
28. Rotate the wheel wrench clockwise from position (E) to position (F).
29. Repeat Steps 27 to 28 until the bottom of the flat tyre is about 5 cm above the ground.
30. Remove the wheel nuts and place in a clean, dry place.
31. Exchange the wheel on the vehicle with the spare wheel.
32. Replace the wheel nuts and lightly tighten with the wheel wrench.
33. Lower the vehicle by reversing the jacking procedure.
34. Remove the jack from under the vehicle.
35. With the wheel on the ground, use the extended or unfolded wheel wrench to tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown.



⚠ **WARNING**

To tighten the wheel nuts, the wrench must be fully extended or unfolded.





36. Replace wheel trims or nut caps.

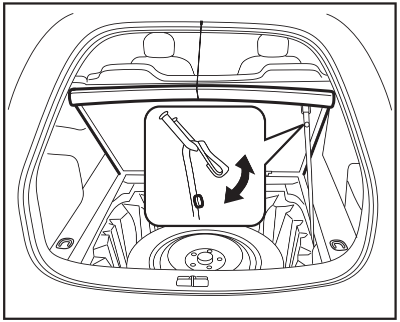
    For a full wheel trim, line up the tyre valve with the hole in the wheel trim and align the wheel trim clip-in legs.

37. Replace the tools, container and flat tyre in the boot/cargo area.
38. Tighten the upper retaining nut, lower retaining nut and panel firmly by hand.
39. Replace the spare wheel cover.

⚠ WARNING

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 170 ± 20 N•m (Newton metres). Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque in the sequence shown (refer to Step 35), as wheel nuts which have not been tightened correctly could eventually allow the wheel to come off while the vehicle is moving.

Spare wheel cover removal (Sportwagon)

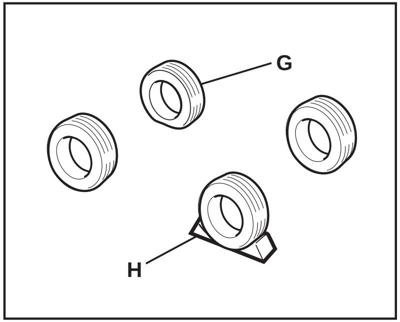


1. Lift the spare wheel cover.
2. Attach the hook to the tailgate opening.
3. Unclip the press stud.
4. Support the cover and detach the hook from the tailgate opening.
5. Remove the cover.
6. Reverse the procedure to install the cover.

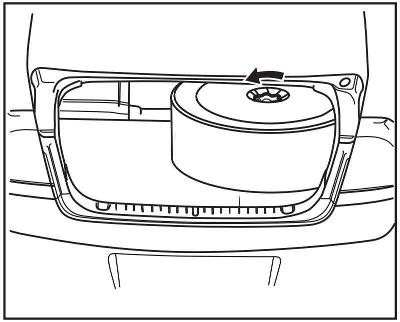
   Align the two locating tabs at the forward edge of the cover with the holes in the floor.

Procedure – LPG Sedan vehicles

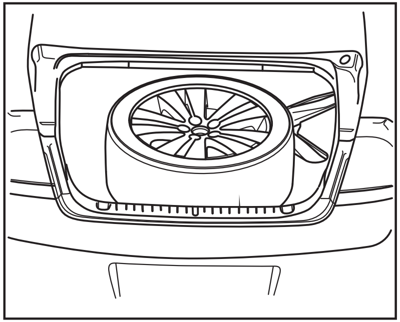
1. Park on a hard, level surface in a safe location.
2. Apply the parking brake firmly.
3. Switch the hazard warning flashers on.
4. Remove the ignition key.
5. Place manual transmissions in reverse gear and automatic transmissions in position **P**.



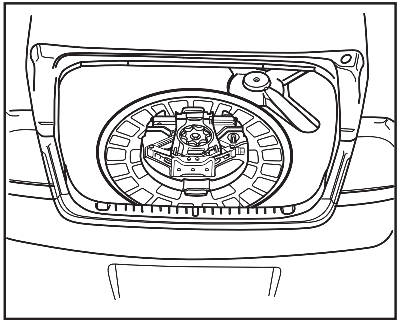
6. Chock the wheel diagonally (H) opposite the flat tyre (G) with a suitable solid object.
7. Open the boot.



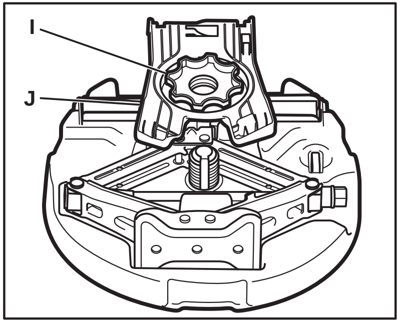
8. Remove the retainer by rotating anticlockwise.
9. Slide the wheel and tyre tray pack, containing the jack and tools, towards the rear of the vehicle.



10. Remove the carpet cover.



11. Remove the wheel and tyre from the tyre tray.



12. Undo the jack package nut (I).
13. Remove the jack package cover (J).
14. Remove the tools (wheel wrench, jack and nut cap tool (for vehicles with nut caps)). See *Tools on page 10-42*.
15. If a full wheel cover is fitted, lever it off with the wheel wrench.

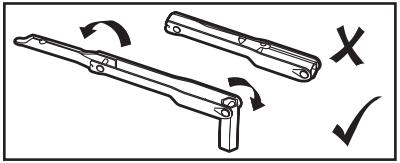
    If a centre cap is fitted that covers the wheel nuts, remove it using the wheel wrench.

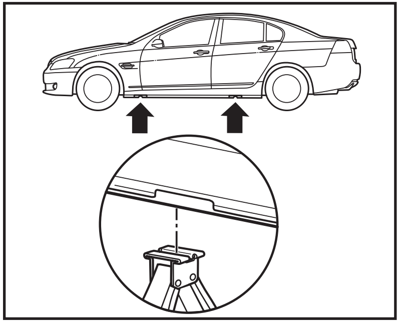
    If the centre cap is secured using the wheel nuts, it will be removed as the wheel nuts are removed in Step 24 later in this section.

    If individual wheel nut caps are fitted, remove each nut cap individually using the nut cap tool. Insert the nut cap tool into the nut cavity, squeeze the tool to grasp the nut cap, and pull outwards to remove it.
16. Loosen the wheel nuts in an anticlockwise direction, one half to a full turn, but do not remove the wheel nuts.

⚠ CAUTION

Ensure the wrench is fully unfolded.





17. Position the jack beneath the jack location closest to the wheel being changed.

    The locations are identified by cutouts in the underside of the door sill.

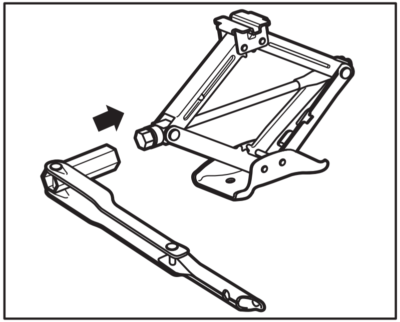
18. Wind the jack up by hand until it engages with the jacking point.

    Ensure that the jack is not tilted and the base is resting squarely on the ground.

⚠ WARNING

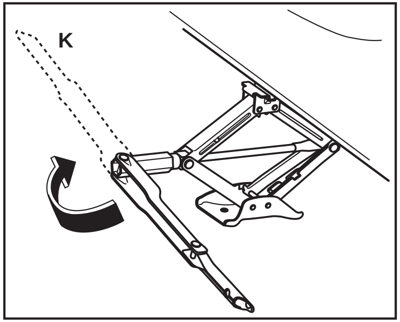
Failure to position the jack as described could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

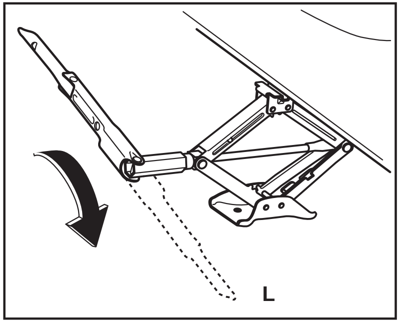


19. Unfold the wheel wrench so it forms a right angle.

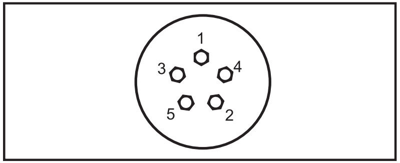
20. Slide the wheel wrench onto the drive nut of the jack.



21. Turn the wheel wrench through 180 degrees until it reaches position (K).

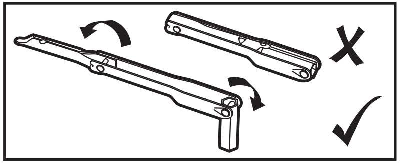


22. Rotate the wheel wrench clockwise from position (K) to position (L).
23. Repeat Steps 21 to 22 earlier in this section until the bottom of the flat tyre is about 5 cm above the ground.
24. Remove the wheel nuts and place in a clean, dry place.
25. Exchange the wheel on the vehicle with the spare wheel.
26. Replace the wheel nuts and lightly tighten with the wheel nut wrench.
27. Lower the vehicle by reversing the jacking procedure.
28. Remove the jack from under the vehicle.
29. With the wheel on the ground, use the unfolded wheel wrench to tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown.



⚠ WARNING

To tighten the wheel nuts, the wrench must be fully unfolded.



30. Replace wheel trims or nut caps.

    For a full wheel trim, line up the tyre valve with the hole in the wheel trim and align the wheel trim clip-in legs.
31. Replace the tools on the tyre tray.
32. Replace the jack package cover.
33. Tighten the jack package nut firmly by hand.
34. Place the wheel on the tyre tray.
35. Replace the carpet cover.
36. Slide the wheel and tyre tray pack into its original position.
37. Fasten the retainer by rotating clockwise until secure.

⚠ WARNING

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 170 ± 20 N•m (Newton metres) and the spare wheel retainer tightened with a torque wrench to 8.5 ± 0.5 N•m. Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque in the sequence shown (refer to

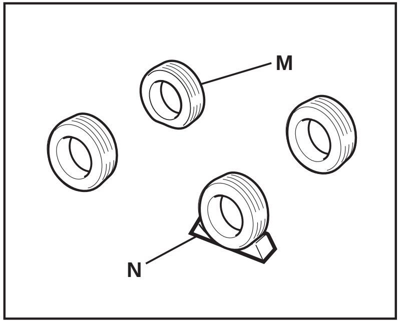
(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

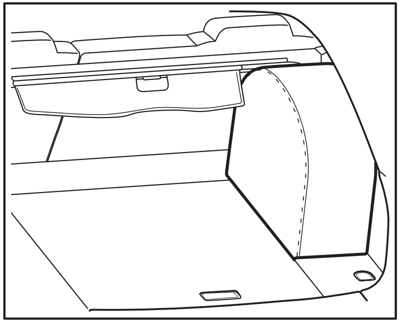
Step 29), as wheel nuts which have not been tightened correctly could eventually allow the wheel to come off while the vehicle is moving.

Procedure – LPG Sportwagon vehicles

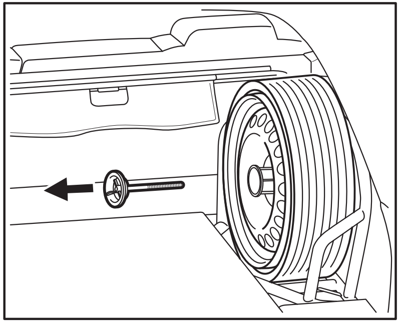
1. Park on a hard, level surface in a safe location.
2. Apply the parking brake firmly.
3. Switch the hazard warning flashers on.
4. Remove the ignition key.
5. Place manual transmissions in reverse gear and automatic transmissions in position **P**.



6. Chock the wheel diagonally (N) opposite the flat tyre (M) with a suitable solid object.



7. Open the tailgate.
8. Remove the carpet cover from the spare wheel.

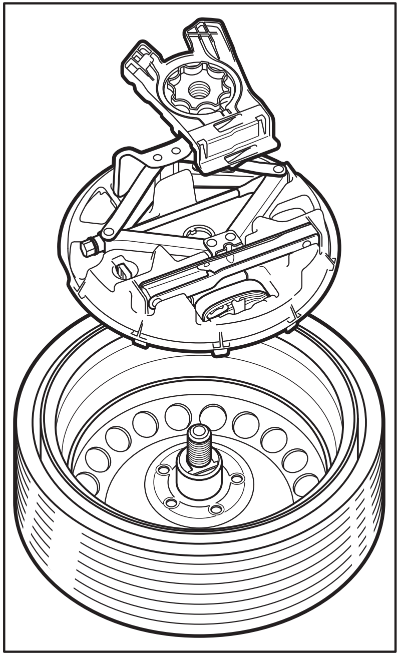


9. Remove the spare wheel retainer bolt by rotating anticlockwise.
10. Remove the wheel.

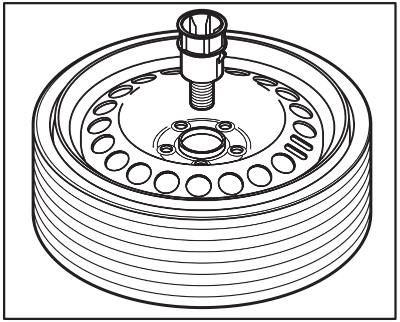
⚠ WARNING

Take precautions when moving a heavy wheel.

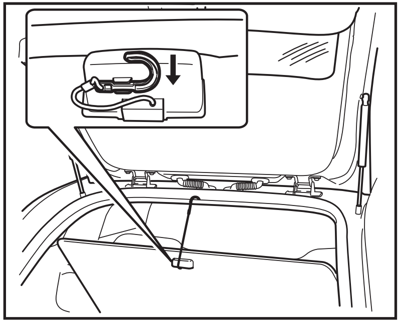
11. Place the wheel on a clean, flat area on the ground with the face of the wheel downwards.
12. Remove the jack package from inside the wheel by rotating the nut anticlockwise.



13. Undo the jack package nut.
14. Remove the jack package cover.
15. Remove the tools. See *Tools on page 10-42*.
16. Flip the wheel over so the face of the wheel is up.



17. Remove the jack package adaptor stud from the centre of the wheel by pulling upwards.



18. Pull up on the cover strap/handle.
19. Lift the cover by attaching the T-piece/hook to the tailgate opening. See “Spare wheel cover removal (Sportwagon)” earlier in this section.
20. Remove the compressor from beneath the carpet cover.
21. If a full wheel cover is fitted, lever it off with the wheel wrench.

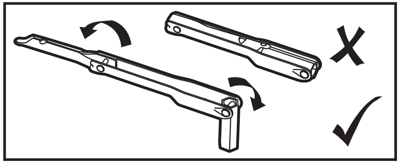
    If a centre cap is fitted that covers the wheel nuts, remove it using the wheel wrench.

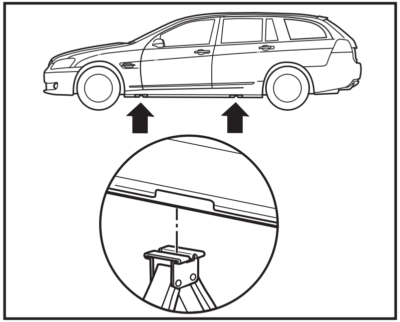
    If the centre cap is secured using the wheel nuts, it will be removed as the wheel nuts are removed in Step 30 later in this section.

    If individual wheel nut caps are fitted, remove each nut cap individually using the nut cap tool. Insert the nut cap tool into the nut cavity, squeeze the tool to grasp the nut cap, and pull outwards to remove it.
22. Loosen the wheel nuts in an anticlockwise direction, one half to a full turn, but do not remove the wheel nuts.

⚠ CAUTION

Ensure the wrench is fully unfolded.





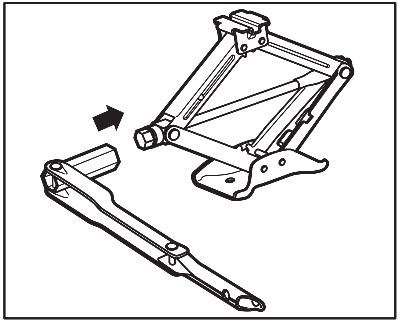
23. Position the jack beneath the jack location closest to the wheel being changed.

    The locations are identified by cutouts in the underside of the door sill.

24. Wind the jack up by hand until it engages with the jacking point.

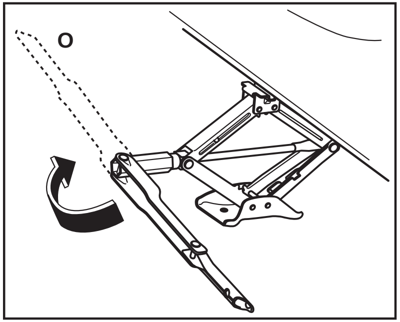
    Ensure that the jack is not tilted and the base is resting squarely on the ground.

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> Failure to position the jack as described could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.
>
> Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

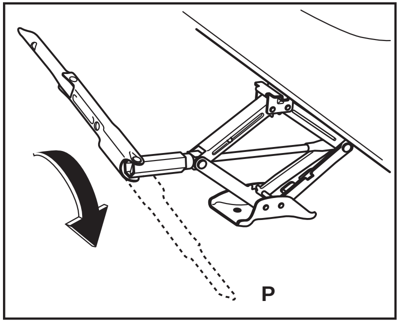


25. Unfold the wheel wrench so it forms a right angle.

26. Slide the wheel wrench onto the drive nut of the jack.



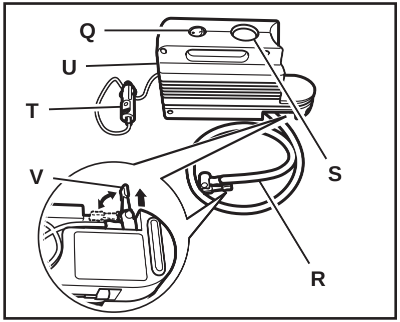
27. Turn the wheel wrench through 180 degrees until it reaches position (O).



28. Rotate the wheel wrench clockwise from position (O) to position (P).
29. Repeat Steps 27 to 28 earlier in this section until the bottom of the flat tyre is about 5 cm above the ground.
30. Remove the wheel nuts and place in a clean, dry place.
31. Remove the wheel from the vehicle and replace with the spare wheel.
32. Replace the wheel nuts and lightly tighten with the wheel wrench.

⚠ WARNING

Ensure the spare wheel is fitted to the vehicle before inflating it.



Q. On/off switch

R. Air delivery hose

S. Pressure gauge

T. 12 volt power connection

U. Air compressor

V. Lever

33. On the air compressor (U), lift the lever (V) and pull the air delivery hose (R) from the bottom of the kit.
34. Remove the tyre valve cap on the spare tyre by rotating anticlockwise.
35. Push the air delivery hose (R) onto the tyre valve and push the lever (V) down to secure.
36. Plug the 12 volt power connection (T) into the vehicle's power socket. See *Power Outlets on page 5-8*.

    Do not jam the 12 volt power connection cable in the door, tailgate or window.
37. Start the engine and let it idle to ensure the battery does not run down.

⚠ WARNING

Do not run the engine in an enclosed area or with passengers in the vehicle. See *Fuel on page 9-26* for exhaust gas warnings.

38. Switch the on/off switch (Q) to the **I** position.

⚠ WARNING

Do not over-inflate the tyre. This may cause injury or damage the tyre.

Inflate the tyre to 51 psi/350 kPa. Refer to *Tyre Pressure on page 12-10* or the warning label on the spare wheel for recommended tyre inflation pressure.

Stand clear of the tyre while inflating.

The tyre may inflate partially off-centre. This does not affect performance. The tyre will centralise after driving a short distance.

39. Check the pressure gauge (S).

    If there is no pressure reading while the compressor is running, check for leaks at the connection between the hose and the tyre valve.

40. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure (51 psi/350 kPa). Refer to *Tyre Pressure on page 12-10*.

Note: The pressure gauge (S) reads slightly high while the compressor is on.

41. Switch the compressor off to get an accurate reading.

    The compressor may be switched on and off until the correct pressure is reached.

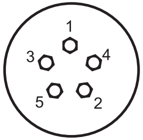
Note: Inflation may take up to 10 minutes.

42. Switch the on/off switch (Q) to the **O** position.

⚠ WARNING

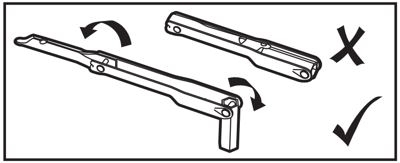
Be careful when handling the air compressor kit as it may be hot after usage.

43. Disconnect the 12 volt power connection (T) and the air delivery hose (R).
44. Replace the tyre valve cap.
45. Lower the vehicle by following the jacking procedure in reverse.
46. Remove the jack from under the vehicle.
47. With the wheel on the ground, use the unfolded wheel wrench to tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown.



⚠ WARNING

To tighten the wheel nuts, the wrench must be fully unfolded.



48. Place the air compressor kit back in the cargo area.

⚠ WARNING

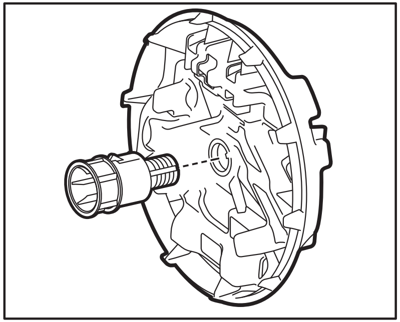
Always stow the air compressor kit in its original position. Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury on heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or collision.

49. Replace the tools inside the jack package container.

    When the jack is placed in the container, rotate the drive nut of the jack slightly clockwise to secure the jack.

50. Remove the strap from the jack container.

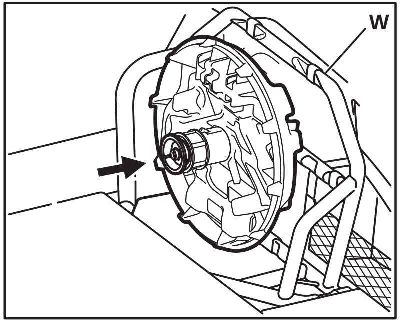
51. Turn the jack package container over and push the jack package adaptor stud into the centre of the jack package container.



    Ensure that the groove in the jack package adaptor stud aligns with the notch in the jack container.

52. Replace the jack package cover.

53. Tighten the jack package nut firmly by hand.

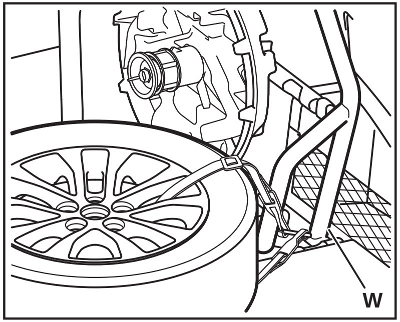


54. Feed the tip of the spare wheel retainer bolt through the centre of the jack package and into the nut on the spare wheel bracket (W).

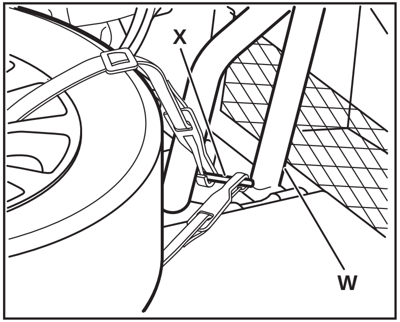
    Fit the package to the spare wheel bracket (W) with the tools facing the bracket (W).

55. Tighten the spare wheel retainer bolt by rotating clockwise.

Note: The jack package is able to rotate around the spare wheel retainer. This is normal.



56. Place the flat tyre in the cargo area, face up and close to the driver side rear corner, against the spare wheel bracket (W).



57. Using the strap supplied in the jack package, attach the clip that is furthest from the strap's buckle to the small bar (X) on the spare wheel bracket (W).
58. Wrap the strap under the wheel and up between the wheel’s spokes or through the wheel’s centre hole.

⚠ WARNING

Ensure the wheel is secured to the spare wheel bracket (W) using the strap. Unsecured loads increase risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres, or collision.

59. Attach the other clip over the wheel and onto the same small bar (X) with the other clip.

Note: Adjust the length of the strap using the buckle. The strap should be shortened as much as possible. It may be easier to adjust the length of the strap with the clip removed from the spare wheel bracket (W). Be sure to reattach the clip.

60. If a wheel cover or nut caps were removed from the wheel, store them in a secure place in the vehicle with the spare wheel cover where they will not be damaged or cause damage.

⚠ WARNING

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 170 ± 20 N•m (Newton metres) and the spare wheel retainer tightened with a torque wrench to 12.5 ± 0.5 N•m. Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque in the sequence shown (refer to Step 47), as wheel nuts which have not been tightened correctly could eventually allow the wheel to come off while the vehicle is moving.

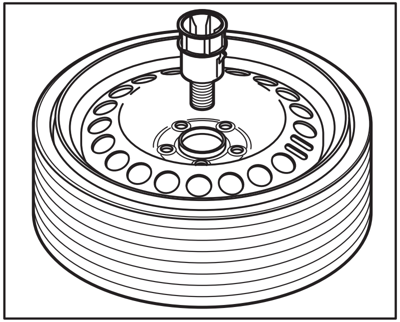
Placing the repaired tyre on the vehicle:

1. Remove the spare tyre from the vehicle using the jack and tools.
2. Refit the repaired tyre to the vehicle.
3. Place the spare tyre on a clean, flat area on the ground, face up.
4. Remove the tyre valve cap on the spare tyre by rotating anticlockwise.
5. Deflate the spare tyre by fitting the compressor air delivery hose (R) onto the tyre valve. Ensure the lever (V) is up.

⚠ WARNING

Keep hands and loose items etc. away from the tyre as it deflates.

6. When the tyre appears to be deflated, lift the tyre upright and squeeze down on the tyre to push out the last of the air. This will ensure the tyre will fit back onto the spare wheel bracket (W).
7. Replace the tyre valve cap.



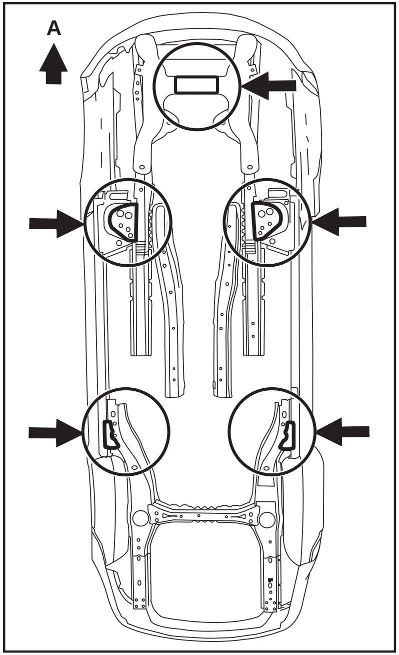
8. Refit the jack package adaptor stud into the centre of the spare wheel.
9. Replace the tools and jack into the jack package container.
10. Refit the jack package container into the wheel, ensuring the groove in the adaptor stud lines up with the notch in the centre of the jack container.

11. Refit the spare wheel into the spare wheel bracket (W), ensuring that the wheel is completely upright and hard up against the spare wheel bracket (W).
12. Secure by tightening the spare wheel retainer until the tyre cannot be moved by hand.
13. Refit the carpet cover to the spare wheel.

⚠ WARNING

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 170 ± 20 N•m (Newton metres) and the spare wheel retainer tightened with a torque wrench to 12.5 ± 0.5 N•m. Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque in the sequence shown (refer to Step 47), as wheel nuts which have not been tightened correctly could eventually allow the wheel to come off while the vehicle is moving.

Trolley jack or vehicle hoist



A. Front of vehicle

To raise the vehicle, position the jack under the centre of the suspension cross member or hoist pad locations.

⚠ WARNING

Do not jack under the suspension control arms. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Jump Starting

Read the following warnings and procedure in full before attempting to jump start the vehicle.

If you are still unsure about jump starting, Holden strongly recommends for your safety and that of the vehicle that you seek the assistance of a suitably trained service technician.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected or flat, the tailgate (Sportwagon) will not open normally. See “Manual tailgate release” under *Tailgate (Sportwagon) on page 2-9*.

⚠ WARNING

Do not push start or tow start either a manual or an automatic vehicle. If unburnt fuel were to reach the catalytic converter and ignite, the converter could overheat or be destroyed by

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

backfire. Therefore, if the battery is flat, jump start, but do not push start the vehicle.

Batteries produce explosive gases, contain corrosive acids, and supply levels of electrical current high enough to cause burns. Therefore adhere to the following when working near a battery:

- Do not attempt jump starting directly from the battery in the boot (Sedan) or cargo area (Sportwagon).
- Do not let the jumper lead clamps touch each other or other metal parts.
- Do not allow the jumper leads to contact any rotating engine components.
- Do not use open flames or sparks near the battery.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Do not smoke near the battery.
- Never use a quick charger to start the engine.
- The battery must be removed from the vehicle for recharging.
- When refitting the battery, make sure the vent tube is correctly installed.
- Only use the recommended battery, otherwise the electric power management system may not work correctly. Refer to a Holden Dealer for battery replacement.
- Wear eye protection such as safety glasses, and avoid leaning over the battery.
- Battery acid is corrosive. If it gets on your skin, wash with plenty of water immediately. If it gets in your eyes you should not only flush with lots of water, but should also seek medical help. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash it off immediately.
- Remove rings, metal watch bands and other metal jewellery before working around the battery.
- If a permanently connected hands free telephone kit is fitted to the vehicle, remove the fuse for the telephone kit before jump starting. Remember to replace the fuse afterwards.

Jump starting connection posts

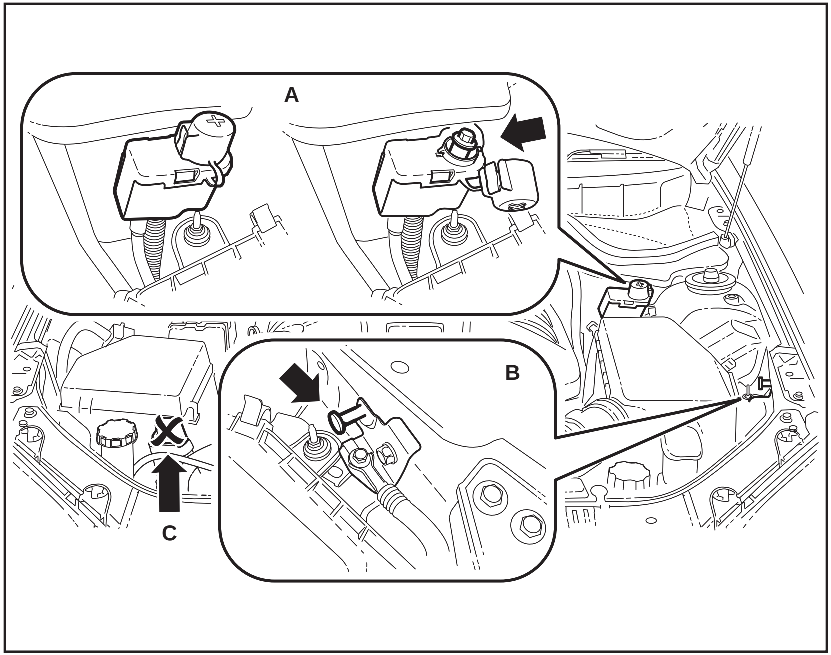
The jump start positive (A) and negative (B) posts are located in the engine bay on the passenger side. These posts are used instead of a direct connection to a battery.

The positive jump start connection is covered by a red cap.

1. Push the clip to release the top.
2. Remove to expose the terminal.

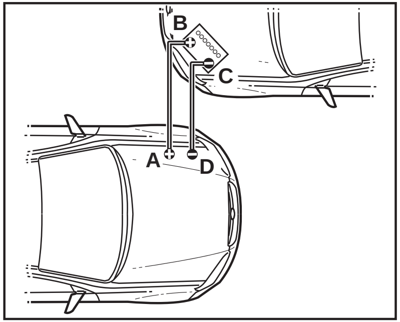
⚠ CAUTION

Do not make any connections at point (C) as costly damage to the vehicle could result.



Jump starting procedure

Note: The battery in both vehicles must have a negative earth and a 12 volt rating.



1. Position the two vehicles so that they are NOT touching.
2. Apply the parking brakes.
3. Put automatic transmissions in **P** and manual transmissions in neutral.
4. Switch off the ignition.

5. Turn off all lights and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers or any lights needed for the work area.
6. Attach one end of the RED jumper lead to the jump start positive post (A).
7. Attach the other end of the RED jumper lead to the positive terminal (B) of the charged battery.
8. Attach one end of the BLACK jumper lead to the negative terminal (C) of the charged battery.
9. Attach the other end of the BLACK jumper lead to the jump start negative post (D).
10. Start the engine in the vehicle with the charged battery and allow to idle for at least 4 minutes.
11. Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery.
12. Turn off the headlights, rear demister, air conditioning and audio system of the vehicle with the flat battery.
13. Allow both vehicles to run for at least 4 minutes while connected, to stabilise battery voltage.
14. Leave the engines running while removing the BLACK negative jumper lead first, followed by the RED positive jumper lead.

Note:

- Refit the red protective cap to the positive jump start post following removal of the jump leads.
- While removing each clamp, do not touch any other metal while the other end remains attached.

Towing

Towing the Vehicle

⚠ WARNING

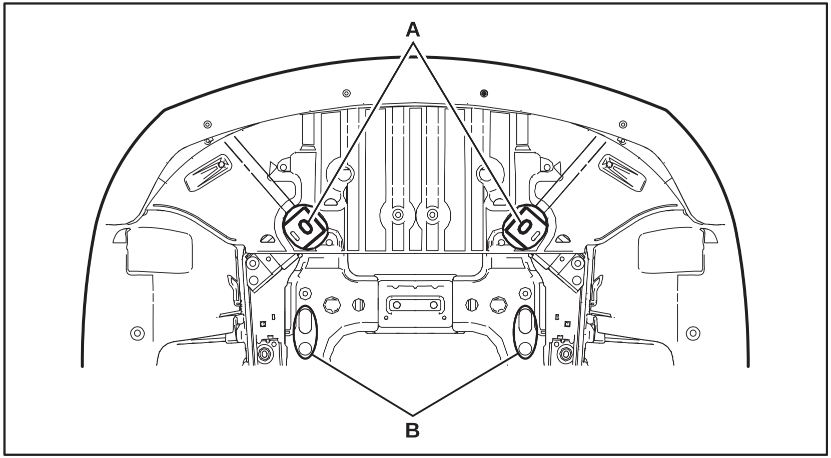
Flat tray towing is the only recommended towing procedure.

A slot and rope location is provided to move a bogged or disabled vehicle a short distance or to pull the vehicle onto a flat tray tow truck.

Use only wheel lashings to secure the vehicle to the flat tray tow truck.

Do not attach towing equipment to the bumpers or brackets, suspension or cross members.

To prevent damage, use only proper towing equipment.



Attachment locations

An oval shaped slot (A) is provided underneath the front of the vehicle.

Access to the slot is via the circular hole in the black plastic splash shield underneath the front of the vehicle.

A hook of the appropriate size, attached to the cable, should be used in the slot.

A rope cannot be threaded through the slot.

A rope can be looped through the holes at the rope location (B).

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Washing

The paintwork of the vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a program that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage. Failure to do so may result in permanent damage, particularly in hot weather conditions.

Road bloom is a gradual build up of road and environmental grime. This should be removed with a paint cleaner once a year, in addition to normal washing.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. Never use an automatic wash that requires anything touching the paint (other than water). The wipers must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a Holden Dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois off the vehicle. Rinse chamois frequently. Use separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

Note: For certain body colours, some variation in gloss and colour may exist in the engine bay or boot (Sedan) and on the underside of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead, until brake performance returns to normal.

Exterior lights

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive, solvent based cleaners or caustic agents and do not dry-clean them.

Air intakes

When washing the vehicle, clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen, and below the front bumper.

Polishing and waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads).

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and windscreen wiper blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

- Never use abrasive cleaners to clean glass.
- Refer to a Holden Dealer for windscreen washer additive.
- Old wiper blades can scratch the windscreen. Regularly inspect and replace them.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the wiper blades by hand as this damages the wiper drive mechanism.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

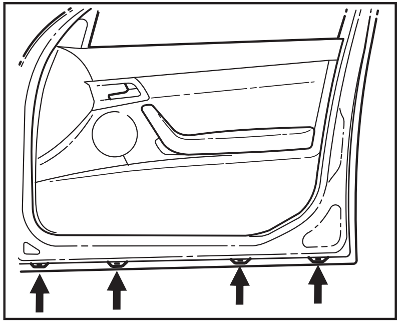
Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Wheels and tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

- Remove oil and grease with soap and water or detergent.
- Do not use petrol to clean tyres.
- Use a good quality tyre and bumper shine if required.
- A good quality wheel cleaner can be used for cleaning alloy wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners.

Door drain holes



- Clear drain holes at the bottom of the door panels from dirt and other foreign materials which could trap water inside the panels.
- Clean clogged drain holes with a plastic pin or peg.
- Avoid scratching the paintwork.

Paintwork damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by your Holden Dealer.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Underbody

Substances can cause rust under the vehicle.

- Hose the underbody with clean water whenever the vehicle is washed.
- Where the vehicle is exposed to heavy concentrations of corrosive materials, inspect and wash the complete underbody at least once each year, preferably after winter exposure.

Interior Care

⚠ **WARNING**

Many cleaning products are toxic, flammable, or may damage the interior. When cleaning the interior, avoid volatile cleaners such as acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers, or cleaners such as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents. Never use carbon tetrachloride, petrol or naphtha for any cleaning purpose. Ensure that the vehicle is well ventilated while using any cleaners, and always follow the cleaning product manufacturer's recommendations. Water based cleaners are recommended rather than solvent based cleaners.

Steam cleaning of seats is not recommended.

Interior and upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

The instrument panel should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clean seatbelts with a mild, non-abrasive soap and lukewarm water.

After washing, thoroughly sponge the solution out of the belts.

Leather

Clean regularly using a leather revitaliser or mild detergent.

- Apply revitaliser using a lint-free cloth and rub it onto the leather.
- Do not saturate the leather with the cleaner and do not pour on directly.
- Allow to dry naturally.

- For deeply embedded soil and dirt, use a leather cleaner.
- After using a leather cleaner/ revitaliser, apply a leather protector.

  A leather protector is designed to repel dirt and provides water resistance.

Note:

- Clean and protect leather at least twice a year.
- Do not use synthetic cloths or brushes.
- Leather is a natural product and may have natural markings, variation in graining, colouring and wrinkling.
- Leather has some elasticity and may stretch. This is a natural characteristic of leather.

⚠ CAUTION

Close Velcro fasteners, as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

Plastic and rubber parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high pressure jet cleaners.

Floor Mats

- Pull up the small peg at the corner to remove the mat.
- Push the mat down onto the peg to replace.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
Service Information 11-1

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-2
Maintenance Replacement Parts 11-2

General Information

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

See your Service/Warranty Booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

<table>
<tr><th>Engine Type</th><th>3.6L (SIDI) direct injection V6</th><th>3.6L LPG multi-point injection V6</th><th>3.0L (SIDI) direct injection V6</th><th>6.0L Generation IV V8</th></tr>
<tr><td>Engine oil specification</td><td colspan="4">5W-30; dexos (dexos™ 1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Coolant specification</td><td colspan="4">50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant, conforming to specification number GM6277M</td></tr>
<tr><td>Automatic transmission fluid</td><td colspan="4">Dexron® VI</td></tr>
<tr><td>Manual transmission fluid</td><td>SAE 75W-90 GL5</td><td>–</td><td>–</td><td>Holden part number 19264570</td></tr>
<tr><td>Differential oil</td><td colspan="4">Castrol SAF Carbon Modified SAE 75W/85 API GL5 GM</td></tr>
<tr><td>Brake and clutch fluid</td><td colspan="4">Heavy duty brake fluid, Dot 4 plus, SAE J1704 or conforming to Holden specification number HN 2456</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power steering fluid</td><td colspan="4">Dexron® VI</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance Replacement Parts

Battery	Maintenance free 12 V, with ventilation system LN2 460 cold cranking amps (CCA), 85 minutes reserve capacity The vehicle may have an LN3 battery. LN3 600 cold cranking amps (CCA), 120 minutes reserve capacity

⚠ WARNING

Use only a manufacturer recommended battery with a ventilation system. Use of other batteries may affect the electric power management system and allow explosive gases into the vehicle cabin. Refer to a Holden Dealer or authorised repairer.

✍ NOTES

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification

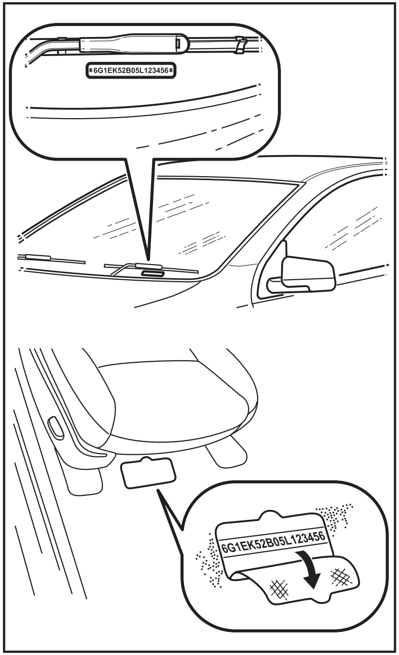
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 12-1
Identification Plate 12-2

Vehicle Data

Engine Data 12-4
Vehicle Weight 12-5
Additional Weights 12-7
Vehicle Dimensions 12-8
Capacities and Specifications 12-9
Tyre Pressure 12-10

Vehicle Identification

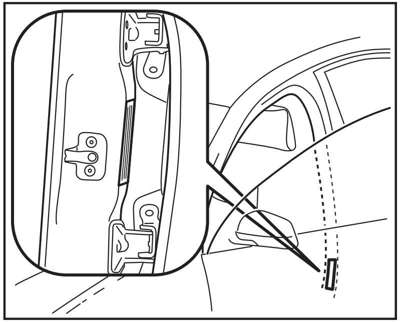
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



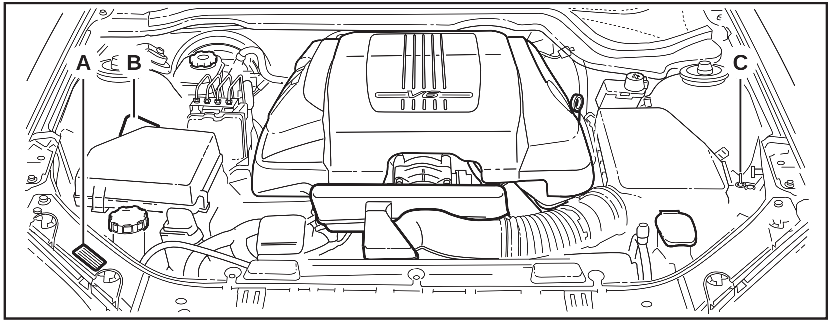
Each vehicle has its own individual International Standards Organisation Vehicle Identification Number (ISOVIN), which is shown behind the windscreen on the left side, and under the right front seat under a carpet flap.

Identification Plate

Compliance label



This label shows the vehicle make, model series, date of manufacture, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), approved seating capacity, and approval number.



Cooling system/air conditioning label

Label (A) shows the warnings for the air conditioning and cooling systems as well as information about the air conditioning refrigerant and compressor oil.

LPG compliance plate

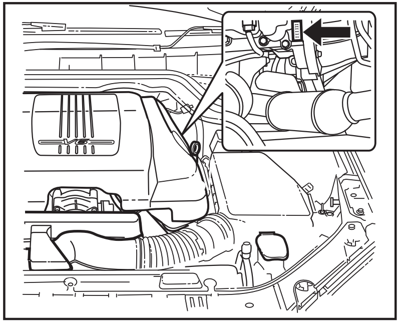
LPG vehicles have an LPG compliance plate.

The plate (B) shows the installation date, plate number, DS exemption number, cylinder (LPG tank) number, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and engine number.

Body and option plate

Plate (C) shows the model identification, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), paint and trim colour combination, air conditioning, paint number, engine, transmission, axle ratio options, suspension options (where applicable), and build date.

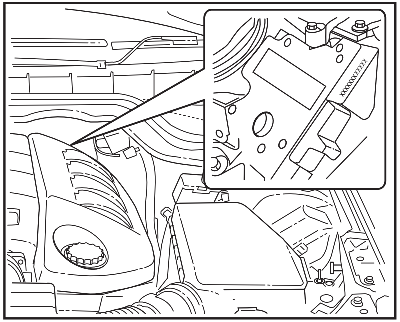
Engine number location



V6 engine

The engine number is located at the rear of the engine on the passenger side.

The engine number can be viewed from the top, using a mirror if necessary.



V8 engine

The engine number is located at the rear of the engine on the passenger side.

The engine number can be viewed from the top, using a mirror, after the engine cover has been removed. See *Engine Cover on page 10-6*.

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Engine type	**3.6L (SIDI) direct injection V6**	**3.6L LPG multi-point injection V6**	**3.0L (SIDI) direct injection V6**	**6.0L Generation IV V8**
Engine	3564 cc	3564 cc	2997 cc	5967 cc
Engine power and torque	Please refer to holden.com.au			
Fuel	Petrol	LPG	Petrol	Petrol
Octane rating (RON)	Unleaded regular 91 or higher	–	Unleaded regular 91 or higher	
Ethanol compatibility	E10, E85	–	E10, E85	E10, E85

Air conditioning specifications

Refrigerant type	R-134A
Refrigerant charge	480 g +/- 20 g
Compressor oil type	Polyalkylene glycol (Holden part no. 90510419)

⚠ WARNING

The air conditioning system should be serviced by qualified personnel only. Improper service methods may cause personal injury.

Vehicle Weight

Overloading is a safety hazard and could also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Maximum vehicle carrying capacity

	Carrying capacity (occupants, accessories and luggage) (kg)
Sedan	480
Sportwagon	
Omega, Omega Z-Series	550
Omega LPG, Omega LPG Z-Series, Berlina	490
SV6, SS, SS V, Calais, Calais V-Series	480

Note:

- The carrying capacity assumes that no accessories are fitted. If accessories are fitted, the carrying capacity must be decreased accordingly. See *Additional Weights on page 12-7*.
- Axle limits must not be exceeded. See “Axle loads” later in this section.

Axle loads

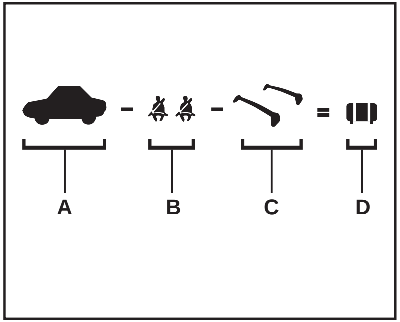
Maximum front and rear axle loads

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options or accessories fitted to the vehicle. Take the roof rack load into account when determining the rear axle load. Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

	Front axle load (kg)		Rear axle load (kg)	
	V6	**V8**	**V6**	**V8**
Sedan				
Petrol	1080	1100	1300	1300
LPG	1080	–	1350	–
Sportwagon				
Omega, SV6 LPG, SV6 LPG Z-Series	1080	–	1425	–
SV6, Berlina, Calais	1080	–	1370	–
SV6 Z-Series	1080	–	1362	–
SS, SS V	–	1100	–	1362
Berlina LPG	1080	–	1415	–
Calais V-Series	1080	1100	1370	1370

Additional Weights

Example loading guide



Example 1:

A. Vehicle carrying capacity (example 550 kg)

B. Subtract occupant weight (example 2 x 70 kg = 140 kg)

C. Subtract mass of fitted accessories (see the following table) (example 25 kg)

D. Available luggage capacity

(550 – 140 – 25 = 385 kg*)

*Subject to axle loads not being exceeded.

Example 2:

A. Vehicle carrying capacity (example 550 kg)

B. Subtract occupant weight (example 5 x 70 kg = 350 kg)

C. Subtract mass of fitted accessories (see table below) (example 50 kg)

D. Available luggage capacity (550 – 350 – 50 = 150 kg*)

*Subject to axle loads not being exceeded.

Accessory mass examples

Towbar	25.0 kg
Roo/nudge bar	25.0 kg
Portable fridge	20.0 kg
All-weather floor mats	6.5 kg
Vehicle safety triangle	6.0 kg
Roof racks	5.0 kg

Vehicle Dimensions

Dimensions (mm)

	Length	Width excl. mirrors	Width incl. mirrors	Height	Wheel base	Front overhang	Rear overhang	Front track	Rear track
Sedan									
Omega	4900	1899	2100	1471	2915	852	1133	1602	1618
Omega Z-Series	4900	1899	2100	1471	2915	852	1133	1592	1608
SV6, SS, SS V	4902	1899	2100	1471	2915	853	1134	1592	1608
Berlina	4900	1899	2100	1471	2915	852	1134	1602	1618
Calais, Calais V-Series	4903	1899	2100	1471	2915	855	1134	1592	1608
Sportwagon									
Omega	4902	1899	2100	1479	2915	852	1135	1602	1618
Omega Z-Series	4902	1899	2100	1479	2915	852	1135	1592	1608
SV6, SS, SS V	4901	1899	2100	1479	2915	853	1133	1592	1608
Berlina	4902	1899	2100	1479	2915	852	1135	1602	1618
Calais, Calais V-Series	4905	1899	2100	1479	2915	855	1135	1592	1608

The above figures are based on the design dimensions.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine type	**3.6L (SIDI) direct injection V6**	**3.6L LPG multi-point injection V6**	**3.0L (SIDI) direct injection V6**	**6.0L Generation IV V8**
Refill engine oil including filter (approximately)	6.7 L	6.7 L	6.7 L	7.6 L
Coolant (approximately)	10.2 L (manual) 10.0 L (automatic)	10.7 L	10.4 L	10.1 L (manual) 9.9 L (automatic)
Fuel tank	71.0 L	84.4 L	71.0 L	71.0 L

Note: The usable LPG fuel tank capacity is nominally 84.4 L at 15°C vehicle/LPG tank temperature when filled with 100% propane.

Tyre Pressure

Tyre size	Recommended pressure													
	Normal load				**Eco normal load**				**Maximum load**				**Spare**	
	Front		Rear		Front		Rear		Front		Rear		–	
	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
225/60 R16 98V	250	36	250	36	270	39	270	39	270	39	300	44	300	44
225/55 R17 97V					–	–	–	–						
245/45 R18 100V					–	–	–	–						
245/40 R19 98W					–	–	–	–						
T155/80 R17 111M	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	420	60
T205/45 R17 98P	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	350	51

Customer Information

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure 13-1
Customer Assistance Offices 13-1

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

We want you to be happy with your new vehicle, together with the people you deal with while you have the vehicle.

Normally, any problems with the sales, operation, servicing, parts/accessories or the validity of original equipment supplied with your vehicle will be handled by your Holden Dealer Sales and Service Department.

We realise however that, with the best intentions, misunderstandings sometimes occur.

Therefore, we suggest you discuss any concern with one of the Holden Dealer management people.

If you have not received satisfaction from the Sales Manager or Service Manager, go to the General Manager or the Dealer Principal.

Your concerns should now have been addressed properly. If not, the Holden Customer Assistance Office is at your disposal.

Customer Assistance Offices

Australia

The Holden Customer Assistance representatives can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

Naturally, telephoning is the quickest and the best way to contact. However, if you prefer to write the address is:

The Manager
Holden Customer Assistance Centre
GPO Box 1714
Melbourne 3001

Your letter should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business
- Servicing dealer’s name and address
- Vehicle model
- Vehicle identification number (ISOVIN), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle’s glove box
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle’s glove box.

Before you write, however, remember that the telephone is the quicker and more efficient means of communication.

New Zealand

The information in this Owner's Handbook applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the Warranty and Owner Assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glove box wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached on:

0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Assistance.

If you prefer to write the address is:

The Manager
Holden Customer Assistance Centre
PO Box 11195
Ellerslie
Auckland 1542

A

Accessory Power 9-5
Add-On Electrical
  Equipment 9-39
Additional Weights 12-7
Adjustments
  Seat, Initial Drive 3-3
Air Conditioning 8-2
Airbag System
  Check 3-15
  What Will You See after an
    Airbag Inflates? 3-15
Airbags
  Curtain 3-14
  Front 3-12
  Seatbelt Tensioner Light 5-11
  Side 3-13
  System Check 3-11
Alarm
  Vehicle Security 2-11
Alarm System
  Anti-theft 2-12
AM-FM Radio 7-10
Anti-theft
  Alarm System 2-12
  Alarm System Messages 5-23
Anti-Theft Alarm System 5-16
Antilock Brake
  System (ABS) 9-12
  Warning Light 5-13
Appearance Care
  Exterior 10-80
  Interior 10-83
Armrest
  Rear Seat 3-8
Audio
  Bluetooth 7-26
Audio Players 7-15
  CD 7-15
  MP3 7-17
Audio System
  Radio Reception 7-14
  Theft Deterrent Feature 7-3
Automatic
  Headlight System 6-2
  Transmission 9-6
Automatic Transmission
  Selector Lever 9-6
  Transmission Display 9-6
Auxiliary
  Devices 7-22

B

Battery 10-17
  Jump Starting 10-76
  Power Protection 6-7
  Voltage and Charging
    Messages 5-16
Bluetooth 7-71
Bluetooth Audio 7-26
Bonnet 10-3
Boot 2-8
Brake
  System Warning Light 5-12
Brakes
  Antilock 9-12
  Fluid 10-16
  Parking 9-13
Bulb Replacement
  Fog Lights 6-4
  Front Turn Signal Lights 10-24
  Headlights 10-19, 10-21
  Interior Lights 10-32
  Number Plate Lights 10-31

Bulb Replacement (cont'd)
  Side Marker Lights 10-25
  Tail lights 10-25
  Tail Lights, Turn Signals, Stoplights, and Reverse Lights 10-30
Buying New Tyres 10-48

C

Camera, Rear Vision 9-23
Capacities and Specifications 12-9
Carbon Monoxide
  Boot 2-8
  Tailgate 2-9
Cargo
  Cover 4-5
  Tie-Downs 4-7
Cautions, Danger, and Warnings iv
CD Player 7-15
Centre Console Storage 4-4
Chains, Tyre 10-48
Charging System Light 5-11
Check
  Engine Light 5-12
Child Restraint Installation Locations 3-20
Child Restraints
  Infants and Young Children 3-17
  Installation Locations 3-20
  Older Children 3-16
  Systems 3-18
Cleaning
  Exterior Care 10-80
  Interior Care 10-83
Climate Control Systems
  Heating and Ventilation 8-1
Clock 5-8
Cluster, Instrument 5-9
Compressor Kit, Tyre Sealant 10-49
Computer, Trip 5-29
Control System
  Emission 10-2
Convenience Net 4-13
Coolant
  Engine 10-8
  Engine Temperature Gauge 5-10
Cooling System
  Engine Messages 5-17
Cover
  Cargo 4-5
  Engine 10-6
Cruise Control 9-17
  Messages 5-17
Cupholders 4-1
Curtain Airbag System 3-14
Customer Assistance Offices 13-1
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 13-1
Customer-Installed Equipment, Notices 3-15

D

Danger, Warnings, and Cautions iv
Devices, Auxiliary 7-22
Dimensions
  Vehicle 12-8
Display
  Graphic Information (GID) 5-16
Displays
  Automatic Transmission 9-6

Dome Lights 6-5
Door
  Locks 2-5
  Manual Door Locks 2-6
  Open Light 5-16
Driving
  Environment 9-1
DVD
  Rear Seat Entertainment
    System 7-27

E

Electrical Equipment,
  Add-On 9-39
Electrical System
  Fuses 10-34
Electronic Stability Control 9-14
Electronic Stability Control
  Indicator Light 5-14
Emission Control System 10-2
Emission Information 10-2
Engine
  Check and Service Engine
    Soon Light 5-12
  Compartment Overview 10-5
  Coolant 10-8
Engine (cont'd)
  Coolant Temperature
    Gauge 5-10
  Cooling System Messages . . .5-17
  Cover 10-6
  Oil Messages 5-17
  Overheating 10-10
  Power Messages 5-19
  Starting 9-4
Engine Data 12-4
Enter Destination 7-54
Entry Lighting 6-6
Exit Lighting 6-7
Exterior Light Controls 6-1

F

Flashers, Hazard Warning 6-3
Flat Tyre
  Changing 10-55
Floor Mats .10-84
Fluid
  Brakes 10-16
  Power Steering 10-14
  Washer 10-15
Fog Lights
  Bulb Replacement 6-4
Front Airbag System 3-12
Front Fog Light
  Light 5-15
Front Seat Position Seats
  Adjustment 3-3
Front Storage 4-2
Front Turn Signal Lights 10-24
Fuel 9-26
  Filling the Tank 9-31
  Gauge 5-9
  Recommended 9-29
  System Messages 5-20
Fuses 10-34

G

Gauges
  Engine Coolant
    Temperature 5-10
  Fuel 5-9
  Speedometer 5-9
  Tachometer 5-9
General Information
  Vehicle Care 10-2
Getting Started, Navigation 7-49
Glove Box 4-1
  Lights 6-6

Graphic Information
  Display (GID) 5-16

H

Hazard Warning Flashers 6-3
Head Restraints 3-1
Headlights 10-21
  Automatic 6-2
  Bulb Replacement 10-19
  High-Beam On Light 5-15
  High/Low Beam Changer 6-2
Heated Mirrors 2-13
Heating 8-1
Heating and Ventilation
  System 8-1
High-Beam On Light 5-15
Horn 1-12, 5-6
How to Wear Seatbelts
  Properly 3-8

I

Identification Plate 12-2
Ignition Positions 9-3
Immobiliser 2-12
Infants and Young Children,
  Restraints 3-17
INFOCARD 2-5
Information
  Service 11-1
Information on Loading the
  Vehicle 4-15
Instrument Cluster 5-9
Instrument Panel
  Overview 1-7
Introduction . . . . .iii, 7-1

J

Jump Starting 10-76

K

Kerb View Assist Mirrors 2-13
Keys 2-1

L

Light
  Parking Brake 5-13
Lighting
  Entry 6-6
  Exit 6-7
  Illumination Control 6-4
Lights
  Airbag and Seatbelt
    Tensioner 5-11
  Antilock Brake System
    (ABS) Warning 5-13
  Brake System Warning 5-12
  Charging System 5-11
  Dome 6-5
  Door Open 5-16
  Exterior Controls 6-1
  Front Fog Light 5-15
  Front Turn Signal 10-24
  Glove Box 6-6
  High-Beam On 5-15
  High/Low Beam Changer 6-2
  Interior 10-32
  Malfunction Indicator 5-12
  Messages 5-21
  Number Plate 10-31
  Reading 6-5
  Seatbelt Reminders 5-10
  Side Marker 10-25
  Sun Visor 6-6
  Tail lights 10-25
  Turn Signal 5-15
Loading the Vehicle 4-15

Locks
  Door 2-5
  Manual Door 2-6
  Safety 2-7
Luggage Net 4-8

M

Maintenance Schedule
  Recommended Fluids and
    Lubricants 11-2
Malfunction Indicator Light 5-12
Manual Transmission 9-11
Mass Storage Media (MEM) . . . 7-18
Memory Seats 3-5
Messages
  Anti-theft Alarm System 5-23
  Battery Voltage and
    Charging 5-16
  Engine Cooling System 5-17
  Engine Oil 5-17
  Engine Power 5-19
  Fuel System 5-20
  Light 5-21
  Object Detection System 5-22
  Security 5-23
  Service Vehicle 5-24
Messages (cont'd)
  Starting the Vehicle 5-26
  Transmission 5-26
  Vehicle Reminder 5-27
  Vehicle Speed 5-28
Mirrors
  Heated 2-13
  Kerb View Assist 2-13
  Manual Rear View 2-15
  Power 2-13
MP3 7-17

N

Navigation
  Getting Started 7-49
  Menu 7-59
  System Overview 7-45
Net
  Cargo 4-8
Net, Convenience 4-13
New Vehicle Running-in 9-2
Notices for
  Customer-Installed
  Equipment 3-15

O

Object Detection System
  Messages 5-22
Oil
  Engine 10-7
  Messages 5-17
Older Children, Restraints 3-16
Operation, Infotainment
  System 7-5
Other Service Items
  Air Conditioning System 8-2
Overheating, Engine 10-10
Overview, Infotainment
  System 7-4
Overview, Navigation
  System 7-45

P

Parking 9-5
  Brake 9-13
Parking Assist 9-19
Parking Brake
  Light 5-13
Personalisation
  Vehicle 5-40
Plan Route 7-51

Power
  Mirrors 2-13
  Protection, Battery 6-7
  Retained Accessory
    Power (RAP) 9-5
  Seat Adjustment 3-3
  Sockets 5-8
  Steering Fluid 10-14
  Windows 2-15
Pregnancy, Using Seatbelts . . . 3-10
Pressure
  Tyre 12-10

R

Radios
  AM-FM Radio 7-10
  Reception 7-14
Reading Lights 6-5
Rear Seat Armrest 3-8
Rear Seat Entertainment
  System 7-27
Rear Seats 3-7
Rear Storage 4-3
Rear View Camera (RVC) 9-23
Rear View Mirrors 2-15
Rear Window Washer/Wiper 5-8
Rear Windows 2-16
Recommended
  Fuel 9-29
Recommended Fluids and
  Lubricants 11-2
Replacement Parts
  Airbags 3-16
  Maintenance 11-2
Replacing Airbag System 3-16
Replacing Seatbelt System
  Parts after a Crash 3-10
Restraints
  Where to Put 3-19
Retained Accessory
  Power (RAP) 9-5
Ride Control Systems 9-14
  Electronic Stability (ESC) 9-14
Roof
  Sunroof 2-18
Roof Rack System 4-14
Rotation, Tyres 10-47
Running-in, New Vehicle 9-2

S

Safety Locks 2-7
Sealant Kit, Tyre 10-49
Seatbelts
  Care 3-10
  Child Restraints 3-20
  How to Wear Seatbelts
    Properly 3-8
  Reminders 5-10
  Replacing after a Crash 3-10
  Three-Point 3-9
  Use During Pregnancy 3-10
Seats
  Head Restraints 3-1
  Memory 3-5
  Position, Front 3-3
  Power Adjustment, Front 3-3
  Rear 3-7
Security
  Messages 5-23
  Vehicle Alarm 2-11
Selector Lever 9-6
Service
  Engine Soon Light 5-12
  Vehicle Messages 5-24

Service and Maintenance
  Service Information 11-1
Service Information 11-1
Side Airbag System 3-13
Side Marker Lights 10-25
Signals, Turn and
  Lane-Change 6-3
Sockets
  Power 5-8
Specifications and
  Capacities 12-9
Speedometer 5-9
Starting the Engine 9-4
Starting the Vehicle
  Messages 5-26
Steering
  Fluid, Power 10-14
  Wheel Adjustment 5-5
  Wheel Controls 5-6
Stoplights and Reverse Lights
  Bulb Replacement 10-30
Storage
  Mass Media (MEM) 7-18
  Rear 4-3
Storage Areas
  Cargo Cover 4-5
  Centre Console 4-4
  Convenience Net 4-13
  Front 4-2
  Glove Box 4-1
  Information on Loading the
    Vehicle 4-15
  Roof Rack System 4-14
  Sunglasses 4-3
Sun Visor Lights 6-6
Sunglass Storage 4-3
Sunroof 2-18
System
  Roof Rack 4-14

T

Tachometer 5-9
Tail lights 10-25
  Bulb Replacement 10-30
Tailgate 2-9
Technical Data
  Tyre Pressure 12-10
Theft-Deterrent Systems
  Immobiliser 2-12
Three-Point Seatbelt 3-9
Time 5-8
Tools 10-42
Towing
  Trailer 9-33
  Vehicle 10-79
Trailer
  Towing 9-33
Transmission
  Automatic 9-6
  Messages 5-26
Transmission Display 9-6
Trip Computer 5-29
Turn and Lane-Change
  Signals 6-3
Turn Signal
  Light 5-15
Turn Signals
  Bulb Replacement 10-30
Tyre Pressure 12-10
Tyres
  Buying New Tyres 10-48
  Chains 10-48
  Changing 10-55

Tyres (cont'd)
  Rotation 10-47
  Sealant and
    Compressor Kit 10-49
  Wheel Alignment and
    Tyre Balance 10-48
Tyres and Wheels 10-45

U

USB 7-20
Using This Manual iv

V

Vehicle
  Alarm System 2-11
  Identification
    Number (VIN) 12-1
  Personalisation 5-40
  Reminder Messages 5-27
  Speed Messages 5-28
  Towing 10-79
Vehicle Care
  Tyre Pressure 10-46
Vehicle Dimensions 12-8
Vehicle Identification
  Plate 12-2
Vehicle Weight 12-5

W

Warning
  Brake System Light 5-12
Warnings iv
  Cautions and Danger iv
  Hazard Flashers 6-3
Washer Fluid 10-15
Weights
  Additional 12-7
  Vehicle 12-5
Wheels
  Alignment and Tyre
    Balance 10-48
Wheels and Tyres 10-45
Where to Put the Restraint 3-19
Windows
  Power 2-15
  Rear 2-16
Windscreen
  Wiper/Washer 5-6
Wipers
  Rear Washer 5-8